Groundwater Science

Second Edition

Charles R. Fitts

ELSEVIER

AMSTERDAM • BOSTON • HEIDELBERG • LONDON
NEW YORK • OXFORD • PARIS • SAN DIEGO
SAN FRANCISCO • SINGAPORE • SYDNEY • TOKYO

Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier

1

Groundwater: The Big Picture

Key Terms

evapotranspiration	5	infiltration	8
residence time	6	overland flow	8
water table	7	recharge	8
unsaturated zone	7	interflow	9
vadose water	7	lysimeters	11
saturated zone	8	potential evapotranspiration	12
Groundwater	8	baseflow	12
Aquifer	8	quickflow	12
capillary fringe	8		

Contents

1.1 Introduction 1
1.2 Global Water Reservoirs and Fluxes 4
1.3 Terminology for Subsurface Waters 7
1.4 Fluxes Affecting Groundwater 8
1.5 Hydrologic Balance 13
1.6 Water and Groundwater Use 16
1.7 What Groundwater Scientists Do 18
1.8 Problems 19

1.1 Introduction

This book is about water in the pore spaces of the subsurface. Most of that water flows quite slowly and is usually hidden from view, but it occasionally makes a spectacular display in a geyser, cave, or large spring. Prehistoric man probably only knew of groundwater by seeing it at these prominent features. People tended to settle near springs and eventually they learned to dig wells and find water where it was not so apparent on the surface.

In the early part of the first millennium B.C., Persians built elaborate tunnel systems called *qanats* for extracting groundwater in the dry mountain basins of present-day Iran (Figure 1.1). Qanat tunnels were hand-dug, just large enough to fit the person doing the digging. Along the length of a qanat, which can be several kilometers, many vertical shafts were dug to remove excavated material and to provide ventilation and access for repairs. The main qanat tunnel sloped gently down to an outlet at a village. From there, canals

Groundwater Science, Second Edition. DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-384705-8.00001-7
© 2013, 2002 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

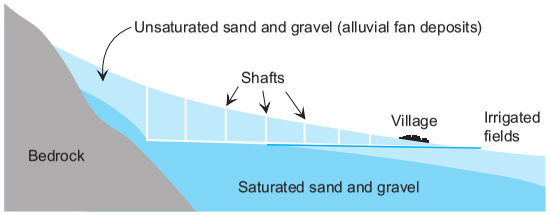


Figure 1.1 Vertical shafts of a qanat in Tafilalt Oasis, Morocco (top; photo courtesy of Dale R. Lightfoot). Schematic vertical cross-section of a qanat (bottom). Water flows from saturated alluvium into the qanat at its uphill end, and then flows downhill to an exit canal near a village.

would distribute water to fields for irrigation. These amazing structures allowed Persian farmers to succeed despite long dry periods when there was no surface water to be had. Many qanats are still in use in Iran, Oman, and Syria (Lightfoot, 2000).

From ancient times until the 1900s, the main focus of groundwater science has been finding and developing groundwater resources. Groundwater is still a key resource and it always will be. In some places, it is the only source of fresh water (Nantucket Island, Massachusetts and parts of Saharan Africa, for example).

In the past century, engineering and environmental aspects of groundwater have also become important. With more irrigation, industry, and larger engineered projects came the need for industrial-size water supplies and the need to understand how groundwater affects structures like tunnels, dams, and deep excavations.

Environmental chemistry and contamination issues have come to the forefront of groundwater science just in the past several decades. Subsurface contamination became more widespread as nations industrialized, using and disposing of more petroleum-based fuels and metals. During the chemical revolution in the mid-1900s, the use of thousands of petroleum distillates and synthetic chemicals bloomed. Before the 1960s there were few regulations governing the storage and disposal of industrial wastes, fuels, and chemicals. Unregulated releases silently took their toll beneath thousands of sites in the U.S. and other industrialized nations. Chemicals migrated deep into the subsurface, dissolving into passing groundwater. The contaminated groundwater often flowed far, transporting dissolved contaminants to distant wells

or surface waters. Subsurface contamination went largely undetected until the environmental movement sparked investigations of sites in the 1970s and 1980s.

The Love Canal site in Niagara Falls is a notorious U.S. waste site uncovered during this era, and serves as a good introduction to the environmental side of groundwater science. Love Canal was dug in the 1890s, part of a shipping/hydropower canal that never was completed. From 1942 to 1953, Hooker Chemical Company dumped an estimated 22,000 tons of chemical wastes, drummed and uncontained, into the canal excavation (EPA, 2001). The wastes contained hundreds of different organic chemicals, including dioxin, PCBs, and pesticides. The wastes were covered with soil, the site was sold, and a school and residential neighborhood were built on and around the former canal (Figure 1.2).

In 1975–1976, heavy precipitation raised the water table and eroded the soil cover, exposing chemicals and contaminated waters at the surface. Liquid wastes and contaminated groundwater also seeped underground through permeable sands and a fractured clay layer, migrating laterally to basements and sewer lines. Contamination from the site spread far into streams where these storm sewer lines discharged. Thankfully, the liquid wastes, which are denser than water, were unable to penetrate the soft clay under the canal and migrate into the more permeable Lockport dolomite aquifer. This was not the case at several other chemical landfill sites in Niagara Falls.

The scope of the contamination and health risks became known and publicized in 1978, the year President Carter declared the Love Canal site a federal emergency. Eventually, the school was closed and about 950 families were evacuated from the immediate 10-block neighborhood (EPA, 2001).

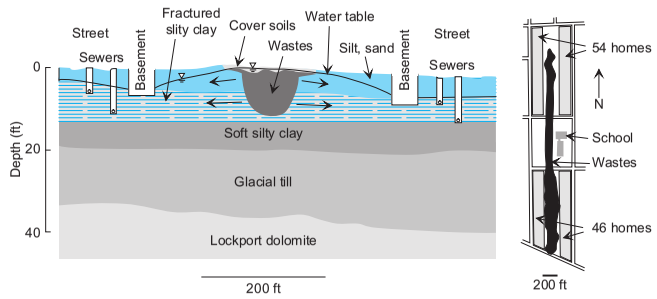


Figure 1.2 East–west cross-section through Love Canal, Niagara Falls, New York (left). Map showing the extent of wastes and nearby land uses (right). Adapted from the figures of Cohen and Mercer (1993) with permission from CRC Press.

Cleaning up and containing the wastes at Love Canal has cost plenty. The parent company of Hooker Chemical Co. reimbursed the federal government 139 million dollars for cleanup costs, which were only part of the total costs at this site (EPA, 2001). Residents have sued for property and health damages, claiming a variety of ailments including birth defects and miscarriages. Remediation at the site includes a perimeter drain system to intercept groundwater and liquid wastes in the sands and fractured clay, an on-site water treatment plant that handles about 3 million gallons per year, a 40 acre clay and synthetic membrane cap over the wastes to limit infiltration, and removal of contaminated sediments from sewer lines and nearby creeks. The remediation efforts have dramatically improved environmental conditions in the neighborhood. Now hundreds of the abandoned homes have been rehabilitated and are occupied.

The past several decades up through the present have been a time of scientific revolution in the groundwater field. Great strides have been made in our understanding of physical and chemical processes affecting groundwater, both at the small scale of environmental and engineering problems and at the large scale of geologic processes like faulting, sedimentation, and petroleum formation. Like all sciences, there is still plenty to discover and learn. Groundwater science bridges a number of traditional disciplines including geology, physics, chemistry, biology, environmental science, soil science, mathematics, and civil engineering.

Because groundwater processes are hidden and difficult to measure, all studies involve a good deal of uncertainty and inference. This mystery and complexity help to make groundwater science fascinating and challenging.

This book provides an overview of the current "state of the art" in groundwater science, aimed at the college textbook level. In general, the book covers physical aspects first and then concludes with chemistry and contamination issues. We begin in this chapter with large-scale physical processes, looking at how groundwater relates to other reservoirs of water on the earth, and man's use of these waters.

1.2 Global Water Reservoirs and Fluxes

Water exists in virtually every accessible environment on or near the earth's surface. It's in blood, trees, air, glaciers, streams, lakes, oceans, rocks, and soil. The total amount of water on the planet is about 1.4×10^9 km^3, and its distribution among the main reservoirs is listed in Table 1.1 (Maidment, 1993). Of the fresh water reservoirs, glacial ice and groundwater are by far the largest.

Table 1.1 Distribution of Water in Earth's Reservoirs

Reservoir	Percent of All Water	Percent of Fresh Water
Oceans	96.5	
Ice and snow	1.8	69.6
Groundwater:		
Fresh	0.76	30.1
Saline	0.93	
Surface water:		
Fresh lakes	0.007	0.26
Saline lakes	0.006	
Marshes	0.0008	0.03
Rivers	0.0002	0.006
Soil moisture	0.0012	0.05
Atmosphere	0.001	0.04
Biosphere	0.0001	0.003

Source: Maidment (1993).

Groundwater and surface water are the two reservoirs most used by humans because of their accessibility. Fresh groundwater is about 100 times more plentiful than fresh surface water, but we use more surface water because it is so easy to find and use. Much of the total groundwater volume is deep in the crust and too saline for most uses.

Fueled by energy from solar radiation, water changes phase and cycles continuously among these reservoirs in the hydrologic cycle (Figure 1.3). Solar energy drives evaporation, transpiration, atmospheric circulation, and precipitation. Gravity pulls precipitation down to earth and pulls surface water and groundwater down to lower elevations and ultimately back to the ocean reservoir. Evaporation and transpiration are difficult to measure separately, so their combined effects are usually lumped together and called **evapotranspiration**.

Over land areas, average precipitation exceeds average evapotranspiration. The opposite is true over the oceans. On average, more atmospheric water moves from the ocean areas to the land areas than vice versa, creating a net flux of atmospheric water from ocean areas to land areas. The flux of surface water and groundwater from the land back to the oceans maintains a balance so that the volumes in each reservoir remain roughly constant over time. The hydrologic cycle represents only global averages; the actual fluxes in smaller regions and smaller time frames deviate significantly from the average. Deserts, for example, are continental areas where evaporation exceeds precipitation. On the other hand, at a cold, rainy coastline like the northwest Pacific, precipitation exceeds evaporation.

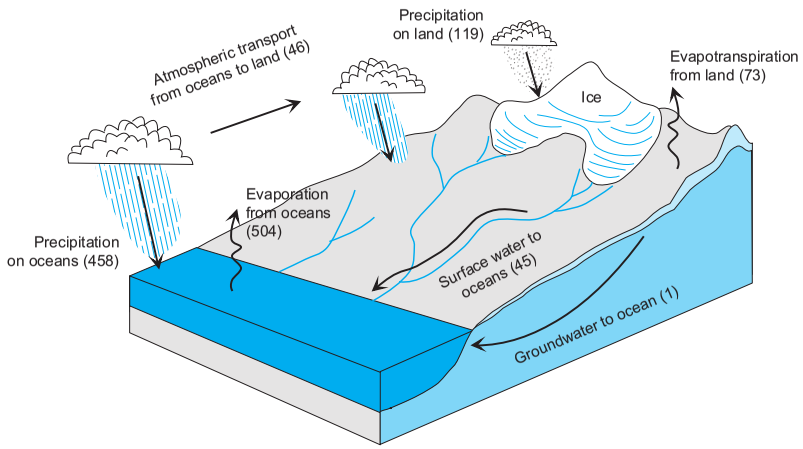


Figure 1.3 Global hydrologic cycle. Numbers in parentheses are total global fluxes in thousands of km^3/yr. Data from Maidment (1993).

In a given region, the fluxes are distributed irregularly in time due to specific storm events or seasonal variations such as monsoons. With these transient variations in fluxes, the reservoir volumes fluctuate; groundwater and surface water levels rise and fall, glaciers grow and shrink, and sea level rises and falls slightly.

The **residence time** is the average amount of time that a water molecule resides in a particular reservoir before transferring to another reservoir. The residence time T_r is calculated as the volume of a reservoir V [length^3 or L^3] divided by the total flux in or out of the reservoir Q [length^3 per time or L^3/T],

$$T_r = \frac{V}{Q} \tag{1.1}$$

The atmosphere is a relatively small reservoir with a large flux moving through it, so the average residence time is short, on the order of days. The ocean is an enormous reservoir with an average residence time on the order of thousands of years. The average residence time for groundwater, including very deep and saline waters, is approximately 20,000 years. Actual residence times are quite variable. Shallow fresh groundwater would have much shorter residence times than the average, more like years to hundreds of years.

1.3 Terminology for Subsurface Waters

No branch of science is without its terminology. Before going further, we must define the terms used to discuss subsurface waters. The traditional categorization of subsurface waters, and the one adopted here, is shown in Figure 1.4.

Subsurface waters are divided into two main categories: the near-surface unsaturated or vadose zone and the deeper saturated or phreatic zone. The boundary between these two zones is the **water table**, which is technically defined as the surface on which the pore water pressure equals atmospheric pressure. In cross-section drawings like Figure 1.4, the water table and other water surfaces are typically marked with the symbol ∇. The terms *phreatic surface* and *free surface* are synonymous with *water table*. Measuring the water table is easy. If a shallow well is installed so it is open just below the water table, the water level in the well will stabilize at the level of the water table.

The **unsaturated zone** or *vadose zone* is defined as the zone above the water table where the pore water pressure is less than atmospheric. In most of the unsaturated zone, the pore spaces contain some air and some water. Capillary forces attract water to the mineral surfaces, causing water pressures to be less than atmospheric. The term **vadose water** applies to all water in the unsaturated zone. The terms *soil water* and *soil moisture* are also applied to waters in the unsaturated zone, usually in reference to water in the shallow part where plant roots are active.

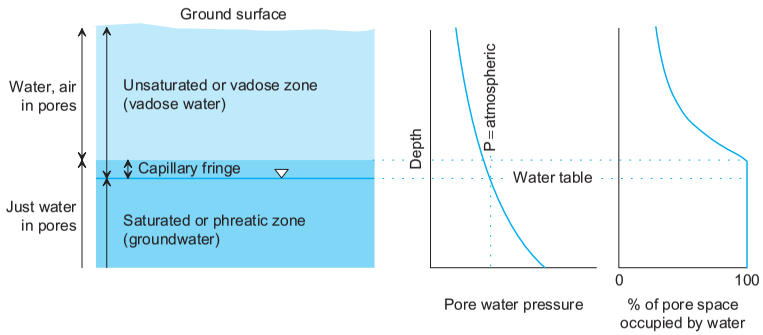


Figure 1.4 Vertical cross-section showing the definitions of terms used to describe subsurface water.

Below the water table is the **saturated zone** or *phreatic zone*, where water pressures are greater than atmospheric and the pores are saturated with water. **Groundwater** is the term for water in the saturated zone. **Aquifer** is a familiar term, meaning a permeable region or layer in the saturated zone. This book deals with both vadose water and groundwater, but most of the emphasis is on groundwater, since it is the main reservoir of subsurface water.

The **capillary fringe** is a zone that is saturated with water, but above the water table. It has traditionally been assigned to the unsaturated zone, even though it is physically continuous with and similar to the saturated zone. The thickness of the capillary fringe varies depending on the pore sizes in the medium. Media with small pore sizes have thicker capillary fringes than media with larger pore sizes. In a silt or clay, the capillary fringe can be more than a meter thick, while the capillary fringe in a coarse gravel would be less than a millimeter thick. In finer-grained materials, there is more surface area and the greater overall surface attraction forces result in a thicker capillary fringe.

1.4 Fluxes Affecting Groundwater

Water fluxes in and near the subsurface are illustrated schematically in Figure 1.5. Precipitation events bring water to the land surface, and from there water can do one of three things. It can infiltrate into the ground to become **infiltration**, it can flow across the ground surface as **overland flow**, or it can evaporate from the surface after the precipitation stops. Water in the unsaturated zone that moves downward and flows into the saturated zone is called **recharge**. Water in the unsaturated zone that flows laterally to a surface water

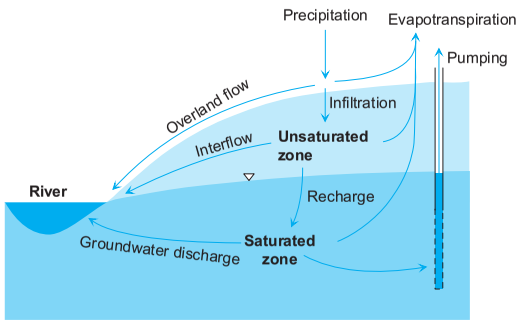


Figure 1.5 Reservoirs (large type) and water fluxes (small type) affecting groundwater.

body is known as **interflow**. Some groundwater discharges from the saturated zone back to surface water bodies. Groundwater can also exit the saturated zone as transpiration or well discharge.

1.4.1 Infiltration and Recharge

Whether water on the ground surface infiltrates or becomes overland flow depends on several factors. Infiltration is favored where there is porous and permeable soil or rock, flat topography, and a history of dry conditions. Urban and suburban development creates many impermeable surfaces—roofs, pavement, and concrete—and increases overland flow at the expense of infiltration. The increased fraction of precipitation going to overland flow often leads to more frequent flooding events in urbanized areas (Leopold, 1994).

During a large precipitation event, the first water to arrive is easily infiltrated, but later in the event the pores of surficial soils become more saturated and the rate of infiltration slows. When the rate of precipitation exceeds the rate that water can infiltrate, water will begin to puddle on the surface. Puddles can only store so much water and then they spill over, contributing to overland flow as shown in Figure 1.6. Infiltration can continue beyond the end of precipitation as puddled water drains into the subsurface.

Rates of precipitation, infiltration, overland flow, recharge, and other fluxes illustrated in Figure 1.5 are often reported with units like cm/year or inches/hour [L/T]. These rates actually represent volume of water per time per area of land surface area [$L^3/T/L^2$], which reduces to length per time [L/T].

Water that infiltrates the subsurface is pulled downward by gravity, but may be deflected horizontally by low-permeability layers in the unsaturated zone. Horizontal flux in the unsaturated zone is called interflow. Water that moves from the unsaturated zone down into the saturated zone is called recharge. Where the unsaturated zone is thin compared to the distance to the nearest surface water, most infiltrated water becomes recharge and in such cases

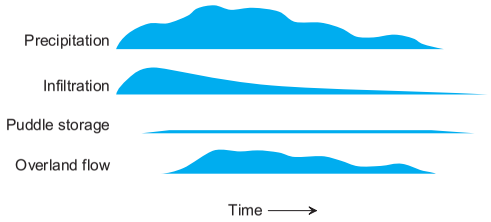


Figure 1.6 Schematic showing rates of precipitation, infiltration, puddle storage, and overland flow during one precipitation event.

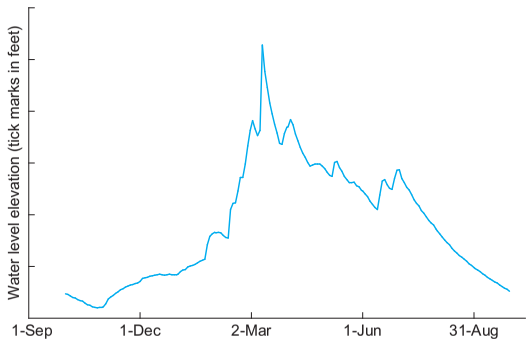


Figure 1.7 Groundwater levels measured in a well screened in a shallow unconfined glacial sand and gravel deposit in eastern Maine, 1997–1998. From U.S. Geological Survey (Nielsen et al., 1999).

interflow is often neglected. Interflow becomes more significant adjacent to stream banks and other surface waters.

Recharge is highest in areas with wet climates and permeable soil or rock types. In permeable materials, the rate of recharge can be as much as half the precipitation rate, with little overland flow. An example of such a setting is sandy Cape Cod, Massachusetts, where the average precipitation rate is about 46 inches/year (117 cm/yr) and the average recharge rate is about 21 inches/year (53 cm/yr) (LeBlanc, 1984). On the other hand, in low-permeability materials only a small fraction of the precipitation becomes recharge. With massive clay soils, the recharge rate can be less than 1% of the precipitation rate.

Figure 1.7 shows seasonal groundwater level variations observed in a non-pumping well in eastern Maine. The groundwater level rises dramatically in springtime as rains and snowmelt create a pulse of infiltration and recharge, and then it declines during dry times in late summer and fall.

1.4.2 Evapotranspiration

Evapotranspiration refers to the combined processes of direct evaporation at the ground surface, direct evaporation on plant surfaces, and transpiration. Some plants like beech trees have shallow root systems to intercept infiltrated water before other plants can. Other plants like oak trees have deep root systems that can tap the saturated zone for a more consistent water supply.

Evapotranspiration rates are governed by several factors, the most important of which are the temperature and humidity of the air and the

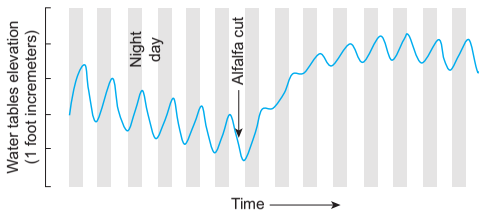


Figure 1.8 Fluctuating groundwater levels beneath an alfalfa field in the Escalante Valley, Utah. Nighttime is shaded gray. From U.S. Geological Survey (White, 1932).

availability of water on the surface and in the shallow subsurface. Evapotranspiration can be limited by either of these factors. Imagine a hot desert with warm, dry air and bone-dry sand dunes. The lack of water limits evapotranspiration in this case. On the other hand, imagine a soggy rain forest in southern Alaska where there is no lack of water on or below the surface. In this case, evapotranspiration fluctuates mostly due to variations in the temperature and humidity of the air, with higher evapotranspiration rates on warmer, dryer days.

Evapotranspiration has daily and seasonal variations. Figure 1.8 shows daily fluctuations in groundwater levels beneath an alfalfa field. Groundwater levels fell during the day when evapotranspiration was high and recovered at night when it ceased. When the field was cut, the groundwater level rose due to the lack of transpiration.

In regions with strong seasonal climate variations, the rate of evapotranspiration is generally lower in winter than in summer because less water can evaporate into cool air than into warm air. Where winters are cold enough for snow and ice, there is very little evapotranspiration during winter.

As you can imagine, the rate of evapotranspiration cannot be measured directly; that would require somehow measuring the flux of water through all plants plus direct evaporation. It is often estimated by developing estimates of other fluxes shown in Figure 1.5 and then deducing the estimated evapotranspiration by water balance. For some agricultural crop settings, evapotranspiration has been estimated by carefully studying a small plot of soil, measuring precipitation and changes in water content in the soils. This type of study is sometimes conducted using large soil tanks called **lysimeters**, which contain typical soils and vegetation and are buried in the ground. The mass of the lysimeter and fluxes of water are measured to determine the rate of evapotranspiration.

Thornthwaite (1948) introduced the theoretical concept of **potential evapotranspiration** (PET), which is the amount of evapotranspiration that would occur from the land surface if there were a continuous and unlimited supply of soil moisture. PET is only a function of meteorological factors such as temperature, humidity, and wind. In a very rainy climate with soggy soil the actual evapotranspiration (AET) is essentially equal to PET, but in a dry climate AET is much less than PET. Many crops need to transpire water at rates close to the PET rate. In areas where precipitation is much less than PET, considerable irrigation is required. In the dry high plains of the midwestern U.S., precipitation during the summer is only a small fraction of PET and irrigation is widespread. In much of the humid eastern U.S., summer precipitation equals or exceeds PET, and many farms survive without irrigation.

1.4.3 Groundwater Discharge to Surface Water Bodies

All water that you see flowing in a stream originates as precipitation, but the water takes various routes to get there. Some runs directly over the land surface to a channel (overland flow). Some infiltrates a little way and runs horizontally in near-surface soils to a channel (interflow). Some infiltrates deeply to become recharge and then migrates in the saturated zone to discharge back to the surface at a spring, lake, or stream channel. The portion of stream flow that is attributed to this latter path is called **baseflow**.

If the geologic materials in a stream basin are very permeable, baseflow can be a large part of a stream's discharge. If the materials have low permeability, most precipitation does not infiltrate and baseflow is only a small portion of stream discharge. Baseflow is a fairly steady component of a stream's discharge, maintaining low flows during periods of drought. Flow contributed by overland flow or shallow interflow is called **quickflow** because it gets to the stream channel quickly. Quickflow is more transient and occurs during and soon after precipitation events. Baseflow and quickflow are discussed in more depth in Section 5.2.2.

In humid climates, there is generally discharge from the saturated zone up into surface waters; such streams are called gaining streams (see Figure 1.9). The top of the saturated zone in the adjacent terrain is above the water surface elevation of gaining streams. In losing streams, water discharges in the other direction: from the stream to the subsurface. These situations generally occur in arid climates, where the depth to the saturated zone is great. The base of a losing stream may be above the top of the saturated zone as shown in the right side of Figure 1.9, or it may be within the saturated zone.

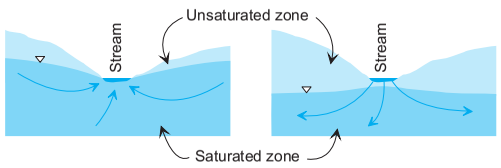


Figure 1.9 Cross-sections of a gaining stream (left) and a losing stream (right).

1.4.4 Pumping

Wells drilled into the saturated zone are pumped, extracting groundwater and transferring it to other reservoirs. Most of the water pumped for irrigation is ultimately transferred to the atmosphere through evaporation and transpiration. Farmers have an economic incentive to pump and irrigate with the minimum discharge that will provide sufficient transpiration for the crops. Pumping at higher rates will route more water to evaporation and to deep recharge, both forms of wastage in the farmer's view.

In rural homes where pumped water is routed to a septic system, most of the water returns to the ground as infiltration, although some water evaporates in showers, laundry machines, outdoor use, etc. Where there are sewer systems, domestic water is collected, treated, and usually discharged to a surface water. In some areas like Long Island, New York, pumping of groundwater combined with municipal sewer systems amounts to siphoning off groundwater and routing it to the sea. As a consequence, groundwater levels fall as the groundwater reservoir shrinks. To limit this problem, municipalities in Long Island now direct some of the treated sewage water back to the subsurface in infiltration basins and injection wells, rather than routing it to the sea.

1.5 Hydrologic Balance

Hydrologic balance is the basic concept of conservation of mass with respect to water fluxes. Take any region in space, and examine the water fluxes into and out of that region. Because water cannot be created or destroyed in that region, hydrologic balance requires

$$\text{flux in} - \text{flux out} = \text{rate of change in water stored within} \tag{1.2}$$

The units of each term in this equation are those of discharge [L^3/T]. This is a volume balance, but because water is so incompressible, it is essentially a mass balance as well. Hydrologic balance is useful for estimating unknown fluxes in many different hydrologic systems.

> ***Example 1.1*** Consider a reservoir with one inlet stream, one outlet at a dam and a surface area of 2.5 km^2. There hasn't been any rain for weeks, and the reservoir level is falling at a rate of 3.0 mm/day. The average evaporation rate from the reservoir surface is 1.2 mm/day, the inlet discharge is 10,000 m^3/day, and the outlet discharge is 16,000 m^3/day. Assuming that the only other important fluxes are the groundwater discharges in and out of the reservoir, what is the total net rate of groundwater discharge into the reservoir?
>
> In this case, the reservoir is the region for which a balance is constructed. Fluxes into this region include the inlet stream flow (I) and the net groundwater discharge (G). Fluxes out of this region include the outlet stream flow (O) and evaporation (E) from the surface. Hydrologic balance in this case requires
>
> $$I + G - O - E = \frac{dV}{dt}$$
>
> where dV/dt is the change in reservoir volume per time. Calculate the rate of change in reservoir volume as
>
> $$\frac{dV}{dt} = -0.003\ \frac{\text{m}}{\text{day}} \times 2.5\ \text{km}^2 \times \left(1000\ \frac{\text{m}}{\text{km}}\right)^2 = -7500\ \frac{\text{m}^3}{\text{day}}$$
>
> Similarly, the rate of evaporative loss is
>
> $$E = 0.0012\ \frac{\text{m}}{\text{day}} \times 2.5\ \text{km}^2 \times \left(1000\ \frac{\text{m}}{\text{km}}\right)^2 = 3000\ \frac{\text{m}^3}{\text{day}}$$
>
> Solving the first equation for G yields a net groundwater discharge of 1500 m^3/day.

Fluxes in and out of the saturated zone of an aquifer in a stream basin are illustrated in Figure 1.10. Using symbols defined in the figure's caption, the

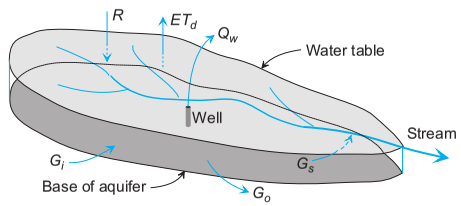


Figure 1.10 Water fluxes in and out of the saturated zone of an aquifer under a stream basin. R is recharge, G_i and G_o are groundwater inflows and outflows through the lateral boundaries and bottom of the aquifer, G_s is groundwater discharge to streams, ET_d is deep evapotranspiration extracted from the saturated zone, and Q_w is well discharge.

general equation for hydrologic balance in this piece of aquifer is as follows:

$$R + G_i - G_o - G_s - ET_d - Q_w = \frac{dV}{dt} \tag{1.3}$$

where dV/dt is rate of change in the volume of water stored in the region.

If, over a long time span, there is an approximate steady-state balance where flow in equals flow out, then the transient term disappears and the balance equation becomes

$$R + G_i - G_o - G_s - ET_d - Q_w = 0 \tag{1.4}$$

Imagine that the basin has been operating in a rough steady state for many years without any pumping wells. At this time, the above equation with $Q_w = 0$ describes the balance. Later a well is installed and begins pumping at a steady rate $Q_w > 0$. Immediately, the system is thrown into imbalance; Eq. 1.3 applies and the volume stored in the aquifer declines ($dV/dt < 0$). In fact, at the start of pumping, all the water pumped comes from a corresponding decline in the volume of water stored ($Q_w = -dV/dt$). The decline in volume stored causes a declining water table. If the well discharge is held constant for a long time, a new long-term equilibrium will be established, the water table will stabilize, and Eq. 1.4 will apply once again, this time with $Q_w > 0$. To achieve this new long-term balance, other fluxes must adjust: R and G_i may increase, while G_o, G_s, and ET_d may decrease.

Increasing the discharge of pumping wells in a groundwater basin always has some long-term effects on other fluxes and/or the volume stored in the basin. In many cases, the rate of pumping is so high that a new steady state cannot develop: the flows out of the system are greater than the flows in. In such cases, the pumping could be viewed as "mining," simply pulling water out of storage. This has been the case in the High Plains Aquifer in the south-central U.S., where there is widespread irrigation and a dry climate. The water table has dropped more than 30 m in parts of this aquifer in Texas, where the average rate of pumpage far exceeds the average recharge rate, which is estimated to be less than 5 mm/year (Gutentag et al., 1984). By 1980, pumping had removed about 140 km^3 of stored water from the aquifer in Texas.

Long-term changes caused by pumping can affect large areas, far beyond the well owner's property lines. Groundwater basins often transgress property lines and political boundaries, so most countries have regulations governing groundwater use. Regulation of well discharges and groundwater resources is complex because of interaction between different aquifers, surface water bodies, and wells.

Often pumping wells located near streams cause a noticeable reduction in groundwater discharge to the stream. In other words, the wells steal some baseflow from the stream. The interaction between well discharge and groundwater discharge to a nearby stream was a key technical issue in *A Civil Action*, a popular nonfiction book and movie about a trial involving contaminated water supply wells (Harr, 1995). The defendants in the lawsuit were major corporations that owned polluted sites near the water supply wells. If the supply wells pulled most of their water from the nearby stream, then a significant fraction of the pollutants in the well water could have come from distant sites upstream, and the owners of local sites would have been less culpable.

1.6 Water and Groundwater Use

The per capita use of water varies greatly around the world. The minimum needed to sustain a person's life is about 3 liters per day; some people in poor arid lands survive on little more than this. At the other extreme, use of extracted water (offstream use) in the U.S. in 1995 was about 4.0×10^{11} gallons/day, which amounts to 1500 gallons/day/person (5700 liters/day/person) (Solley et al., 1998). This figure does not include instream water use for hydroelectric power generation, which was another 11,800 gallons/day/person (45,000 liters/day/person).

The water that made up the U.S. 1995 offstream use was mostly fresh water, of which about 22% was groundwater and 78% was surface water, as shown in Table 1.2. Irrigation and industrial uses amount to about 81% of the total offstream use in 1995. Groundwater tends to be less contaminated

Table 1.2 Estimated Water Use in the U.S. 1950–1995 (Billions of Gallons per Day)

	1950	1960	1970	1980	1990	1995
Offstream sources:						
Fresh surface water	140	190	250	290	259	264
Fresh groundwater	34	50	68	83	79	76
Saline surface water	10	31	53	71	68	60
Saline groundwater		0.4	1.0	0.9	1.2	1.1
Offstream uses:						
Thermoelectric power	40	100	170	210	195	190
Irrigation	89	110	130	150	137	134
Public supply	14	21	27	34	39	40
Other industrial	37	38	47	45	30	29
Rural supply	3.6	3.6	4.5	5.6	7.9	8.9
Total	180	270	370	440	408	402
Instream uses:						
Hydroelectric power	1100	2000	2800	3300	3290	3160

Source: Solley et al. (1998).

than surface water, so a larger fraction of it is used for drinking. Groundwater made up 99% of self-supplied domestic water and 37% of all public supplies in 1995. Rivers and lakes are often clean enough for irrigation or industrial use, but not clean enough for drinking.

Total offstream water use in the U.S. continuously increased until about 1980 when it peaked. From 1950 to 1980, offstream use increased by about 52%; most of this increase was due to increased irrigation and power generation. Offstream use declined about 9% between 1980 and 1995, despite a 16% growth in population during that time span. The 1980–1995 decline came from the irrigation, thermoelectric power, and industrial sectors, which dropped enough to overwhelm a 24% rise in water supply uses. These declines are attributable to increasing water costs, better irrigation practices, more efficient industrial processes, and stricter regulation of industrial waste waters.

Overall in the U.S., the offstream fresh water use is about 18% of the total available fresh water cycling through surface waters and groundwaters (Glieck, 1993). In countries with more arid climates and higher population densities, this percentage can be much higher. For example, this percentage is 88% for Israel and 97% for Egypt. In Saudi Arabia, where fresh water is scarce, water is imported and the percentage is 164% (Glieck, 1993).

The U.S. is blessed with abundant fresh water supplies due to a humid climate and only moderate population density. In the past, it was generally possible to add more water supply capacity as it was needed; dams were built and wells were drilled. In some drier parts of the western U.S., the potential for additional water supplies has diminished to near zero. Especially in these areas, attention is shifting from developing additional water supplies to optimizing existing ones through regulation and conservation. There is a constant struggle to limit water use while maintaining a healthy economy and standard of living.

Individuals can conserve water in daily activities like showers and toilet flushing, but the greatest conservation can come from limiting consumption of goods and services that use water. Looking at the large water use rates for irrigation, power generation, and industry, considerable conservation can be achieved by eating the right foods, using less power, and limiting purchases of goods that require lots of water to produce.

1.7 What Groundwater Scientists Do

Groundwater scientists study many different kinds of issues, most of which fit one of the following categories:

1. *Water supply*. Water supply wells for drinking water, irrigation, and industrial purposes are drilled after assembling data on the hydrogeology of the region (previous drilling data, well data, and geologic maps). Test wells are drilled and hydraulic testing is done to estimate the long-term discharge capacity. The water chemistry is checked to make sure that the water is suited for its intended purpose. If the test results are favorable, a production well is then designed and installed.

2. *Water resource management*. Since groundwater reservoirs cross property lines and political boundaries, management of groundwater resources is an important area of practice. Particularly in areas with large regional aquifers, difficult decisions must be made about who is allowed to pump water, how much can be pumped, where wells can be located, and where potential contaminant sources like gasoline tanks may be located. Surface water projects including dams, diversions for irrigation, and sewer systems have an impact on groundwater levels and quality, and must also be carefully considered.

3. *Engineering and construction*. Dewatering of excavations is an important part of many construction projects. Where a deep excavation is made for a building or a tunnel, groundwater flowing into the excavation or dewatering system may depress the local water table and cause settlement of

nearby land. All dams leak to some extent, and it is important to estimate this seepage rate and the pore water pressures, which affect stability of the dam. Landfills and other waste storage facilities are now designed to limit the risk of groundwater and surface water contamination, so groundwater investigations are part of the design process.

4. *Environmental investigations and cleanup*. Investigating and remediating contaminated sites has occupied more groundwater scientists in the past several decades than any other type of investigation. New technologies and methods are constantly being introduced in this young field. Some contaminants are degraded by naturally occurring microbes that live in groundwater, but other contaminants persist and require more active remediation efforts. Active remediation might involve construction of trenches where contaminants are captured or destroyed, pumping and treating water, injecting air, or other schemes.

5. *Geologic processes*. Large-scale geologic processes involving groundwater are studied for purely academic interest and to better understand processes involved in the origins of oil, gas, and mineral deposits. Some investigations are shedding light on past climates, earthquake mechanisms, and geologic hazards.

Most of the applications of groundwater science are quite interdisciplinary, bridging the fields of geology, engineering, environmental sciences, chemistry, physics, biology, and resource management. No one person can be a complete expert in all these areas, so problems are typically addressed by teams of people from various disciplines. The most valuable people are those with a solid understanding of several of the disciplines involved, and some appreciation for the rest.

1.8 Problems

Answers are given at the back of the book for starred (*) problems.

1. Explain why the total evapotranspiration over the oceans far exceeds the total evapotranspiration over the continents.

2. *Do an Internet search to find a global map showing the distribution of actual continental evapotranspiration rates (not potential evapotranspiration). Describe trends with latitude. Explain why such low rates occur in north Africa and the Arabian peninsula.

3. Do an Internet search for "USGS WaterWatch" to find the WaterWatch Internet site. Navigate to the "Current Streamflow" page. Describe the locations in the U.S. where there is currently stream flooding. Describe the locations in the U.S. where there is currently drought.

4. Describe the geology, climate, vegetation, and topography conditions that tend to generate higher rates of infiltration and recharge.

5. Describe a geologic material that tends to have a small capillary fringe and explain why it is small in that material.

6. A lake has a surface area of 2.6 mi^2 (6.7 km^2) and an average depth of 23 feet (7.0 m). It has one inlet stream with an average discharge of 15.3 ft^3/second (0.433 m^3/sec) and one outlet stream with an average discharge of 13.9 ft^3/second (0.394 m^3/sec).
   (a) Compute the volume of the lake.
   (b) Estimate the average residence time for water in the lake.
   (c) Consider the water balance for the lake. Name additional possible terms in the balance aside from those listed above. What can you conclude about the total of these other terms?

7. *A cistern collects rainfall from the roof of a 25 ft × 45 ft (7.62 m × 13.72 m) building. The cistern holds 1000 gallons (3.78 m^3). During one particular storm, the rainfall amounts were as shown in Table 1.3. At about what time did the cistern overflow? See Appendix A for conversion factors.

8. *The cistern of the previous problem is used to water a garden. It takes 80 min for the full cistern to drain through a hose that has a 1.25 inch (3.175 cm) inside diameter. Calculate the average discharge rate of the hose in gallons/min, ft^3/sec, and m^3/sec. Calculate the average velocity

Table 1.3 Problem 7

Time Period	Rainfall	
(hours:minutes)	(inches)	(cm)
1:00–2:00	0.12	0.305
2:00–3:00	0.24	0.610
3:00–4:00	0.53	1.346
4:00–5:00	0.32	0.813
5:00–6:00	0.49	1.245
6:00–7:00	0.28	0.711
7:00–8:00	0.14	0.356
8:00–9:00	0.06	0.152

of water in the hose during drainage, reporting your answer in ft/sec and m/sec units.

9. *The drainage area of the Colorado River is about 653,000 km^2 and its average annual discharge is about 15 million acre-feet (1.85×10^{10} m^3) (Manning, 1992). The average precipitation rate in the basin is about 12 inches/year (30.5 cm/yr). Calculate the river discharge divided by the drainage basin area in inches/year (cm/yr). What fraction of the annual precipitation rate is this? What fates, other than ending up in the Colorado River, can precipitated water have in this basin?

10. *A groundwater and river basin has an area of 340 mi^2 (880 km^2). Estimates have been made of the average annual rates of precipitation (28 inches/year = 71 cm/yr), stream flow (13 inches/year = 33 cm/yr), and baseflow (6 inches/year = 15 cm/yr). Groundwater that is pumped and exported from the basin totals 1.8×10^9 ft^3/year (5.1×10^7 m^3/yr). Assume that there is zero net flux of groundwater through the basin boundaries. Create a chart like Figure 1.5 illustrating fluxes in the basin. Estimate the average annual rates of the following items:

(a) Overland flow + interflow (lump these two)

(b) Recharge

(c) Evapotranspiration

Report your answers in inches/year or cm/yr (think of it as volume/time/basin area).

11. *Every summer you visit the same lake in Maine, and every summer the neighbor goes on and on about how the lake is "spring-fed" (groundwater discharges up into the lake bottom). You got to wondering if that was true, so you collected all the information you could from the local geological survey office about the lake hydrology for the month of June:

- The surface area of the lake is 285 acres (115 ha).
- There is one inlet stream. For the month of June, the total discharge measured at a stream gage at the lake inlet was $2.77 \times 10^7 ft^3$ (7.84×10^5 m^3).
- There is one outlet stream. For the month of June, the total discharge measured at a stream gage at the lake outlet was $3.12 \times 10^7 ft^3$ (8.83×10^5 m^3).
- During the month of June, the total precipitation measured in a rain gage at the lakeshore was 1.63 inches (4.14 cm).
- Direct evaporation off the lake surface totaled 3.47 inches (8.81 cm) during the month of June.
- The lake level dropped 4.30 inches (10.9 cm) during the month of June.

(a) List the items that contribute flow into the lake, and items that contribute flow out of the lake (there may be unknown items I have not listed above). Write a hydrologic equation for the water balance of the lake in June.

(b) Quantify each of the terms in the hydrologic equation in units of ft^3 or m^3 for the month of June, and solve for unknowns in the equation.

(c) What, if anything, can you conclude about the notion that the lake is "spring-fed"?

(d) What measurements would you make to prove whether or not groundwater is discharging up into the lake bottom? (Assume someone is willing to pay for it.)

12. Consider the water balance for a reservoir with a surface area of 2.3 km^2. Download a comma-delimited text file of the following fluxes over the course of a year from the book website (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

- Discharge of the inlet stream (m^3/month)
- Discharge of the outlet stream (m^3/month)
- Precipitation rate on the reservoir surface (cm/month)
- Evaporation rate off the reservoir surface (cm/month)
- Reservoir elevation above sea level at the beginning of the month (m)

Other than the net groundwater discharge into the reservoir, the above fluxes are the only significant ones.

(a) Write out the equation for hydrologic balance for the case of this reservoir.

(b) Open the comma-delimited data file for this problem with a spreadsheet program to do all computations and graphing. Determine the average net groundwater discharge each month of the year, and create a graph of net groundwater discharge vs. time through the year. In your computations, make sure to convert all fluxes to a common set of units such as m^3/month.

2

Physical Properties

Key Terms

Viscosity	26	hydraulic head	36
dynamic viscosity	26	pressure head	36
capillarity	28	elevation head	36
gage pressure	28	velocity head	36
porosity	29	datum	37
void ratio	29	hydrostatic	38
effective porosity	30	piezometers	39
volumetric water content	33	wells	39
dry bulk density	33	pressure transducer	41
wet or total bulk density	33		

Contents

2.1 Introduction 23
2.2 Properties of Water 23
2.3 Properties of Air 28
2.4 Properties of Porous Media 29
2.5 Energy and Hydraulic Head 35
2.6 Measuring Hydraulic Head with Wells and Piezometers 39
2.7 Problems 42

2.1 Introduction

Understanding how water moves in the subsurface requires knowledge of the physical properties of both water and the materials that it moves through. The physical properties of water along with the size and distribution of pore spaces determine how much water is stored in a given volume and how easily water moves through the material. In all groundwater investigations, understanding the distribution of these material properties is key to understanding the patterns of groundwater movement.

2.2 Properties of Water

Natural groundwater consists primarily of water molecules with trace amounts of other dissolved ions and molecules. In the liquid state, these molecules and ions are closely packed, but constantly moving and jostling each other. The physical properties of water have their basis in these molecular-scale interactions, so a brief mention of water's molecular properties is relevant here.

Groundwater Science, Second Edition. DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-384705-8.00002-9

© 2013, 2002 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

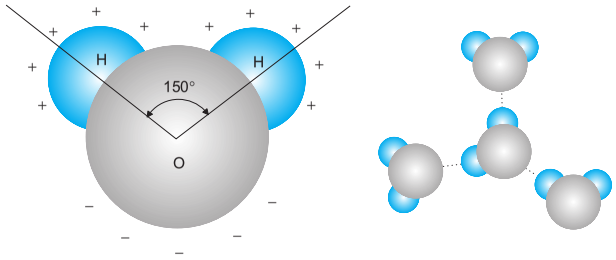


Figure 2.1 Geometry of a water molecule (left) and hydrogen bonding of water molecules (right).

Table 2.1 Typical Physical Properties of Fresh Water

Property	Symbol	Dimensions†	Value
Mass density	ρ_w	$[M/L^3]$	1.00 g/cm^3 1000 kg/m^3 1.94 slugs/ft^3
Weight density	$\rho_w g$	$[F/L^3]$	9810 N/m^3 62.4 lb/ft^3
Compressibility	β	$[L^2/F]$	4.5×10^{-10} m^2/N
Dynamic viscosity	μ	$[FT/L^2]$	1.4×10^{-3} N·sec/m^2

†L = length, M = mass, T = time, F = ML/T^2 = force.

Water molecules are polar, with more positive charge near the hydrogen atoms and more negative charge near the oxygen atom, as shown in Figure 2.1. This uneven charge distribution causes attraction known as hydrogen bonding, between the hydrogen atoms of one molecule and the oxygen atoms of another. The polarity and self-attraction of water molecules is the fundamental cause of viscosity, surface tension, and capillarity. Water chemistry is covered in much greater detail in Chapter 10, but this one point is relevant to several physical properties and deserves mention at this stage.

2.2.1 Density and Compressibility

The typical physical properties of fresh water are listed in Table 2.1. The mass density of fresh water ρ_w varies within a narrow range, and the figures in Table 2.1 are accurate enough for most analyses. English mass density units (slugs/ft^3) are almost never used, but instead the weight density lb/ft^3 units are used. Weight density $\rho_w g$ equals the mass density times the gravitational acceleration at the earth's surface, $g = 9.81\text{m/sec}^2 = 32.2\text{ft/s}^2$. It is simple to convert between mass density and weight density units when in the vicinity of the

earth's surface, where gravitational acceleration may be treated as a constant. For general information on units and conversion factors, see Appendix A.

Water density does vary slightly with temperature, pressure, and chemistry if the concentration of solute molecules is high enough. The density of pure water at atmospheric pressure varies between 0.998 and 1.000 g/cm^3 in the range of temperatures typical for groundwater (0°C to 20°C). As the temperature of a liquid rises, it usually becomes less dense as molecules move with greater velocity and molecular attraction forces are overcome to a greater extent. Water is an unusual liquid because the maximum density does not occur at the freezing temperature, but instead slightly above freezing at 4°C.

Water is often considered incompressible, but it does have a finite, low compressibility. As water pressure P rises an amount dP at a constant temperature, the density of water increases $d\rho_w$ from its original density ρ_w, and a given volume of water V_w will decrease in volume by dV_w in accordance with

$$\beta dP = \frac{d\rho_w}{\rho_w} = -\frac{dV_w}{V_w} \tag{2.1}$$

where β is the isothermal compressibility of water. Water compressibility varies only slightly within the normal range of groundwater temperatures, from $\beta = 4.9 \times 10^{-10}$ m^2/N at 0°C to $\beta = 4.5 \times 10^{-10}$ m^2/N at 20°C (Streeter and Wylie, 1979).

Example 2.1 To illustrate just how incompressible water is, use Eq. 2.1 to calculate the water density at the bottom of a well 500 m deep. Assume $\rho_w = 1000.0$ kg/m^3 and $P = 0$ (atmospheric pressure) at the top of the well, and that the water temperature is 10°C.

At the bottom of the well, pressure equals the weight density of water times the height of the water column H,

$$P = \rho_w g H = 9810\,\text{N/m}^3 \times 500\,\text{m} = 4.905 \times 10^6\,\text{N/m}^2$$

Since the pressure at the top of the well is zero, the change in pressure from top to bottom is $dP = 4.905 \times 10^6$ N/m^2. Using $\beta = 4.7 \times 10^{-10}$ m^2/N, Eq. 2.1 gives

$$d\rho_w = \beta dP \rho_w = 2.31\,\text{kg/m}^3$$

The water density at the bottom of the well is therefore 1002.3 kg/m^3.

2.2.2 Viscosity

Viscosity is friction within a fluid that results from the strength of molecule-to-molecule attractions. Thick fluids like molasses have higher viscosity than thin, runny fluids like water or gasoline. To grasp what viscosity means, consider the two flat plates separated by a thin film of fluid as shown in Figure 2.2. When you try to slide one plate laterally relative to the other, the fluid resists shearing; the faster you slide the plate, the greater the resistance. The resisting force F in this case is proportional to the area of the film between the plates A, a fluid property called **dynamic viscosity** μ, and the velocity of the plates relative to each other dv, and inversely proportional to the thickness of the fluid separating the two plates dz:

$$F = A\mu \frac{dv}{dz} \tag{2.2}$$

This resistance to internal shear causes water to resist flow through geologic materials. In order to flow through pores or fractures, a packet of water must change shape and shear as it flows. Note that pore size is analogous to dz in Eq. 2.2, so that water encounters greater viscous resistance flowing through materials with smaller pores.

The viscosity of a liquid generally decreases with increasing temperature, and water is no exception in this respect. The dynamic viscosity of water ranges from $\mu = 1.79 \times 10^{-3}$ N·sec/m^2 at 0°C to $\mu = 1.01 \times 10^{-3}$ N·sec/m^2 at 20°C. The unit N·sec/m^2 is equivalent to kg/(sec·m) in more fundamental SI units. Dynamic viscosity is also given in poise (1 poise = 1 g/(sec·cm).

A related parameter, the kinematic viscosity ν, is proportional to dynamic viscosity:

$$\nu = \frac{\mu}{\rho} \tag{2.3}$$

where ρ is the fluid density.

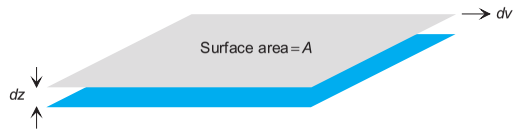


Figure 2.2 Picturing the meaning of viscosity. Two parallel plates with surface area A are separated by fluid of thickness dz. The upper plate moves with velocity dv relative to the lower plate.

2.2.3 Surface Tension and Capillarity

Because polar water molecules are attracted to each other, a mass of water has internal cohesion that tends to hold it together. This is apparent in the way water drops tend to form spheres as they fall through the air and the way water can bead up on a flat surface. At an air–water interface, it looks as though there is a thin membrane stretched over the surface, hence the term surface tension.

Water beads up to a greater extent on some surfaces than on others. For example, it beads up more on a freshly waxed car than on an unwaxed car. Water molecules have very little attraction to the molecules in wax, which are nonpolar. By contrast, water's self-attraction is quite strong, and water pulls itself into distinct beads on the waxy surface. If you place water drops on most any rock surface, the water will not bead up much. Instead it will spread out and wet the surface. In pore spaces containing both air and water, the water will generally wet the mineral surfaces, leaving the central parts of the pores for the air, as illustrated in Figure 2.3.

A layer of water molecules on the order of 0.1 to 0.5 μm (10^{-6} m) thick is so strongly attracted to mineral surfaces that it is essentially immobile (de Marsily, 1986). Farther than about 0.5 μm from mineral surfaces, the forces of attraction are not strong enough to prevent movement of water molecules and water outside that distance is free to move. Surface attraction forces are stronger for clay minerals than for other mineral types, due to the charged nature of clay mineral surfaces.

The attraction of water to mineral surfaces causes water to pull and spread itself across the surfaces. Because of this pull or tension in the water, the pressure within the water is less than the air pressure within the pores. As the amount of water present decreases, the pull of the mineral surface attraction forces increases, the pressure within the water decreases, and the air–water interface develops a more contorted shape conforming to the mineral grains. This attraction of water to mineral surfaces in partly saturated materials is called **capillarity**. Capillarity allows water to wet pore spaces above the water table, in the same way that a paper towel will wick up water when dipped into a puddle. Capillary forces tend to be greater in finer-grained granular materials, due to a greater amount of mineral surface area.

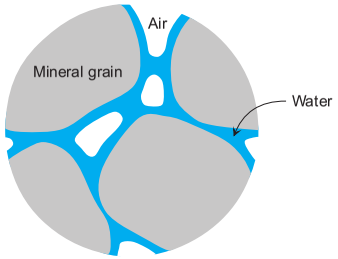


Figure 2.3 Water and air in the pore spaces of a granular medium.

2.3 Properties of Air

Since air occupies some amount of the subsurface pore spaces, it is worthwhile defining some of the average physical properties of atmosphere at the earth's surface.

The pressure in the atmosphere at the earth's surface varies with the weather and with elevation. Weather alone can cause variations as much as 5% of the total pressure. Near sea level, atmospheric pressure decreases about 15% with each kilometer of altitude. At sea level, atmospheric pressure averages about 1.013×10^5 N/m^2. In other pressure units, this is equal to 1.0 atm (atmosphere), 1.013 bar, 14.7 lb/in^2, 760 torr, and 760 mm Hg. The latter units are based on a mercury manometer that measures the height of a column of mercury in a sealed tube that has a vacuum at its upper surface and atmospheric pressure at its lower surface.

Groundwater pressures are often measured as **gage pressure**, which means the amount of pressure in excess of atmospheric pressure. This name makes sense because gages measure the pressure difference between two fluids, in this case between atmosphere and pore water. Assuming an atmospheric pressure of 1.01×10^5 N/m^2, a groundwater gage pressure of 1.35×10^5 N/m^2 is equivalent to an absolute pressure of 2.36×10^5 N/m^2.

The density of the atmosphere also varies with weather and altitude. At the earth's surface, the atmospheric density averages about 1.2 kg/m^3.

The composition of the atmosphere near sea level is dominated by nitrogen (N_2), which makes up about 78% of the molecules, oxygen, which makes up about 21%, and argon (Ar), which is slightly less than 1%. Near the earth's surface, the average molar mass of the atmosphere is about 29.0 g/mole of molecules.

2.4 Properties of Porous Media

2.4.1 Porosity

The **porosity** of a rock or soil is simply the fraction of the material volume that is pore space. In quantitative terms the porosity n is defined as

$$n = \frac{V_v}{V_t} \tag{2.4}$$

where V_v is the volume of voids in a total volume of material V_t. The porosity is a dimensionless parameter in the range $0 < n < 1$. Porosity is sometimes expressed as a percent by multiplying the result of Eq. 2.4 times 100.

Geotechnical engineers often use a related dimensionless parameter called the **void ratio** e, which is defined as

$$e = \frac{V_v}{V_s} \tag{2.5}$$

where V_s is the volume of mineral solids in a given volume of material. Since $V_t = V_s + V_v$, e and n are related as follows:

$$n = \frac{e}{1+e}, \quad e = \frac{n}{1-n} \tag{2.6}$$

Porosity takes different forms in different geologic materials, as illustrated in Figure 2.4. In granular materials like silts, sands, gravels, and porous sandstones, an interconnected network of pores between the solid mineral grains (intergranular porosity) is a large portion of the total porosity. In clayey unconsolidated deposits and in many rocks, fractures through the medium are another important component of porosity, in addition to matrix porosity. In porous sandstones or in clays, the amount of fracture porosity is usually small

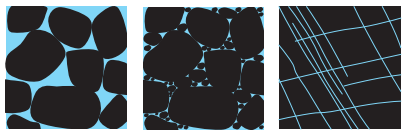


Figure 2.4 Intergranular matrix porosity in a well-sorted granular material (left). Lower porosity is associated with poorly sorted granular material (middle). Fracture porosity in crystalline rocks (right).

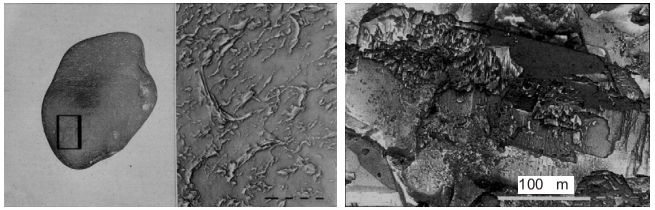


Figure 2.5 Scanning electron microscope (SEM) image showing intragranular porosity at the surface of a quartz sand grain (left) and a feldspar crystal in sandstone (right). From Trewin, N., 1988, Use of the scanning electron microscope in sedimentology, in *Techniques in Sedimentology*, Blackwell Scientific Publications.

compared to the matrix porosity. On the other hand, in many crystalline and carbonate rocks, fracture porosity makes up the bulk of total porosity. Even if the fractures are a small part of the total porosity, they can play the leading role in conducting groundwater flow. In a fissured clay, the fracture porosity may be a small compared to matrix porosity, but most of the groundwater flow may occur in the fractures, not the matrix.

The mineral solids themselves may also contain internal pores (intragranular porosity), which may or may not be connected to the surface of the mineral and thus to the network of intergranular pores. Figure 2.5 shows two scanning electron microscope images of intragranular porosity. Wood et al. (1990) measured intragranular porosity in quartz-rich glacial outwash sands from Cape Cod, Massachusetts and found that on average, 9% of the grain volume was internal pore space. Ball et al. (1990) found 1–5% internal pore space within the grains of an outwash sand from the Canadian Forces Base Borden in Ontario; this sand consisted largely of quartz and feldspars, with minor amounts of calcite.

Some pores, both intragranular and intergranular, are "landlocked" or "dead-end"; they are not part of the interconnected network of pore channels that conduct fluids. Since landlocked and dead-end pores contribute little to flow, a useful concept called effective porosity is used in flow and transport analyses. The **effective porosity** n_e is defined by Eq. 2.4 with the modification that V_v is the volume of voids that is interconnected and transmitting flow. The effective porosity deviates significantly from the total porosity only where the percent of landlocked and dead-end pores is high. In certain crystalline rock settings, the effective porosity is much smaller than the total porosity.

Table 2.2 Typical Values of Porosity

Material	n (%)
Narrowly graded silt, sand, gravel	30–50
Widely graded silt, sand, gravel	20–35
Clay, clay–silt	35–60
Sandstone	5–30
Limestone, dolomite	0–40
Shale	0–10
Crystalline rock	0–10
Massive granite	0–0.5

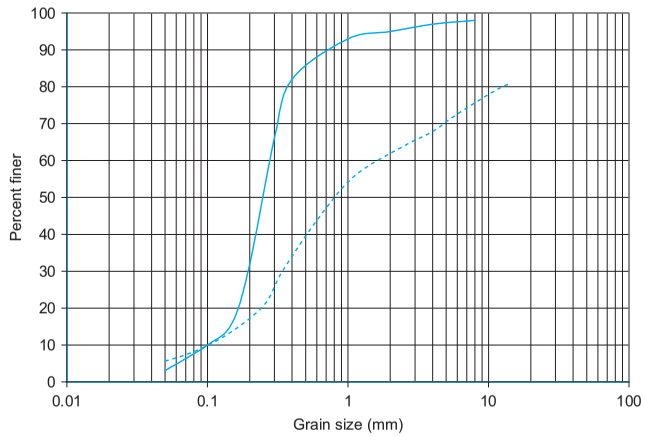


Figure 2.6 Grain size curves for two samples from glaciofluvial deposits in Maine. The solid curve is a narrowly graded (well sorted) fine sand, and the dashed curve is a widely graded (poorly sorted) gravelly sand. The porosity of the fine sand is $n = 0.38$ and the porosity of the gravelly sand is $n = 0.29$.

Table 2.2 lists typical porosities for geologic materials, based on data compiled by Davis (1969) plus data on massive granites from Mariner et al. (2011). The porosity of unconsolidated materials tends to be highest in narrowly graded (well-sorted) materials like uniform sands. Widely graded (poorly sorted) materials like glacial tills tend to have lower porosity, with smaller particles packed between bigger particles. The two grain size curves in Figure 2.6 show the correlation between sorting and porosity. Clays have relatively high porosity due to the flocculated "card house" arrangement of platy clay minerals. Rock porosities are quite variable depending on the extent of fracturing, cementing, and matrix porosity, so the typical values in such a table are of limited use. In massive crystalline rock, porosities are often less than 1%.

2.4.2 Grain Size

In unconsolidated materials, the size of the mineral grains is a key characteristic of the material. The distribution of grain sizes determines how much pore space is available to hold water, and how easily water is transmitted through the material. We all have some sense of what is meant by the terms *clay*, *silt*, *sand*, and *gravel*. A specific definition of these grain sizes is listed in Table 2.3.

The word *clay* has two relevant meanings. It defines the smallest size range for mineral particles and it also defines a class of minerals known as *clay minerals*. Clay minerals are sheet silicates, which are typically shaped like thin plates. They are usually so small that they rank as clay size. The surfaces of clay minerals tend to be electrically charged, negative at the faces and positive at the edges, so they bond to one another with electrostatic attraction as shown in Figure 2.7. This self-attraction is what makes clay-rich sediment sticky.

The grain size distribution of an unconsolidated material is measured by passing the material through nested sieves with different size meshes. Measuring the fraction of silt and clay sizes is done with a hydrometer analysis. For this analysis, a fine sediment is thoroughly suspended in a column of water, which is then left undisturbed while particles settle to the bottom of the column. A hydrometer measures the decrease in the density of the water-sediment suspension vs. time. Since different size particles settle at different velocities, the distribution of particle sizes can be deduced.

Table 2.3 U.S. Department of Agriculture Grain Size Definitions

Material	Grain Size Range (mm)
Clay	<0.002
Silt	0.002–0.05
Sand	0.05–2.0
Gravel	>2.0

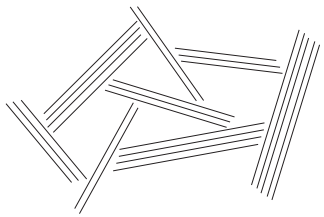


Figure 2.7 Schematic of clay minerals forming an open "card house" structure.

The results of a grain size analysis are usually plotted on a cumulative curve like those shown in Figure 2.6. To understand this plot consider the gravelly sand curve, which crosses the 1 mm line at about 55%. This means that 55% of the sample (by weight) consists of particles that are smaller than 1 mm—particles that would pass through a 1 mm mesh sieve. For gravelly sand, a common notation denotes specific grain sizes, for example, $d_{55} = 1.0$ mm, $d_{40} = 0.50$ mm, and $d_{20} = 0.24$ mm (see Figure 2.6). Steep curves on such plots indicate a narrowly graded (well sorted) material.

2.4.3 Volumetric Water Content and Bulk Density

The **volumetric water content** θ is the fraction of space occupied by water in a given volume of material V_t:

$$\theta = \frac{V_w}{V_t} \tag{2.7}$$

where V_w is the volume of water. Like n, θ is dimensionless, and can be reported as a decimal fraction or as a percent. If a material's pores are saturated with water, $\theta = n$; if the pores contain some air, $\theta < n$.

Another commonly used parameter is the **dry bulk density** ρ_b, defined as

$$\rho_b = \frac{m_s}{V_t} \tag{2.8}$$

where m_s is the mass of solids in sample volume V_t. Typical units for ρ_b are g/cm^3. The **wet or total bulk density** ρ_t is defined similarly, but it includes the mass of both solids and water:

$$\rho_t = \frac{m_s + m_w}{V_t} \tag{2.9}$$

where m_w is the mass of water in the sample.

Since the volume V_t in Eq. 2.8 contains both pore space and solids, ρ_b is smaller than the density of the solids alone ρ_s:

$$\rho_s = \frac{m_s}{V_s} \tag{2.10}$$

where V_s is the volume of solids. Table 2.4 lists values of ρ_s for some of the most common minerals in rock and sediment.

Most common rocks and unconsolidated materials are composed primarily of some combination of these minerals, so reasonable estimates can be made of the overall sample ρ_s if the mineral composition and porosity are known.

Table 2.4 Common Mineral Densities

Mineral	ρ_s (g/cm^3)
Quartz	2.65
Feldspars	2.54–2.76
Clay minerals	2.6–2.8
Micas	2.7–3.2
Pyroxene	3.2–3.6
Amphibole	2.8–3.6
Olivine	3.3–4.4
Calcite	2.71
Dolomite	2.85

Source: Klein and Hurlbut (1993).

When making calculations involving parameters like n, e, θ, or ρ_b, it is useful to make a table listing the volumes and masses of each phase in a sample. The following example shows how to apply such a table.

Example 2.2 A sample of sandy silt was retrieved from the subsurface. It was cylinder-shaped, with diameter 8.0 cm and length 30.0 cm. The moist mass measured right after retrieval was 3265 g, and after oven-drying to remove all water, the mass was 2931 g. Examination of the sample revealed that the composition was about 3/4 quartz and 1/4 feldspar. From this information, calculate n, θ, and ρ_b.

Start by making a table of the masses and volumes of the three phases air, water, and mineral solids, inserting the given information. Then proceed to determine the unknown quantities as follows.

The total volume of the sample is calculated from its dimensions:

$$\begin{aligned} V_t &= \pi r^2 L \\ &= \pi (4.0\,\text{cm})^2 (30.0\,\text{cm}) \\ &= 1508\,\text{cm}^3 \end{aligned}$$

Since the mass of air in the sample can be neglected, the mass of the water phase is just the mass lost in the drying process, $3265 - 2931 = 334$ g. The density of fresh water is approximately 1.00 g/cm^3, so the volume of the water phase is 334 cm^3. Given the mineral composition, the density of the mineral solids can be estimated at 2.65 g/cm^3.

Table 2.5 Phase Table for the Example Problem

Volume (cm^3)	Phase	Mass (g)
68	Air	0
334	Water	334
1106	Solid	2931
1508	Total	3265

Using this density and the mass of the mineral solids, the volume of the mineral solids is calculated as

$$\frac{2931\,\text{g}}{2.65\,\text{g/cm}^3} = 1106\,\text{cm}^3$$

The volume of air in the sample is the total volume minus the volume of solids and water: $V_a = V_t - V_s - V_w = 68\,\text{cm}^3$. Now all the masses and volumes of the different phases are known as shown in the completed phase table (Table 2.5).

Using the values from the table, the parameters can be directly calculated as $n = V_v/V_t = (V_a + V_w)/V_t = 0.27$, $\theta = V_w/V_t = 0.22$, and $\rho_b = m_s/V_t = 1.94\,\text{g/cm}^3$.

2.5 Energy and Hydraulic Head

Water flows from one place to another in response to uneven distributions of mechanical energy within the water. Water always flows from regions with higher mechanical energy towards regions with lower mechanical energy. As water flows along its path, it loses some of its mechanical energy to internal viscous friction. This energy lost to friction adds heat to the geologic medium, but this heat is usually very minor compared to other heat sources. The mechanical energy in water can take on three forms:

1. Elastic potential energy
2. Gravitational potential energy
3. Kinetic energy

Elastic potential energy is gained by compressing water, gravitational potential energy is achieved by lifting water to higher elevation, and kinetic energy stems from the velocity of water.

These forms of mechanical energy were first quantified by Daniel Bernoulli in 1738. The Bernoulli equation, a fundamental equation of fluid mechanics, can be written as

$$E = PV + mgz + \frac{1}{2}mv^2 \tag{2.11}$$

for relatively incompressible fluids like water. This equation describes the mechanical energy E of water with mass m, pressure P, elevation z, volume V, and velocity v. The Bernoulli equation assumes that the water is in the vicinity of the earth's surface, where the acceleration of gravity g can be taken as a constant. The SI unit of energy is the joule. One joule in more fundamental metric units equals $\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{sec}^2$ or N·m (see Appendix A for a discussion of pressure and energy units). The energy predicted by Eq. 2.11 can be thought of as the work required to compress, elevate, and accelerate a mass m of water to its current state from a reference state where $P = z = v = 0$. Another form of the energy equation is the energy per mass of water, a quantity termed the fluid potential ϕ by Hubbert (1940):

$$\begin{aligned}\phi &= \frac{E}{m} \\ &= \frac{P}{\rho_w} + gz + \frac{v^2}{2}\end{aligned} \tag{2.12}$$

For analysis of water flow, a more convenient parameter is energy per weight of water. Taking Eq. 2.11 and dividing each term by the weight of water mg gives a new quantity called the **hydraulic head** h:

$$\begin{aligned}h &= \frac{E}{mg} \\ &= \frac{P}{\rho_w g} + z + \frac{v^2}{2g}\end{aligned} \tag{2.13}$$

Conveniently, hydraulic head has the simple unit of length. The three terms on the right side of Eq. 2.13 are called the **pressure head**, **elevation head**, and **velocity head**, respectively. The hydraulic head h is also called head; in this book, *head* and *hydraulic head* are synonymous. Water always flows towards regions of lower hydraulic head, the same way heat flows towards regions of lower temperature.

Example 2.3 A garden hose is pointing straight up, spraying water into a fountain that rises 2.5 m above the end of the hose. Assume the total hydraulic head in the water at the top of the fountain exactly

equals the total hydraulic head of the water as it exits the end of the hose (in reality there is some small amount of frictional energy and head lost as the water travels upward to the top of the fountain). What is the velocity of the water as it leaves the hose?

First we will calculate the total head at the top of the fountain. Since the water is in direct contact with the atmosphere, its pressure must equal atmospheric pressure. By convention, atmospheric pressure is generally assigned a value of zero, so $P=0$. At the very top of the fountain, the water velocity is zero, $v=0$. The elevation at the top is 2.5 m higher than the elevation of the end of the hose. Calling the end of the hose our elevation datum (where elevation = 0), $z=2.5$. Thus, by Eq. 2.13, the head at the top of the fountain is

$$\begin{aligned} h &= 0+2.5+0 \\ &= 2.5\,\text{m} \end{aligned}$$

At the end of the hose, we assume the same head applies. Again $P=0$ because water is in contact with the atmosphere. The elevation at this point is $z=0$, so the unknown velocity can be calculated with a rearrangement of Eq. 2.13:

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \sqrt{\left(h-\frac{P}{\rho_w g}-z\right)2g} \\ &= \sqrt{(2.5\,\text{m})(2)(9.81\,\text{m/s}^2)} \\ &= 7.0\,\text{m/s} \end{aligned}$$

Groundwater flows with very low velocity, usually less than a few meters per day, so that in most cases the velocity head contributes an insignificant amount to the hydraulic head. Consider how small the velocity head is for an extremely rapid groundwater flow of 100 m/day: $v^2/2g = 6.8\times10^{-8}$ m. This is quite small, compared to fluctuations in elevation and pressure head, which are more on the order of meters. The velocity head is generally negligible compared to the other two terms, so Eq. 2.13 may be reduced to the following for groundwater flow:

$$h=\frac{P}{\rho_w g}+z \tag{2.14}$$

In comparing the hydraulic head at different locations, it is important that all measurements of z are made relative to one elevation **datum**, a horizontal surface from which elevations are measured. For studies of small areas, the elevation datum is often selected as some arbitrary horizontal surface. For example, the datum could be level with a mark on a concrete floor slab in a building. In large-scale studies, the elevation datum is typically a datum established by government surveys. In the U.S., the National Geodetic Vertical Datum (NGVD) is a datum approximating sea level. An array of permanent benchmarks across the U.S. give elevations relative to NGVD, and local surveys can tie into these benchmarks.

Similarly, the pressures used in calculating a set of hydraulic heads must be measured on a single scale. Most often, the pressure scale is set with atmospheric pressure equal to zero (gage pressure). In most studies, atmospheric pressure variations can be neglected and gage pressures are used.

2.5.1 Hydrostatics

In regions where the hydraulic head is constant, there is no flow ($v=0$), and the conditions are said to be **hydrostatic**. Examples of hydrostatic conditions include the water column in a nonpumping well and water in a lake. At the water surface in a well or at a lake, the pressure is zero (atmospheric), so the hydraulic head is simply $h=z_s$ where z_s is the elevation of the water surface. Since the hydraulic head is constant, $h=z_s$ throughout the entire water body.

Going down from the surface, h remains constant, while $P/(\rho_w g)$ increases at the same rate z decreases. When water of uniform density is the only fluid, the pressure anywhere can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned} P &= (h-z)\rho_w g \\ &= (\text{depth})\rho_w g \end{aligned} \tag{2.15}$$

where the head is measured anywhere in the static zone and z is the elevation of the point where P is calculated. In a static water body like a lake or a nonpumping well, the head equals the elevation of the water surface and $h-z=z_s-z$ is merely the depth of water. In the hydrostatic case, Eq. 2.15 dictates that water pressure equals the depth times the weight density of water.

Example 2.4 Calculate the pressure at the bottom of a nonpumping well that has a 215 ft (65.5 m) water column.

No elevation data are given, so you are free to select any elevation datum. The choice of datum will have no effect on the answer, but for this calculation it is convenient to assume the datum is at the bottom of the well. The elevation at the bottom of the well is zero, while the elevation at the top of the water column is 215 ft. The head at the top of the water column is $h=z_s=215$ ft. Since the water in the well is

hydrostatic, $h = 215$ ft throughout the water column. Using Eq. 2.15 for the bottom of the well results in

$$\begin{aligned} P &= (h - z)\rho_w g \\ &= (215 - 0 \text{ ft})(62.4 \text{ lb/ft}^3) \\ &= 13,416 \text{ lb/ft}^2 \ (9.25 \times 10^7 \text{ N/m}^2) \end{aligned}$$

Hydrostatic methods can also be applied in cases where there is horizontal groundwater flow, but no vertical component of flow. When there is no vertical component of flow, there is no variation in h in the vertical direction and Eq. 2.15 may be applied with $h - z$ equal to the depth below the water table.

2.6 Measuring Hydraulic Head with Wells and Piezometers

Using hydrostatic principles, it is quite easy to make direct measurements of hydraulic head in the pore water of the saturated zone. All that is needed is a pipe installed into the subsurface as illustrated in Figure 2.8. The upper end of the pipe must be open to the atmosphere so that the water surface in the pipe is at atmospheric pressure. At or near the bottom of the pipe, there are holes or slots that allow water to move into the pipe from the surrounding saturated rock or soil. Small diameter pipes like this are called **piezometers** and larger diameter ones are called **wells**.

Assuming the well is not pumped, there is typically very little flow into or out of the pipe and it is reasonable to assume hydrostatic conditions within the pipe. At the air–water interface, $P = 0$ and the head there equals the elevation head $h = z_s$. With hydrostatic conditions, the head everywhere in the pipe is $h = z_s$. Just outside the pipe where the holes or slots are, the head in the pore water of the medium is also $h = z_s$. The measurement applies only to the pore water just outside the perforated part of the pipe; it does not apply to pore water just outside the upper, solid section of the pipe. The elevation of the water level in the pipe is therefore a measurement of h in the saturated zone just outside the perforated section of the pipe.

When a piezometer or well is first installed, the head in the pipe probably does not perfectly match the head in the saturated zone just outside the pervious section. If the head in the pipe is lower, water will flow into the pipe, raising the water level and head. If the head in the pipe is higher than in the surrounding saturated zone, water will flow out of the pipe, lowering the head in the pipe. In this manner, the water level in the pipe adjusts itself towards the head in the saturated zone outside the pervious section.

In low hydraulic conductivity materials, there is often disequilibrium between the head in the pipe and the head in the formation. Because water can only flow slowly, it may take anywhere from hours to weeks for enough water to flow through the medium near the pervious section to establish equivalent heads in the pipe and the medium.

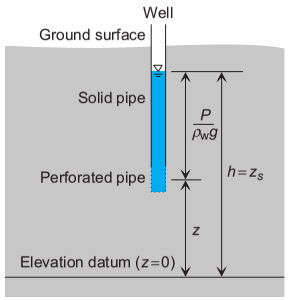


Figure 2.8 Measuring hydraulic head with a piezometer or well.

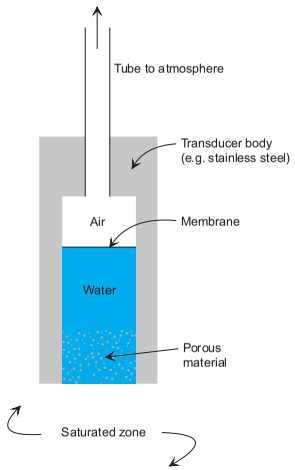


Figure 2.9 Pressure transducer.

There are some cases where the head in the piezometer or well is not equal to the head outside the pervious section of pipe. If the well is being pumped, there may be significant frictional head loss in the flow path from the formation through the porous part of the pipe and inside the pipe en route to the pump.

In low hydraulic conductivity materials, more rapid equilibration of water levels can be achieved by using smaller diameter piezometers. Some piezometers consist of a very short section of porous pipe with a **pressure transducer** (an electronic or pneumatic device for measuring pressure) within the pipe, as shown in Figure 2.9. Typically, pressure transducers work by measuring the deflection of a membrane that has pore water pressure on one side and atmospheric pressure on the other. Very little water is displaced as the transducer responds to changes in head, so pressure transducers equilibrate much more rapidly than open pipe piezometers.

To measure heads in piezometers with pressure transducers, the elevation of the installed transducer must be known, and head is calculated using Eq. 2.14. Another advantage of transducer piezometers is that they can be installed in awkward locations such as under landfills, where vertical riser pipes are not possible.

Example 2.5 Refer to Figure 2.10 and Table 2.6 for this example. Calculate the hydraulic head at piezometers A and B, and the water pressure at the bottom of these two piezometers. Does groundwater flow in the vicinity of these two piezometers have an upward or a downward component?

The hydraulic head in either piezometer is merely the elevation of the water surface. To calculate head from the data given in Table 2.6, subtract the depth to water from the elevation of the top of casing. For

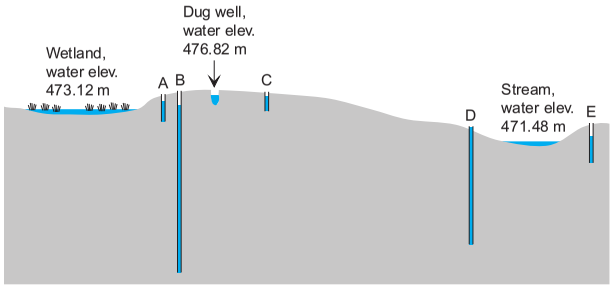


Figure 2.10 Vertical profile through an area with a wetland, dug well, stream, and five piezometers. The data of Table 2.6 apply to this figure.

3

Principles of Flow

Key Terms

Darcy's law	48	Isotropy	59
hydraulic conductivity	49	transmissivity	67
hydraulic gradient	49	constant-head test	70
specific discharge	51	falling-head test	71
average linear velocity	51	slug test	73
Intrinsic permeability	55	pumping test	73
Laminar flow	58	cubic law	75
Turbulent flow	58	characteristic curve	77
Reynolds number	58	field capacity	78
heterogeneous	59	tensiometer	81
homogeneous	59	fresh water head	84
Anisotropy	59	Ghyben–Herzberg relation	86

Contents

3.1 Introduction 47
3.2 Darcy's Law and Hydraulic Conductivity 48
3.3 Intrinsic Permeability and Conductivity of Other Fluids 55
3.4 Limits on the Application of Darcy's Law 56
3.5 Heterogeneity and Anisotropy of Hydraulic Conductivity 59
3.6 Estimating Average Hydraulic Conductivities 63
3.7 Transmissivity 67
3.8 Measuring Hydraulic Conductivity 68
3.9 Flow in Fractured Rock 75
3.10 Unsaturated Flow 77
3.11 Flow of Groundwater with Variable Density 83
3.12 Problems 90

3.1 Introduction

In almost any investigation involving groundwater, questions arise about how much water is moving and how fast it is flowing. Typical questions in contamination remediation studies are: "What should the well discharge be to capture the entire plume of contaminated water?" or "How long will it take for the contaminated groundwater to reach a nearby stream?" Regarding water supply issues, you might hear questions like "If we pump 5 million gallons/day from this well field, will it dry up a nearby wetland and nearby domestic wells?" or "How much discharge can we hope to get from a well 30 m deep in this aquifer at this location?" The answers to such questions are based on groundwater flow analyses, which in turn are based on some straightforward physical principles that govern subsurface flow. An empirical relationship called Darcy's law and conservation of mass form the basis for many useful hand calculations and computer simulations that can be made to analyze groundwater flow.

Groundwater Science, Second Edition. DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-384705-8.00003-0

© 2013, 2002 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

3.2 Darcy's Law and Hydraulic Conductivity

In 1856, French engineer Henry Darcy was working for the city of Dijon, France on a project involving the use of sand to filter the water supply. He performed laboratory experiments to examine the factors that govern the rate of water flow through sand (Darcy, 1856; Freeze, 1994). The results of his experiments defined basic empirical principles of groundwater flow that are embodied in an equation now known as Darcy's law.

Darcy's apparatus consisted of a sand-filled column with an inlet and an outlet similar to that illustrated in Figure 3.1. Two manometers (essentially very small piezometers) measure the hydraulic head at two points within the column (h_1 and h_2). The sample is saturated, and a steady flow of water is forced through at a discharge rate Q [L^3/T].

Darcy found through repeated experiments with a specific sand that Q was proportional to ($\propto$) the head difference Δh between the two manometers and inversely proportional to the distance between manometers Δs:

$$Q \propto \Delta h, \qquad Q \propto \frac{1}{\Delta s} \tag{3.1}$$

Obviously, Q is also proportional to the cross-sectional area of the column A.

Combining these observations and writing an equation in differential form gives **Darcy's law** for one-dimensional flow:

$$Q_s = -K_s \frac{dh}{ds} A \tag{3.2}$$

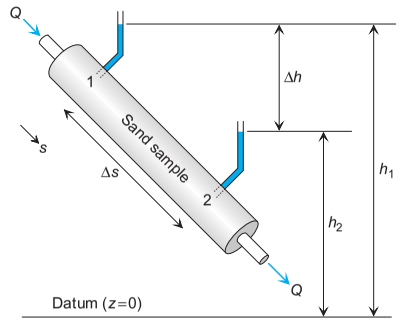


Figure 3.1 Schematic illustrating steady flow through a sand sample. The manometers measure heads h_1 and h_2 at locations 1 and 2 within the column. The s coordinate direction runs parallel to the column.

where Q_s is discharge in the s direction. The constant of proportionality K_s is the **hydraulic conductivity** in the s direction, a property of the geologic medium. Hydraulic conductivity is a measure of the ease with which a medium transmits water; higher K_s materials transmit water more easily than low K_s materials. The term *hydraulic conductivity* is sometimes abbreviated to just *conductivity*. The minus sign on the right side of this equation is necessary because head decreases in the direction of flow. If there is flow in the positive s direction, Q_s is positive and dh/ds is negative. Conversely, when flow is in the negative s direction, Q_s is negative and dh/ds is positive.

Consider the units of the entities in Darcy's law. Head h and the coordinate s both have length units, so dh/ds is dimensionless. The dimensionless quantity dh/ds represents the rate that head changes in the s direction, and is known as the **hydraulic gradient**. The dimensions of Q_s are $[L^3/T]$ and of A are $[L^2]$, so the hydraulic conductivity K_s is $[L/T]$.

Rocks or soils with small pores allow only slow migration of water while materials with larger, less constricted pores permit more rapid migration. Water traveling though small, constricted pores must shear itself more in the process of traveling a given distance than water traveling through larger pores. More shearing in the water causes more viscous resistance and slower flow. Other factors being equal, the average velocity of groundwater migration is proportional to K. Hydraulic conductivity is an empirical constant measured in laboratory or field experiments.

Another term, *permeability*, has historically been synonymous with *hydraulic conductivity*, but now its usage is associated with *intrinsic permeability*, a related property that is not specific to the fluid water (see Section 3.3).

Figure 3.2 shows some typical ranges of hydraulic conductivity values for common rocks and soils. Hydraulic conductivity varies over a tremendous range, 14 orders of magnitude, in common geologic materials. Since groundwater velocity is proportional to K, there is a corresponding huge range in natural groundwater velocities in various geologic materials. At the low-K end of the spectrum in materials like shale or clay, velocities can be less than a mm/year and at the high-K end velocities can exceed several m/day.

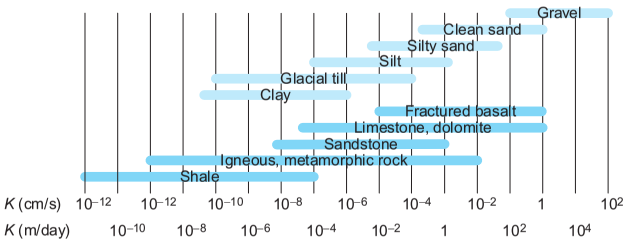


Figure 3.2 Typical values of hydraulic conductivity. Based mostly on data compiled by Davis (1969) and summarized by Freeze and Cherry (1979). Clay and shale ranges incorporate data presented by Neuzil (1994).

The wide variations of fracture width and frequency in crystalline rocks accounts for the huge ranges in observed hydraulic conductivities in such rock. Where carbonate rocks have been eroded by dissolution, fractures widen to form large openings and talk of "underground rivers" is not just mythology. Some basalts are also very conductive due to open columnar joints and voids at the bases and tops of successive lava flows. Groundwater flow velocities in basalts and limestones can be extremely high compared to velocities in more typical geologic materials where the pore sizes are on the order of millimeters or smaller.

The most common units for hydraulic conductivity are meters/day and feet/day for field studies, and cm/sec for laboratory studies. Inconsistent units such as gallons/day/foot^2 have been used in older irrigation and water supply studies. For conversion factors, see Appendix A.

Example 3.1 A sample of silty sand is tested in a laboratory experiment just like that illustrated in Figure 3.1. The column has an inside diameter of 10 cm and the length between manometers is $\Delta s = 25$ cm. With a steady flow of $Q = 1.7$ cm^3/min, the head difference between the manometers is $\Delta h = 15$ cm. Calculate the hydraulic conductivity K_s.

This is a direct application of Eq. 3.2, with a little rearrangement at the beginning to isolate K_s:

$$\begin{aligned} K_s &= -Q_s \frac{1}{A}\frac{ds}{dh} \\ &= -1.7\,\text{cm}^3/\text{min}\left(\frac{1}{\pi(5\,\text{cm})^2}\right)\left(\frac{25\,\text{cm}}{-15\,\text{cm}}\right) \\ &= 0.036\,\text{cm/min} \\ &= 6.0\times 10^{-4}\,\text{cm/sec} \end{aligned}$$

The sign of ds/dh is negative because as s increases, h decreases (see Figure 3.1).

3.2.1 Specific Discharge and Average Linear Velocity

In another form, Darcy's law can be expressed as the discharge per cross-sectional area as follows:

$$q_s = \frac{Q_s}{A} = -K_s \frac{dh}{ds} \tag{3.3}$$

The quantity q_s is generally known as the **specific discharge** and is sometimes called the *Darcy velocity*. To help understand the physical meaning of q_s, think of an imaginary square panel perpendicular to the s direction as shown in Figure 3.3. The flow through this panel is Q_s and the area of the panel is A. The specific discharge q_s is the ratio of discharge to area Q_s/A, as the panel area shrinks to a very small size.

Specific discharge has dimensions [L/T] like a velocity, but it means something a bit different than the average groundwater velocity. If water could flow through all of the area A of the cross-section, the specific discharge would represent the average velocity of water movement through the cross-section. In a subsurface medium, however, only a fraction of the cross-section is available for water to move through, so the average velocity of water through the pores is higher than the specific discharge. The **average linear velocity** $\bar{v}_s$ of water motion is directly proportional to the specific discharge and inversely proportional to the effective porosity n_e:

$$\bar{v}_s = \frac{q_s}{n_e} \tag{3.4}$$

Recall that the effective porosity n_e is the porosity that is interconnected and available for flow to move through. The average linear velocity $\bar{v}_s$ is the average velocity that a dissolved tracer or contaminant would have in flowing groundwater, if the tracer or contaminant did not react with the aquifer solids or with other chemicals.

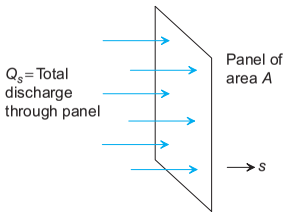


Figure 3.3 Concept of specific discharge $q_s = Q_s/A$. The panel of area A is normal to the s direction.

> ***Example 3.2*** Imagine that a culvert under a road has become packed with sand from end to end as a result of a storm. The culvert is 5 m long and 0.8 m in diameter. The sand in it is estimated to have a hydraulic conductivity $K = 3$ m/day and an effective porosity $n_e = 0.38$. The water level at one end of the culvert is 1.6 m higher than at the other end, and the entire culvert is below water. Calculate the discharge, specific discharge, and average linear velocity through the culvert.
>
> The cross-sectional area of the culvert is $\pi r^2 = 0.503\ \text{m}^2$. Set the s direction parallel to the culvert and use Darcy's law (Eq. 3.2),
>
> $$\begin{aligned} Q_s &= -K_s \frac{dh}{ds} A \\ &= -(3\ \text{m/day}) \left(\frac{1.6\ \text{m}}{-5\ \text{m}} \right) (0.503\ \text{m}^2) \\ &= 0.48\ \text{m}^3/\text{day} \end{aligned}$$
>
> The specific discharge is $q_s = Q_s/A = 0.96$ m/day, and the average linear velocity is $\bar{v}_s = q_s/n_e = 2.5$ m/day.

3.2.2 Darcy's Law in Three Dimensions

Groundwater is not constrained to flow only in one direction as in Darcy's column. In the real subsurface, groundwater flows in complex three-dimensional patterns. Assuming we describe the geometry of the subsurface with a Cartesian x, y, z coordinate system, there may be components of flow in each of these directions. Darcy's law for three-dimensional flow is analogous to the definition for one dimension:

$$\begin{aligned} q_x &= -K_x \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \\ q_y &= -K_y \frac{\partial h}{\partial y} \\ q_z &= -K_z \frac{\partial h}{\partial z} \end{aligned} \tag{3.5}$$

The x, y, z coordinate system can have any orientation, but it is common to set z vertical and x and y horizontal.

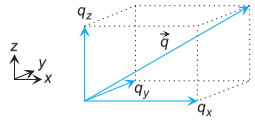


Figure 3.4 Total specific discharge vector $\vec{q}$ and its components q_x, q_y, and q_z.

In general three-dimensional flow, q, $\bar{v}_s$, and hydraulic gradient are all vector quantities (three components), head h is a scalar quantity (one component), and hydraulic conductivity is a tensor quantity (nine components). When the axes of the x, y, z coordinate system coincide with the principal axes of hydraulic conductivity (the directions of greatest, least, and intermediate K), the K tensor contains only three nonzero terms (K_x, K_y, and K_z), and the form of Darcy's law given in Eq. 3.5 applies. A more complex form of Darcy's law with all nine K tensor components is required when the principal K axes do not coincide with the coordinate axes (see Bear, 1972, for example). In practice, the more complex tensor form of Darcy's law is almost never needed because it is so much simpler to align the coordinate system with the principal axes of K.

The vector sum of the three components of specific discharge gives the specific discharge vector $\vec{q}$, the magnitude of which is given by

$$|\vec{q}| = \sqrt{q_x^2 + q_y^2 + q_z^2} \tag{3.6}$$

The three orthogonal specific discharge vector components are illustrated in Figure 3.4. Water flows parallel to the total specific discharge vector.

The hydraulic gradient components are written as partial derivatives (for example, $\partial h/\partial x$) rather than as a common derivative dh/dx, a convention that applies whenever a variable is a function of more than one variable. In the one-dimensional case, the hydraulic gradient is a derivative written as dh/dx because h varies as a function of x only. In the three-dimensional case, the hydraulic gradient is a partial derivative written as $\partial h/\partial x$ because h varies as a function of the three space variables x, y, and z. In words, $\partial h/\partial x$ means the change in h per distance in the x direction, keeping y and z constant. More information about derivatives and partial derivatives is available in Appendix B.

Example 3.3 There are three piezometers in a sand aquifer as shown in Figure 3.5. The heads at them are $h_A = 104.56$ ft (31.870 m), $h_B = 104.53$ ft (31.861 m), and $h_C = 103.42$ ft (31.522 m). The rate of recharge here is estimated to be 1.25 ft/yr (0.381 m/yr). The average horizontal hydraulic conductivity of the sand based on testing is $K_x = 8$ ft/day (2.44 m/day). Assume that in the vicinity of these three

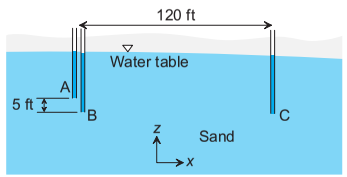


Figure 3.5 Vertical cross-section with three piezometers (Example 3.3).

piezometers, the vertical specific discharge q_z equals the recharge rate. Estimate the vertical hydraulic conductivity using the heads at wells A and B. Estimate the horizontal specific discharge q_x using the heads at wells B and C. Make a scaled vector sketch showing the x and z components of specific discharge, and the total specific discharge vector $\vec{q}$ (assume that there is no flow in the y direction).

First, convert the recharge rate units to ft/day and assign this to the vertical specific discharge. This would be $q_z = -1.25$ ft/yr $= -0.0034$ ft/day (0.00104 m/day). q_z is negative because flow is downward, in the negative z direction. Use Darcy's law in the z direction to estimate the vertical hydraulic conductivity:

$$\begin{aligned} K_z &= -q_z \frac{\partial z}{\partial h} \\ &= -q_z \frac{z_A - z_B}{h_A - h_B} \\ &= -(-0.0034\,\text{ft/day}) \frac{5\,\text{ft}}{0.03\,\text{ft}} \\ &= 0.57\,\text{ft/day}\ (0.17\,\text{m/day}) \end{aligned}$$

Darcy's law in the x direction will give the specific discharge component q_x:

$$\begin{aligned} q_x &= -K_x \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \\ &= -K_x \frac{h_C - h_B}{x_C - x_B} \\ &= -8\,\text{ft/day} \frac{-1.11\,\text{ft}}{120\,\text{ft}} \\ &= 0.074\,\text{ft/day}\ (0.023\,\text{m/day}) \end{aligned}$$

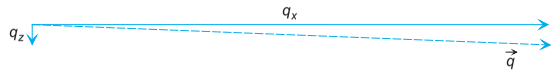


Figure 3.6 Vector sketch of the specific discharge vector and its components for the example problem.

A scaled vector sketch of the specific discharge vector is shown in Figure 3.6. As is often the case in permeable aquifers, flow is nearly horizontal.

3.3 Intrinsic Permeability and Conductivity of Other Fluids

The hydraulic conductivity is a parameter specific to the flow of fresh water through a medium. The flow of other fluids can be of interest, particularly in the analysis of petroleum reservoirs and some contaminant migration problems. **Intrinsic permeability** k, unlike hydraulic conductivity K, is independent of fluid properties and only depends on the medium. The two parameters are proportional and related as follows (Hubbert, 1940):

$$k = \frac{K\mu}{\rho_w g} \tag{3.7}$$

where μ and ρ_w are the dynamic viscosity and density of water, and g is gravitational acceleration.

Analyzing the dimensions of k reveals that they are $[L^2]$. For fresh water at 20°C, $k(\text{cm}^2) \simeq 0.001K$ (m/s). It makes intuitive sense that k has units of area, since the primary factor determining a medium's resistance to flow is the typical cross-sectional area of its pores. Studies indicate that for uniform grain-size granular materials, k is proportional to the square of grain diameter (Hubbert, 1956). Table 11.4 lists density and viscosity values for water and common organic liquid contaminants; these properties are needed when converting from intrinsic permeability to conductivity for a specific fluid.

In petroleum studies, a common unit of intrinsic permeability is the darcy, which is experimentally defined. One darcy is approximately equal to $10^{-8}\,\text{cm}^2$.

Example 3.4 Determine the ratio of tetrachloroethylene (PCE) conductivity to hydraulic (water) conductivity using density and viscosity values from Table 11.4.

The conductivity to a given fluid K is given by an inverted form of Eq. 3.7:

$$K = \frac{k\rho g}{\mu}$$

where ρ and μ are the fluid properties and k is a material property. Assuming the same porous material, the ratio of K_{PCE}/K_w would be

$$\begin{aligned} K_{PCE}/K_w &= \frac{\rho_{PCE}}{\rho_w}\frac{\mu_w}{\mu_{PCE}} \\ &= \frac{(1.63\,\text{g/cm}^3)}{(1.00\,\text{g/cm}^3)}\frac{(1.0\times10^{-3}\,\text{N}\cdot\text{sec/m}^2)}{(9.0\times10^{-4}\,\text{N}\cdot\text{sec/m}^2)} \\ &= 1.8 \end{aligned}$$

Under similar conditions, PCE will migrate faster than water through the same material.

3.4 Limits on the Application of Darcy's Law

Fortunately, Darcy's law is a physical principle which applies to most groundwater flows. There are a few limitations, however. Darcy's law can be inappropriate if the medium is too irregular or if the flow velocity is too great in a medium with large pores.

3.4.1 The Continuum Assumption

As water navigates through the complex network of interconnected pore spaces in rock or soil, it flows at varying velocities and in various directions (Figure 3.7). For flow analysis using Darcy's law, these small-scale variations are overlooked in favor of volume-averaged descriptors of flow like specific discharge q_x and average linear velocity $\bar{v}_x$. This approach is called the continuum or macroscopic approach. With it, the irregular, complex reality is represented as a simple, continuous, homogeneous medium.

Imagine that you could test K_x in every $1\,\text{cm}^3$ block of a real granular or rock aquifer. If you analyzed all the resulting values, the variance s^2 or standard

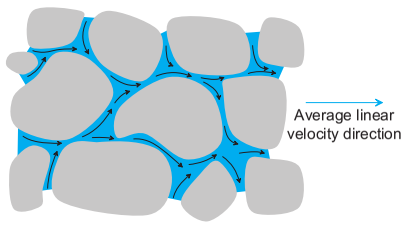


Figure 3.7 Actual tortuous flow paths through the pore spaces (left) and the macroscopic average linear velocity (right).

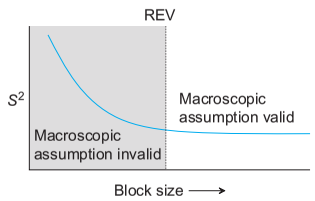


Figure 3.8 Variance vs. block size, with definition of representative elementary volume (REV) and macroscopic scale.

deviation s of the data would be large. In case your statistics definitions are not in your most accessible memory, a common definition of s^2 is

$$s^2 = \frac{1}{N-1}\sum_{i=1}^{N}(x_i - \bar{x}_i)^2 \tag{3.8}$$

where there are N data values x_i and $\bar{x}_i$ is the mean of the data values. The larger s^2 is, the more variable and spread out the data is. Say you repeated this process for 10 cm^3 blocks and then 100 cm^3 blocks, and so on. If you plotted the variance in the data versus the scale of the blocks, it would look something like Figure 3.8. The variance is high at small scales because of the irregular distribution of individual lenses in a granular deposit or fractures in a fractured rock. As the scale increases, larger numbers of the irregularities are encompassed, and the averaging effect causes smaller variance in the data. Above a scale called the representative elementary volume (REV) by Bear (1972), the variance is roughly constant, and a macroscopic continuum approach is valid (Hubbert, 1956).

Because the scale of rock fractures is larger than the scale of heterogeneity in granular media, the representative elementary volume for fractured rock is much larger than for granular media. If the fractures are widely spaced and have irregular apertures, the representative elementary volume in rock can be very large or ill-defined. It may be difficult to define a representative elementary volume for a medium that contains a wide range of heterogeneity scales. For example, in a floodplain setting there is a range of heterogeneity scales, starting with small lenses to large channels up to the boundaries of the whole floodplain. Heterogeneities of large enough scale (larger than the REV) can be represented by discrete heterogeneities in the flow analysis, while smaller-scale heterogeneities typically are not explicity represented in a macroscopic analysis.

3.4.2 Laminar and Turbulent Flow

Darcy's law holds when groundwater velocities are small enough that flow is laminar and not turbulent. **Laminar flow** is like flowing molasses—viscous forces are large, velocities and momentum are small, and no swirls or eddies develop. **Turbulent flow** is characterized by chaotic eddies, like in the atmosphere or a flowing stream. Figure 3.9 illustrates these types of flow. A measure of whether a flow tends toward laminar or turbulent behavior is the **Reynolds number** R_e, a dimensionless parameter used in fluid mechanics, which for porous media is defined as

$$R_e = \frac{\rho q d}{\mu} \tag{3.9}$$

where ρ is the fluid density, q is specific discharge, μ is the dynamic viscosity of the fluid, and d is a characteristic length such as mean pore diameter or mean grain size. Bear (1972) concludes from experimental data that if R_e is less than some value between 1 and 10, flow in granular media is laminar, and Darcy's law applies.

Turbulent flows develop in media with large pores and high groundwater velocities. Such conditions occur in extremely coarse granular materials like rip-rap, in karst limestone and dolomite rock, in large fractures in crystalline rock, and in volcanics with flow tubes and other large pores. In laminar flows subject to Darcy's law, specific discharge is proportional to hydraulic gradient

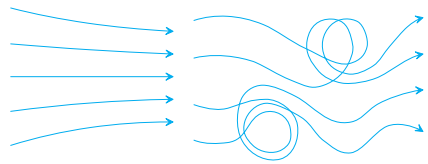


Figure 3.9 Flow paths in a laminar flow (left) and in a turbulent flow (right).

and the ratio is constant:

$$q_x/(dh/dx) = -K \tag{3.10}$$

In flows with turbulence, the ratio

$$q_x/(dh/dx) \neq \text{constant} \tag{3.11}$$

In fact, this ratio decreases with increasing q_x, as turbulence causes more frictional losses during flow.

> ***Example 3.5*** Is Darcy's law valid in a gravel where the average pore diameter is 0.2 cm, $K = 0.5$ cm/sec, and the hydraulic gradient is 0.02?
>
> The flow will obey Darcy's law if it is laminar, not turbulent. We will calculate the Reynolds number to assess whether or not it is laminar. Using the definition of specific discharge q (Eq. 3.3) in Eq. 3.9, we have
>
> $$\begin{aligned} R_e &= \frac{\rho_w dK}{\mu}\frac{dh}{dx} \\ &= \frac{(1000\,\text{kg/m}^3)(0.002\,\text{m})(0.005\,\text{m/sec})}{1.4\times10^{-3}\,\text{kg/sec}\cdot\text{m}}(0.02) \\ &= 0.14 \end{aligned}$$
>
> This is below the 1–10 range that is the threshold between laminar and turbulent flow, so this flow is laminar, but near the transition to turbulent flow. Therefore, Darcy's law applies.

3.5 Heterogeneity and Anisotropy of Hydraulic Conductivity

Real subsurface materials always have a complex and irregular distribution of hydraulic conductivity. We often describe K distributions using the terms *heterogeneity* and *anisotropy*. In a **heterogeneous** material the value of K varies spatially, and in a **homogeneous** material K is independent of location. **Anisotropy** implies that the value of K at a given location depends on direction. If $K_x \neq K_y$, where K_x is the conductivity in the x direction and K_y is the conductivity in the y direction, the medium is anisotropic. **Isotropy** implies that K is independent of direction at a given location. In a perfectly isotropic material, $K_x = K_y = K_z$. Although real geologic materials are never perfectly homogeneous or isotropic, it's often reasonable to assume that they are for the purpose of calculations.

Figure 3.10 Outwash sand and gravel in a gravel pit, Gorham, Maine.

Consider the photograph of stratified outwash sand and gravel shown in Figure 3.10. The hydraulic conductivity of this deposit would have a complex spatial distribution that could be characterized on various scales. If you extracted a small (≈ 1 cm) cube from within a single lens of sand in this deposit and measured K in all three directions, you might find that $K_x \approx K_y \approx K_z$. If you repeated this process for many small cubes in various lenses, you would find that each cube has its own value of $K_x \approx K_y \approx K_z$. This set of K measurements would reveal that K is heterogeneous, but approximately isotropic at a small enough scale.

Now imagine that instead of extracting tiny 1 cm cubes, you extracted large cubes ≈ 10 m across, encompassing many lenses within this deposit. If you measured the average K in all three directions across these large cubes, you would find that on a large scale this deposit is anisotropic ($K_x \neq K_y \neq K_z$). Because of the strong horizontal layering, at this larger scale K_z (vertical) is much smaller than K_x or K_y. Depending on the shape and orientation of lenses in the deposit, K_x may or may not differ substantially from K_y. You may also find that on a large scale the deposit is heterogeneous; K_x measured in one large cube differs from K_x in the neighboring large cubes.

Each rock or sediment type has unique hydraulic conductivity characteristics. Granular sediments like sands and sedimentary rocks like sandstones may be isotropic on a very small scale, but due to lenses and layering they are anisotropic when a larger scale is considered. For larger scales, the ratio of horizontal to vertical conductivity K_x/K_z can range from less than 10 to more than 100 in layered soils or rocks. Foliated rocks like schists have anisotropic character even at very small scales due to the anisotropic fabric of the aligned mineral grains. In fractured crystalline rocks where most of the conductivity is due to

widely spaced fractures, average hydraulic conductivity values have meaning only at scales large enough to encompass many fractures. The orientation of joint sets often governs the large-scale anisotropy in crystalline rocks.

Example 3.6 In the region of the head contours shown in Figure 3.11, calculate q_x and q_z assuming isotropic conductivity of $K_x = K_z = 2\,\text{m/day}$. Make a scaled vector sketch of the x and z components of specific discharge, q_x and q_z, and their sum, the total specific discharge vector $\vec{q}$. Assume that $q_y = 0$. Repeat the problem assuming anisotropic conductivity $K_x = 2\,\text{m/day}$, $K_z = 0.1\,\text{m/day}$. Discuss how the orientation of $\vec{q}$ relates to the head contours in both cases.

For the isotropic case, Darcy's law yields

$$\begin{aligned} q_x &= -K_x \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \\ &= -(2\,\text{m/day})\frac{-0.2\,\text{m}}{4\,\text{m}} \\ &= 0.1\,\text{m/day} \end{aligned}$$

Performing a similar calculation for the z direction yields $q_z = -0.1\,\text{m/day}$. A scaled specific discharge vector for the isotropic case is shown in Figure 3.11.

For the anisotropic case, only q_z is different. Using $K_z = 0.1\,\text{m/day}$ in the same type of calculation yields $q_z = -0.005\,\text{m/day}$. The scaled vector sketch in this case is also shown in Figure 3.11.

When the conductivity is isotropic, the specific discharge vector is perpendicular to the head contours. This turns out to be true in all cases of isotropic conductivity. When the conductivity is anisotropic, the specific discharge vector is generally not perpendicular to the head contours (it can be perpendicular under special circumstances where the hydraulic gradient lines up parallel to one of the principal directions of hydraulic conductivity).

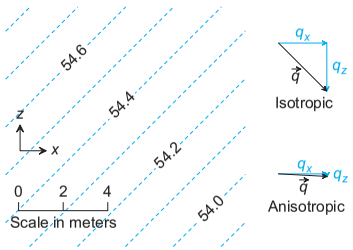


Figure 3.11 Head contours in a vertical section of the x–z plane (Example 3.6).

At the boundary between two materials with differing hydraulic conductivities, the flow paths are bent in a manner similar to optical refraction. At the material interface, two conditions must be met:

1. The specific discharge normal to the interface is the same on both sides of the interface to preserve continuity of flow.
2. Pressure must be continuous in a fluid. Therefore head must also be continuous across the interface.

Referring to Figure 3.12, the first condition requires that, at the interface

$$q_{n1} = q_{n2} \tag{3.12}$$

The second condition requires

$$\left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial t}\right)_1 = \left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial t}\right)_2 \tag{3.13}$$

at the interface.

The angles ω_1 and ω_2 are related to the specific discharge components as follows:

$$\tan\omega_1 = \frac{q_{t1}}{q_{n1}}, \quad \tan\omega_2 = \frac{q_{t2}}{q_{n2}} \tag{3.14}$$

Using the previous three equations and Darcy's law for q_{t1} and q_{t2} results in the simple refraction relationship

$$\frac{\tan\omega_1}{\tan\omega_2} = \frac{K_{t1}}{K_{t2}} \tag{3.15}$$

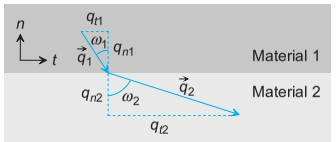


Figure 3.12 Specific discharge vectors at an interface, showing how flow pathlines refract. The n direction is normal to the interface, and the t direction is tangent to the interface. In this case, $K_{t2} > K_{t1}$.

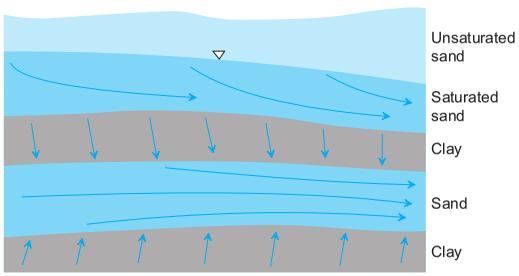


Figure 3.13 Flow directions in a vertical section through layered geology.

where K_t is the component of conductivity in the t direction. When $K_{t1} \ll K_{t2}$, ω_1 approaches zero and ω_2 approaches 90°. In other words, when there is a large difference between K_{t1} and K_{t2}, the flow direction becomes almost normal to the interface in the low-K layer and almost parallel to the interface in the high-K layer. Since large K contrasts are common in stratified geologic settings, flow in a high-K layer tends to be almost parallel to the layer and flow in a low-K layer tends to be almost normal to the layer. The flow directions in a hypothetical layered system are illustrated in Figure 3.13.

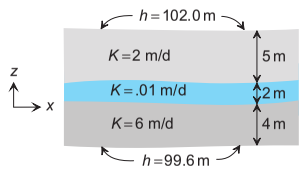
3.6 Estimating Average Hydraulic Conductivities

For flow analyses, it is often necessary to estimate average values of hydraulic conductivity based on a set of measured values. One common situation is that of approximately parallel layers of materials with differing hydraulic conductivities, as illustrated in Figure 3.14. The x axis is parallel to the layers and the z axis is normal to the layers. The layered system can be represented as one homogeneous anisotropic layer with one value of K_x and one value of K_z to represent the overall horizontal and vertical resistance to flow. The average values of K_x and K_z in the equivalent homogeneous system are calculated so that, under the same hydraulic gradients, the discharges are the same as in the heterogeneous, layered system.

Consider the flow parallel to the layers in the x direction. Assuming that the hydraulic gradient in the x direction is the same in all the layers, the discharge through a slice of the system that is one unit thick in the y direction is

$$Q_x = \sum -K_{xi}\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}d_i \tag{3.16}$$

Figure 3.14 Vertical section through three layers. Layers are parallel to the x axis and normal to the z axis.



where K_{xi} is the x-direction conductivity in the ith layer and d_i is the thickness of the ith layer. This equation results from applying Darcy's law to each layer and then summing the discharges in all the layers. The discharge through the entire system represented as a single layer with an equivalent overall horizontal hydraulic conductivity K_{xe} and identical total thickness is also calculated from Darcy's law:

$$Q_x = -K_{xe}\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\sum d_i \tag{3.17}$$

Setting Eqs. 3.16 and 3.17 equal and then solving for K_{xe} gives

$$K_{xe} = \frac{\sum K_{xi}d_i}{\sum d_i} \tag{3.18}$$

The equivalent average horizontal hydraulic conductivity is the thickness-weighted arithmetic average of the horizontal conductivities of the layers.

Perpendicular to the layers, the vertical hydraulic gradient will vary from layer to layer, but the specific discharge q_z must not vary from layer to layer. If q_z were not the same in each layer, discharge would have to dissappear or materialize at the layer boundaries. The specific discharge q_z in each of the i layers is given by

$$q_z = -K_{zi}\frac{\Delta h_i}{d_i} \tag{3.19}$$

where K_{zi} is the z-direction conductivity in the ith layer and Δh_i is the head drop across the ith layer. Rearranging this equation for the head drop across a layer gives

$$\Delta h_i = -\frac{q_z d_i}{K_{zi}} \tag{3.20}$$

The proper equivalent conductivity K_{ze} must have the same specific discharge over an equivalent single layer with the same total thickness and total head drop.

$$q_z = -\frac{K_{ze}\sum \Delta h_i}{\sum d_i} \tag{3.21}$$

Combining the two previous equations and solving for K_{ze} gives

$$K_{ze} = \frac{\sum d_i}{\sum (d_i / K_{zi})} \tag{3.22}$$

Equations 3.18 and 3.22 provide general equations for estimating the equivalent homogeneous, anisotropic hydraulic conductivities of a single layer that represents a series of layers for simplified flow calculations.

Example 3.7 Consider the three layers illustrated in Figure 3.14. Each layer is considered to be isotropic, with $K = K_x = K_z$. The head at the top of the uppermost layer is 102.0 m and the head at the bottom of the lowermost layer is 99.6 m. Calculate the equivalent K_{xe} and K_{ze} for this layered system. Calculate the vertical specific discharge q_z, the head at the interface between the upper and middle layers, and the head at the interface between the middle and lower layers.

Using Eq. 3.18, the equivalent horizontal conductivity is

$$K_{xe} = \frac{(2\,\text{m/d})(5\,\text{m}) + (0.01\,\text{m/d})(2\,\text{m}) + (6\,\text{m/d})(4\,\text{m})}{11\,\text{m}}$$
$$= 3.1\,\text{m/d}$$

and using Eq. 3.22, the equivalent vertical conductivity is

$$K_{ze} = 11\,\text{m} \Big/ \left(\frac{5\,\text{m}}{2\,\text{m/d}} + \frac{2\,\text{m}}{0.01\,\text{m/d}} + \frac{4\,\text{m}}{6\,\text{m/d}} \right)$$
$$= 0.054\,\text{m/d}$$

The vertical specific discharge is calculated from Darcy's law as

$$q_z = -K_{ze} \frac{\Delta h}{\Delta z}$$
$$= -0.054\,\text{m/d} \left(\frac{102.0 - 99.6\,\text{m}}{11\,\text{m}} \right)$$
$$= -0.012\,\text{m/d}$$

That q_z is negative indicates flow in the negative z direction. Using this specific discharge and Darcy's law, the head drop across the upper layer can be calculated, resulting in

$$\Delta h = -q_z \frac{1}{K} \Delta z$$
$$= -(-0.012\,\text{m/d}) \left(\frac{1}{2\,\text{m/d}} \right) (5\,\text{m})$$
$$= 0.030\,\text{m}$$

Accordingly, the head at the upper–middle interface is 101.97 m. Using similar logic to calculate the head drop across the lower layer, the head at the middle–lower interface is calculated to be about 99.61 m. Most of the head drop across this system is occurring in the middle layer, which has a substantially lower K_z.

In this example, the equivalent conductivity normal to the layers was a small fraction of the equivalent conductivity parallel to the layers. It turns out that for layering normal to the z direction, K_{ze} is always smaller than K_{xe} if each layer is assumed to be isotropic. Since all flow normal to the layers must pass through even the lowest K_z layers, K_{ze} is closer to the low K_z values than it is to the high K_z values. Parallel to the layers, little flow travels in the low K_x layers and K_{xe} is closer to the high K_x values.

Often, when a series of K measurements is made in one geologic unit, the resulting frequency distribution is roughly log-normal (see Law, 1944; Woodbury and Sudicky, 1991). This means that if the data $\ln K$ or $\log K$ are plotted in a histogram, they will form a roughly normal or Gaussian distribution (Figure 3.15). Using a probabilistic analysis, Matherton (1967) determined that the geometric mean of small-scale K measurements gives the appropriate large-scale average K under the following circumstances:

- The K histogram is log-normal.
- K has a statistically isotropic distribution in space.
- Flow is two-dimensional.
- Flow is uniform (one-dimensional on a large scale).

The geometric mean K_g of n K measurements is calculated as

$$K_g = (K_1 K_2 K_3 \ldots K_n)^{1/n} \tag{3.23}$$

Matherton (1967) also demonstrated that for uniform flow, the appropriate large-scale average K will always be between that given by Eq. 3.18 and that

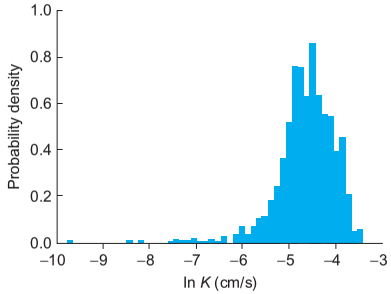


Figure 3.15 Histogram of $\ln K$ data from 1188 measurements on the Borden aquifer, Ontario, Canada. The data are roughly log-normal, except for outliers at the low end of the $\ln K$ spectrum. From Woodbury, A. D. and E. A. Sudicky, 1991, The geostatistical characteristics of the Borden aquifer. *Water Resources Research*, 27(4), 533-546. Copyright (1991) American Geophysical Union. Modified by permission of American Geophysical Union.

given by Eq. 3.22, regardless of how K is distributed in space and whether the flow is one-, two-, or three-dimensional.

3.7 Transmissivity

Often it is only practical to measure the hydraulic conductivity as an integrated parameter over the thickness of a given layer. This parameter is called the **transmissivity** of the layer. If the hydraulic conductivity tangential to the layer K_t can be assumed constant over the thickness b of a layer, the transmissivity T of the layer is simply

$$T = K_t b \tag{3.24}$$

If a layer is composed of m strata of thickness b_i and hydraulic conductivity $(K_t)_i$, the total transmissivity of the layer is the sum of the transmissivities of each stratum:

$$\begin{aligned} T &= \sum_{i=1}^{m} T_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{m} (K_t)_i b_i \end{aligned} \tag{3.25}$$

The dimensions of transmissivity are $[L^2/T]$. Transmissivity is a measure of how easily a layer transmits water.

The horizontal discharge through a layer is proportional to its transmissivity. Using Darcy's law (Eq. 3.2) and the definition of transmissivity, it can be shown that the discharge in the x direction through a length of aquifer that extends a distance Δy in the y direction is

$$Q_x = -T \frac{\partial h}{\partial \partial x} \Delta y \tag{3.26}$$

3.8 Measuring Hydraulic Conductivity

To answer a quantitative question about groundwater flow, you almost always need estimates of hydraulic conductivity. The most common methods of developing estimates are laboratory experiments on small samples and field experiments where flow is induced at a well. Other methods involve monitoring chemical tracers or simulating the natural flow system. These various methods are discussed in order of increasing complexity and increasing scale of tested material.

3.8.1 Correlations of Grain Size to Hydraulic Conductivity

The saturated hydraulic conductivity K is a function of the size and distribution of pores in a material. For granular materials, it makes sense that some correlation exists between the particle sizes and K. No correlation of this sort will be very accurate, since grain sizes are not a perfect measure of the size, orientation, and connectedness of pores.

Hazen (1911) proposed the following empirical relation, based on experiments with various sand samples:

$$K = C(d_{10})^2 \tag{3.27}$$

where K is hydraulic conductivity in cm/sec, C is a constant with units of $(\text{cm} \cdot \text{sec})^{-1}$, and d_{10} is the grain diameter in centimeters such that grains this size or smaller represent 10% of the sample mass. Note that this equation requires a fixed set of units. With units of centimeters and cm/sec, the constant C varies from about 40 to 150 for most sands. C is at the low end of this range for fine, widely graded sands, and C is near the high end of the range for coarse, narrowly graded sands.

A widely used empirical correlation for granular materials that accounts for the spread of grain sizes is the Kozeny–Carman equation (modified from Bear, 1972):

$$K = \left(\frac{\rho_w g}{\mu}\right)\left(\frac{n^3}{(1-n)^2}\right)\left(\frac{(d_{50})^2}{180}\right) \tag{3.28}$$

In the above, $\rho_w g/\mu$ is the unit weight/viscosity of water, n is porosity, and d_{50} is the median grain diameter. The porosity term $n^3/(1-n)^2$ is significantly smaller for widely graded (poorly sorted) materials. This is sensible, since pore size in a poorly sorted material will tend to be smaller than in a well sorted material with the same d_{50}. The Kozeny-Carman equation is dimensionally consistent, so it may be used with any consistent set of units.

Additional grain size correlations are summarized by Shepherd (1989), who presents empirical correlations for various sediment types.

Example 3.8 Examine the two grain size curves shown in Figure 2.6. Use the Hazen and Kozeny–Carman correlations to estimate the K of each soil.

For use in the Hazen formula, $d_{10} = 0.1$ mm $= 0.01$ cm for both soils. For both soils, $C = 100$ to 150 would be appropriate. Given these parameters, the Hazen formula gives

$$\begin{aligned} K &= C(d_{10})^2 \\ &= (100 \text{ to } 150\ (\text{cm}\cdot\text{sec})^{-1})(0.01\ \text{cm})^2 \\ &= 0.01 \text{ to } 0.015\ \text{cm/sec} \end{aligned}$$

For the Kozeny–Carman equation, assume $\rho_w g = 9810\ \text{N/m}^3$ and $\mu = 1.4 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{sec/m}^2$. The median diameter of the fine sand is $d_{50} = 0.24$ mm $= 0.024$ cm. With these parameters and $n = 0.38$ the estimated conductivity of the fine sand is

$$\begin{aligned} K &= \left(\frac{\rho_w g}{\mu}\right)\left(\frac{n^3}{(1-n)^2}\right)\left(\frac{(d_{50})^2}{180}\right) \\ &= \left(7.0 \times 10^6\ (\text{m}\cdot\text{sec})^{-1}\right)(0.143)\left(\frac{(0.024\ \text{cm})^2}{180}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \text{m}}{100\ \text{cm}}\right) \\ &= 0.032\ \text{cm/sec} \end{aligned}$$

The gravelly sand has a median diameter of $d_{50} = 0.8$ mm $= 0.08$ cm. With these parameters and $n = 0.29$, the Kozeny–Carman equation estimates

$$\begin{aligned} K &= \left(7.0 \times 10^6\ (\text{m}\cdot\text{sec})^{-1}\right)(0.048)\left(\frac{(0.08\ \text{cm})^2}{180}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \text{m}}{100\ \text{cm}}\right) \\ &= 0.12\ \text{cm/sec} \end{aligned}$$

For these samples, the Kozeny–Carman equation predicts K values that are 3–10 times higher than the values predicted by the Hazen formula.

From the results of the above example, it is clear that K estimates based on grain size correlations are rough. The values derived in this manner should be viewed as only "ballpark" values, giving a sense of the order of magnitude of K.

3.8.2 Laboratory Hydraulic Conductivity Tests

Laboratory K tests are generally performed on small samples, with dimensions on the order of 10–50 cm. Intact samples retrieved from borings are usually in the shape of cylinders oriented vertically in line with the borehole, so the results of lab tests represent the vertical conductivity K_z. Depending on the sampling and testing process, the sample texture and fabric will be disturbed to varying degrees. The less disturbance, the closer the lab test result will approximate the in situ K. Tests are sometimes performed on samples reconstituted in the lab from bulk samples. The fabric and texture of the in situ state is lost, introducing more uncertainty in the K estimate.

The lab techniques presented here use the same concept as Darcy's original experiment. Flow is induced through a saturated sample, and the head difference across the sample is measured. Darcy's law is applied to the results, giving an estimate of K. In most cases, the K of the tested sample can be estimated fairly accurately. Less accurate estimates occur with very low K materials because it is difficult to measure small flow rates accurately and to guarantee complete saturation of the sample. To help saturate fine-grained samples, the test can be run at higher pressures in a sealed system. The high pore water pressure compresses pore gases and drives them into solution, increasing the percent saturation of the sample.

Most K testing in the lab is done using permeameters like those illustrated in Figure 3.16. The tube bounding the sample laterally is impermeable, and porous disks allow water to flow through the ends of the sample. In a **constant-head test**, a constant head difference is maintained across the

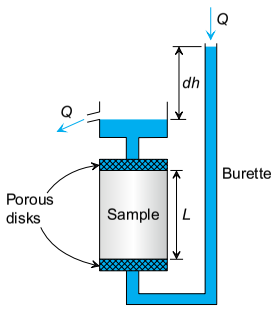


Figure 3.16 Schematic of a permeameter. The cross-sectional area of the sample is A and the cross-sectional area of the inlet burette is a.

sample, inducing a steady discharge through the sample. Rearranging Darcy's law gives K in terms of the discharge Q, the cross-sectional area normal to flow A, the sample length L, and the head difference dh:

$$K = \frac{Q}{A}\frac{L}{dh} \tag{3.29}$$

In a permeameter test, the resulting K is the conductivity parallel to the sample axis.

Although the setup is similar, a **falling-head test** differs from a constant-head test in that the head difference and discharge through the sample decrease with time. The inlet side of the apparatus is attached to a vertical burette. The level in this burette is recorded at time intervals as it falls throughout the test. The discharge through the sample is proportional to the cross-sectional area of the burette a and the rate that the burette level falls:

$$Q = -a\frac{d}{dt}(dh) \tag{3.30}$$

Another equation for the discharge through the sample can be written using Darcy's law:

$$Q = K\frac{dh}{L}A \tag{3.31}$$

Setting the two previous equations equal and separating the variables dt and dh leads to the following expression:

$$Kdt = -\frac{a}{A}L\frac{1}{dh}d(dh) \tag{3.32}$$

Integrating both sides of the above from time t_0 to time t_1 results in

$$K = \frac{a}{A}\frac{L}{(t_1 - t_0)}\ln\left(\frac{dh_0}{dh_1}\right) \tag{3.33}$$

where dh_0 and dh_1 are the head differences across the sample at times t_0 and t_1. If $(\ln dh)$ or $(\log dh)$ is plotted vs. t, the data should be approximately linear. Nonlinearity in such a semilog plot may indicate errors in measurement or incomplete saturation of the sample.

The burette size should be selected so that $d(dh)/dt$ is slow enough to observe easily, but not so slow as to require too much time to run the test. If you have a rough estimate of K before the test, Eq. 3.33 can be applied to estimate $t_1 - t_0$ for a reasonable dh_0/dh_1. For very high-K sands and gravels, a large burette with $a \approx A$ may be needed. For low-K materials like silts, small burettes are needed ($a \ll A$).

In very low-K (clayey) materials, permeameter tests become difficult due to extremely small flow rates. It is sometimes possible to conduct constant-head tests under very high gradients in pressurized systems to induce measurable flow rates. The consolidation test is another laboratory technique that can yield K estimates of clayey samples; such tests are discussed briefly in Chapter 8 of this book and in more detail in soil mechanics texts (see Lambe and Whitman, 1979, or Das, 1998, for example).

Example 3.9 A falling-head permeameter test is to be performed on a sample of sandy silt. The estimated conductivity of the sample is 10^{-5} cm/sec. The sample is a cylinder 30 cm long and 10 cm in diameter. The burette diameter is 8 mm. With this sample and apparatus, estimate how long it will take for a given head difference to fall to half its initial value.

Rearrange Eq. 3.33 to get the time delay:

$$\begin{aligned}(t_1 - t_0) &= \frac{a}{A}\frac{L}{K}\ln\left(\frac{dh_0}{dh_1}\right)\\ &= \frac{\pi(0.4\,\text{cm})^2}{\pi(5\,\text{cm})^2}\frac{30\,\text{cm}}{10^{-5}\,\text{cm/sec}}\ln(2)\\ &= 13{,}000\,\text{sec}\\ &= 3.7\,\text{hr}\end{aligned}$$

A smaller diameter burette could be used to speed up the test, if 3.7 hours is too long.

3.8.3 Slug Tests and Pumping Tests

With a **slug test**, the head in a well is changed suddenly, and the subsequent adjustment of head with time is recorded as the head returns to the equilibrium level that existed before the impulse. These tests are quick, simple, and relatively inexpensive. They yield estimates of the average in situ horizontal hydraulic conductivity of a small region surrounding the well screen. The impulse is typically created by inserting or withdrawing a solid cylinder ("slug") from the water column of the well.

In a **pumping test**, large volumes of water are pumped from a well for a period of time, and changes in head are monitored at the pumping well and/or nearby observation wells. Typical pumping tests involve pumping for hours, days, or weeks. These tests measure the average horizontal hydraulic conductivity and storage parameters of the aquifer being pumped. The resulting parameters apply most to the near vicinity of the pumping well, and to a lesser degree to the region encompassed by the observation wells. A pumping test evaluates a much larger volume of aquifer material than a slug test does, but with much greater cost and effort.

Methods of analyzing slug tests and pumping tests are discussed in detail in Chapter 8.

3.8.4 Tracer Tests

It is sometimes possible to estimate K by observing the average linear velocity of a tracer injected into the subsurface. Tracers can consist of heated water or a solute that does not react significantly with the aquifer matrix. A variety of groundwater tracers are discussed by Peters et al. (1993). If the average linear velocity $\bar{v}_x$, effective porosity n_e, and hydraulic gradient $\partial h/\partial x$ are known, the conductivity may be calculated from Darcy's law as

$$K_x = -\bar{v}_x n_e \frac{\partial x}{\partial h} \tag{3.34}$$

In an anisotropic medium, the above equation holds only if x is aligned with one of the principal axes of hydraulic conductivity (in the direction of the greatest, least, or intermediate K). Although the concept is attractive, there are some practical drawbacks. Since natural groundwater flow velocities are so small, measuring $\bar{v}_x$ may take a very long time. Depending on the situation, the cost of wells needed to monitor the tracer migration may be excessive. Some tracer tests have been monitored using surface geophysics instead of wells,

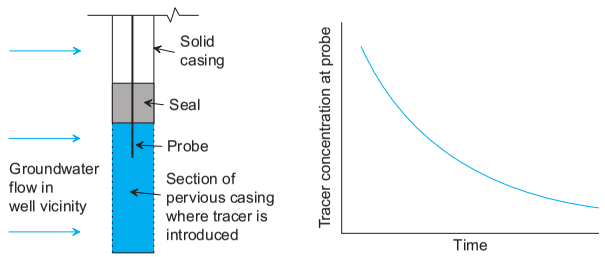


Figure 3.17 Borehole dilution test configuration (left) and concentration vs. time in the sealed section (right).

which may be more cost effective. For example, White (1988) used surface resistivity measurements to track a plume of salt water that had been injected into a granular aquifer.

Another more widely used tracer technique is the borehole dilution test. A nonreactive tracer solution is introduced into a sealed section of a well as shown in Figure 3.17. Water in the isolated section of well casing is kept thoroughly mixed with some sort of circulation pump to keep the concentration in the sealed section uniform. A probe installed into the sealed section is used to measure the tracer concentration at intervals during the test. If the tracer is a salt, the probe could measure electrical conductivity, which is proportional to the salt concentration. The rate of decreasing concentration is related to the ambient groundwater velocity $\bar{v}$ in the vicinity of the well screen. In theory, the concentration decreases with time in an exponential manner.

Assuming that the direction of groundwater flow is normal to the axis of the borehole, the observed rate of tracer concentration decrease is proportional to ($\propto$) the specific discharge of the ambient groundwater flow (Drost et al., 1968):

$$q \propto \frac{1}{(t_2 - t_1)} \ln\left(\frac{c_1}{c_2}\right) \tag{3.35}$$

where c_1 is the concentration at time t_1 and c_2 is the concentration at time t_2. The magnitude of q also depends on the geometry and conductivity of the well screen and the surrounding gravel pack. Just how these quantities relate to q in complex ways is the subject of the paper by Drost et al. (1968). Given the ambient specific discharge from a borehole dilution test and a measured hydraulic gradient, the horizontal conductivity of the aquifer may be calculated from Darcy's law.

3.8.5 Modeling Natural Systems

Good estimates of hydraulic parameters can come from well-calibrated models of natural flow systems. The models are typically two- or three-dimensional computer models of regional aquifer flow. The simulated hydraulic properties of the subsurface materials are adjusted as the model is calibrated to fit observed heads and discharges. The parameter estimates from such an effort are usually large-scale average properties. The uncertainty in these estimates is caused by many factors, including:

- Incomplete knowledge of the actual distribution of subsurface materials
- Uncertainty in the assumed discharges such as recharge rates and baseflow discharges
- Uncertainty in the heads used as calibration targets

3.9 Flow in Fractured Rock

Flow in fractured rock is difficult to analyze for several reasons. For one, flow occurs along discrete fractures, the distribution and properties of which are mostly unknown. It is generally not possible to map the location and orientation of the important water-bearing fractures in the subsurface, or to know their aperture (width) and roughness. Flow in some larger fractures is turbulent as opposed to laminar, so Darcy's law should not be applied to these.

Two approaches to analyzing flow in fractured rock are (1) analysis of flow in discrete fracture(s), and (2) treating the network of fractures as a continuum. The following are some common techniques for both methods, which assume laminar flow in the fractures.

The laminar flow in a single smooth-walled planar fracture of uniform aperture b, and length w normal to flow was presented by Romm (1966) as

$$Q_x = \frac{\rho_w g b^3 w}{12\mu}\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \tag{3.36}$$

where ρ_w is the density of water, g is gravity acceleration, μ is the dynamic viscosity of water, and $\partial h/\partial x$ is the hydraulic gradient in the direction of flow (Figure 3.18). This equation is called the **cubic law**, since Q_x is a function of b^3. Rock fractures are not perfectly smooth, and various studies have been performed to incorporate roughness into equations like Eq. 3.36. In general, Q_x decreases as roughness increases.

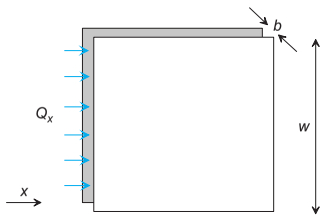


Figure 3.18 Fracture geometry for single fracture flow analysis.

This discrete fracture approach can be used in cases where the scale of the problem is not much bigger than the scale of fracture spacing. It is necessary to characterize the distribution, orientation, and aperture of fractures in the problem area, which is not an easy task. This approach is used, among other things, to analyze geotechnical problems of rock slope stability, seepage into tunnels, and seepage under dams.

With the continuum approach, the location of particular fractures is not accounted for, and the rock mass is assumed to be equivalent to a porous medium with homogeneous conductivities. To use this approach, the scale of the problem analyzed must be macroscopic (larger than the representative elementary volume). The effect of parallel sets of fractures can be incorporated by assigning anisotropic conductivity to the continuum (Snow, 1969). Snow (1968) derived an equation for estimating the macroscopic hydraulic conductivity K_x for a set of uniform fractures oriented parallel to the x direction, using the cubic law of Eq. 3.36:

$$K_x = \frac{\rho_w g N b^3}{12\mu} \tag{3.37}$$

where N is the number of fractures per unit width normal to the fracture planes, and b is the aperture of each fracture. Real fractures do not occur in perfectly planar and uniform sets, but this equation can give rough estimates where hydraulic testing is lacking.

Often the representative elementary volume in rock is large and difficult to define, making results using the continuum approach quite uncertain. To further complicate matters, the aperture of a fracture fluctuates in response to changes in the water pressure in the fracture. When heads decline, water pressure declines and aperture decreases, and vice versa. Therefore the conductivities of individual fractures and of the rock mass as a whole are dependent on head to some degree.

Example 3.10 Estimate the equivalent continuum K_x for a granite that has, on average, one fracture parallel to the x direction per 2 m distance normal to the x direction. The average aperture of each fracture is 0.3 mm.

Using Eq. 3.37 in this case gives

$$K_x = \frac{\rho_w g N b^3}{12\mu}$$
$$= \frac{(9810\,\mathrm{N/m^3})(0.5\,\mathrm{m^{-1}})(3\times10^{-4}\,\mathrm{m})^3}{(12)(1.4\times10^{-3}\,\mathrm{N\cdot sec/m^2})}$$
$$= 8\times10^{-6}\,\mathrm{m/sec}$$

Since b is raised to the third power in these equations, aperture has tremendous impact on the result. Uncertainty in the value of average b magnifies into large uncertainty in K_x.

3.10 Unsaturated Flow

So far, the discussion of flow has focused on the saturated zone where there is only water in the pore spaces. Water flows in the unsaturated zone under the same physical principles that have been outlined for saturated flow. The concepts of hydraulic head and Darcy's law are generally the same as for saturated flow. The most important difference about flow in the unsaturated zone is that the hydraulic conductivity K is not a material constant like it is in the saturated zone; it is variable, depending on the volumetric water content θ. The pore water pressure also varies with θ. These differences make analysis of unsaturated flow more complex than the analysis of saturated flow.

3.10.1 Water Content and Pressure

As discussed in Chapter 2, the pore water pressure P in the unsaturated zone is less than atmospheric pressure due to the tension in the water as it is attracted to and "stretched" over the mineral surfaces. As the water content θ decreases, the forces of attraction between water and the matrix play a larger and larger role compared to other forces. In general, the lower the water content, the lower the pore water pressure.

For agricultural applications, soil scientists have carefully studied the relationship between θ and P in granular soils. A plot of this relation for a soil is called a **characteristic curve**. Comparing the characteristic curves

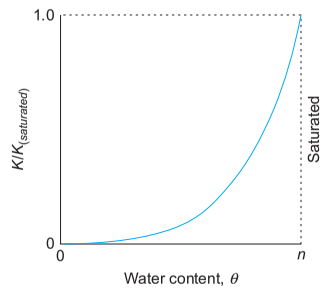


Figure 3.24 The ratio of hydraulic conductivity to saturated hydraulic conductivity, as a function of water content.

3.11 Flow of Groundwater with Variable Density

So far, all of the equations regarding head, Darcy's law, and specific discharge have been developed assuming that the pore water density is constant. There are several situations where this assumption cannot be made. Contaminated groundwater may be dense enough that it sinks through the surrounding clean water. In coastal areas, there is a zone where fresh pore water grades into denser salt water in the pores. In the pore water of deeper crustal rocks, the total dissolved solids content can be higher than that of sea water.

When the water density variations are large, they must be taken into account in the analysis of groundwater flow. Instead of using the standard definition of Darcy's law, a more fundamental one is needed where the pore water density ρ_w is treated as a variable. Assume that the principal directions of intrinsic permeability align with the x, y, z coordinate system with x and y horizontal and z vertical. Darcy's law for variable density flow is then written as (Bear, 1972)

$$q_x = -\frac{k_x}{\mu}\frac{\partial P}{\partial x}$$
$$q_y = -\frac{k_y}{\mu}\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}$$
$$q_z = -\frac{k_z}{\mu}\left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial z} + \rho_w g\right) \tag{3.40}$$

where q is specific discharge, k is intrinsic permeability, μ is dynamic viscosity, P is pressure, and g is gravitational acceleration. If we define the fresh-water

hydraulic conductivity in terms of the fresh water density ρ_f as

$$K = \frac{k\rho_f g}{\mu} \tag{3.41}$$

(see Eq. 3.7), and the **fresh water head** as

$$h_f = \frac{P}{\rho_f g} + z \tag{3.42}$$

(Eq. 2.14), then Eq. 3.40 can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} q_x &= -K_x \frac{\partial h_f}{\partial x} \\ q_y &= -K_y \frac{\partial h_f}{\partial y} \\ q_z &= -K_z \left(\frac{\partial h_f}{\partial z} + \frac{\rho_w - \rho_f}{\rho_f} \right) \end{aligned} \tag{3.43}$$

These equations reduce to the familiar form of Darcy's law (Eq. 3.5) when $\rho_w = \rho_f =$ constant.

The fresh water head h_f can be thought of as the water elevation in an observation well, if the column of stagnant water in the well casing is all fresh water with density ρ_f, regardless of the density of pore water just outside the well casing (ρ_w). You can calculate h_f with Eq. 3.42 and a measurement of pressure P at the well screen. Equation 3.43 shows that the horizontal components of specific discharge may be calculated using the standard form of Darcy's law and the gradient of fresh water head.

The importance of density-driven flow was documented in a tracer test conducted in Ontario, Canada where water containing several dissolved solutes was injected into the saturated zone in a sand and gravel aquifer (Freyberg, 1986; see Section 11.6.1 for a brief description of the test). The subsequent migration of the tracer was monitored by frequent sampling of a large number of piezometers located down-gradient from the injection wells (Figure 3.25). Right after injection, the tracer cloud sank downward because of the higher density of the tracer water compared to the clean water that surrounded it. With time the tracer cloud mixed with the surrounding water, became less dense, and migrated more in the horizontal direction with the prevailing groundwater flow direction.

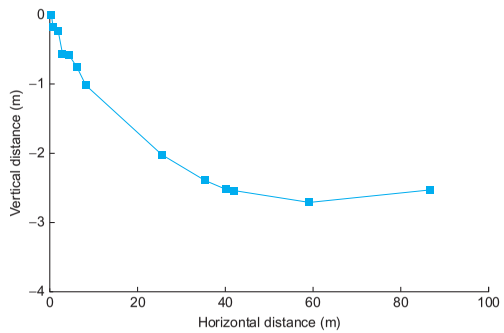


Figure 3.25 Cross-section showing the movement of the center of mass of a tracer cloud as it migrates away from the injection site (at upper left). Based on data presented by Freyberg (1986).

3.11.1 Fresh–Salt Water Interfaces in Coastal Aquifers

In coastal aquifers, fresh water discharges along seepage faces just above the shoreline and into shallow water at the sea floor. The upper portion of Figure 3.26 shows the typical patterns of flow in a coastal aquifer that extends up to the surface. The boundary between fresh and salt pore water is a narrow, diffuse mixing zone that is the result of molecular diffusion together with mixing caused by tidal fluctuations and fluctuating fresh water heads. The fresh water is flowing towards the beach and sea where it discharges, as is water in the mixing zone. The salty groundwater also circulates somewhat, flowing towards the mixing zone as shown in Figure 3.26.

These patterns of flow represent long-term averages. Fluctuating fresh water heads and tidal effects cause short-term variations in flow. These transient phenomena cause the interface between fresh and salt water to shift somewhat, and help increase the thickness of the mixing zone.

The vertical profile of chloride concentrations in a well-studied coastal aquifer in southern Florida is shown in Figure 3.27 (Kohout and Klein, 1967). The lens of fresh pore water is separated from oceanic pore water by a relatively thin mixing zone that is about 20–40 ft thick at this location. The chloride concentration in sea water is about 19,000 mg/liter. The interface moves seaward following large precipitation (recharge) events, and returns landward during drought.

A short animation on the book website shows the geometry of the fresh water lens under the outer part of Cape Cod, Massachusetts. A true-scale vertical section of the lens shows that it is relatively thin compared

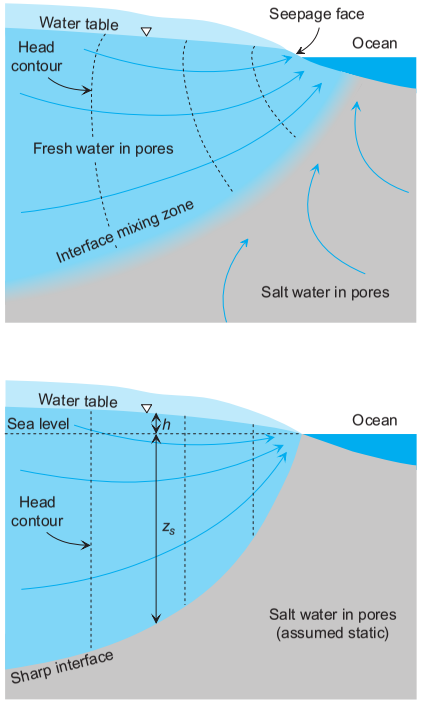


Figure 3.26 Actual flow patterns in a coastal aquifer (top). The Ghyben–Herzberg approximation of the same situation (bottom).

to the horizontal extent of Cape Cod (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

A simple and useful method for estimating the depth to the fresh–salt water interface was developed independently around 1900 by two scientists, and is known as the **Ghyben–Herzberg relation**. Their analysis is based on hydrostatics, and makes the following assumptions:

1. The interface between fresh and salt water is sharp, with no mixing.
2. There is no resistance to vertical flow in the salt water or in the fresh water (hydrostatic principles apply).
3. At the shoreline, the fresh water head = sea level elevation.

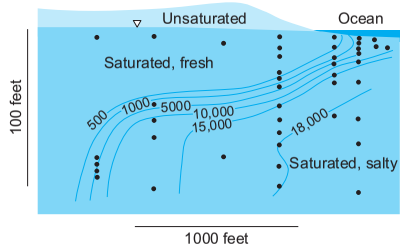


Figure 3.27 Vertical profile of the coastal mixing zone in the Biscayne aquifer near Miami, Florida. Contours show chloride concentrations in mg/liter. Dots show groundwater sample locations. After Figure 3 of Kohout and Klein (1967).

The geometry of the situation considered by Ghyben and Herzberg is illustrated in the lower part of Figure 3.26. At a point on the interface at a depth z_s below sea level, the calculated pressure in the salt water, assuming static salt water, is

$$P_s = \rho_s g z_s \tag{3.44}$$

where ρ_s is the density of the salt water. The pressure in the fresh water at the same point, assuming hydrostatic fresh water, is given by

$$P_f = \rho_f g(z_s + h) \tag{3.45}$$

where ρ_f is the fresh water density and h is the head in the fresh water, measured from the sea level datum. There is only one pressure at any point in a fluid so on the interface, $P_s = P_f$. Setting these equations equal and solving for z_s yields the Ghyben–Herzberg relation:

$$z_s = \frac{\rho_f}{\rho_s - \rho_f} h \tag{3.46}$$

Typical ocean water densities vary from $\rho_s = 1.028\,\text{g/cm}^3$ at 0°C to $\rho_s = 1.023\,\text{g/cm}^3$ at 25°C (Pilson, 1998). For $\rho_f = 1.000\,\text{g/cm}^3$ and $\rho_s = 1.025\,\text{g/cm}^3$, the above equation results in the simple relation

$$z_s = 40\,h \tag{3.47}$$

Near the shore, the depth to the interface predicted by Eq. 3.46 tends to be less than the actual depth observed in the field. Right at the shoreline, the Ghyben–Herzberg relation predicts $z_s = 0$, which is obviously less than the real thickness of fresh water there. The other way that the Ghyben–Herzberg

approximation errs is in assuming hydrostatic pressure distributions in the fresh and salt water. Where there are significant vertical components of flow in either the fresh or salt water, the depth to the interface will deviate from that predicted by Eq. 3.46. For example, near the shore there is usually upward flow in the fresh water, so head in the fresh water at the interface is higher than at the overlying water table, not equal as in hydrostatics. The result is that when the fresh groundwater flow has an upward component, the actual interface is deeper than predicted by Eq. 3.46. These potential errors are often minor, and the Ghyben–Herzberg sharp interface model can often provide a reasonably accurate simulation of heads, flow, and the interface position (for example, see Person et al., 1998).

When wells fill with water that is not entirely fresh, the water level elevation in the well is not simply equal to the head at the bottom of the well, as is the case with a column of fresh water. In cases with variable density water in the well, we need to use the concept of the fresh water head (Eq. 3.42). In a coastal aquifer, comparing heads to determine flow patterns should be done with fresh water heads; water will always flow from high fresh water head toward low fresh water head.

To compute the fresh water head, use an estimate or measurement of pressure at the well screen to compute the head using Eq. 3.42. If P is not measured at the well screen, it can be estimated based on knowledge of the profile of water density in the well bore and hydrostatics. The pressure at the base of the well is the sum of weight density (ρg) times vertical thickness over the whole water column:

$$P = g\int_{z_b}^{z_t} \rho dz \tag{3.48}$$

where z_b is the elevation where P is computed and z_t is the water surface elevation in the well. The above integral can be approximated as a sum using field data of $\rho(z)$.

Example 3.13 A well is screened below sea level at an elevation of -125.0 m in the fresh water zone of an aquifer. There is a column of brackish water in the well with density $\rho_{well} = 1.014\,\text{g/cm}^3$, and this water column has a static water level elevation of -0.22 m. Compute the fresh water head at the well screen. Will aquifer water flow from the vicinity of this well toward the shore ($h_f = 0.0$) or the other direction?

First, compute the pressure at the well screen using Eq. 3.48 with constant density:

$$\begin{aligned} P &= (\text{depth})\,\rho_{well} g \\ &= (-0.22 - (-125.0\,\text{m}))(1014\,\text{kg/m}^3)(9.81\,\text{m/s}^2) \\ &= 1.241 \times 10^6\,\text{N/m}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Then compute the fresh water head with Eq. 3.42:

$$\begin{aligned} h_f &= \frac{1.241 \times 10^6\,\text{N/m}^2}{9810\,\text{N/m}^3} - 125.0\,\text{m} \\ &= 1.53\,\text{m} \end{aligned}$$

This head is greater than zero, so water is flowing away from this well screen toward the shore.

When wells are pumped in the fresh water zone near a shoreline, fresh water heads decline, and the depth to the interface z_s also decreases by an amount about 40 times the magnitude of the head decline. A small decrease in fresh water head involves a large loss of fresh water stored just above the interface. Because so much fresh water can be drained from the pores as the interface rises, these interface systems respond relatively slowly to new pumping.

If pumping rates are too high, salt water can ultimately invade parts of aquifers that were historically fresh. A classic case of salt water intrusion is the sand and gravel aquifer under Brooklyn, New York. Rapid development and increased pumping in the years 1900–1940 caused h to fall far below sea level throughout most of Brooklyn, which soon resulted in salt water intrusion and abandonment of pumping wells (Figure 3.28).

A video of a simulation of a coastal interface and its response to pumping is available on the book website. The video shows a vertical cross-section through a coastal sand dune aquifer near Amsterdam, Netherlands. Groundwater salinity (and density) is shown in different colors. Flow path lines are shown as white lines. Water recharges in the coastal dunes and flows to wells in the dunes and to a low-lying inland lake. Over many decades of pumping, the interface migrates inland and rises beneath pumping wells. The simulation shows salt water contamination of water supply wells, which could have occurred but did not, thanks to wise management of pumping (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

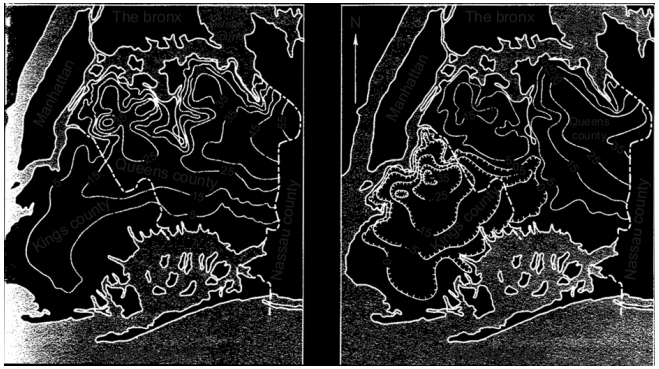


Figure 3.28 Water table elevations in Brooklyn, New York in 1903 (left) and 1936 (right). From Cohen et al. (1968).

Urban and suburban development often causes a reduction in fresh water recharge. Roofs and paving inhibit infiltration, and sewer systems intercept water that would have been recharge and routes it to major surface waters or the ocean. This reduction of recharge causes fresh water heads to decline and the fresh–salt interface to move upward and landward. Long Island, New York experienced many such intrusion problems as development spread east from New York City. To reduce salt water intrusion, treated waste water and storm water is now captured and infiltrated back into the aquifer in recharge basins (Cohen et al., 1968).

3.12 Problems

Answers are given at the back of the book for starred (*) problems.

1. Consider Darcy's experiment shown in Figure 3.1. $h_1 = 95.0\,\text{cm}$, $h_2 = 37.0\,\text{cm}$, $\Delta s = 20.0\,\text{cm}$, $Q = 3.5\,\text{cm}^3/\text{min}$, and the tube has a radius of 1.5 cm. Calculate K and give your result in cm/sec. What kind of granular material might have a K value like this?
2. Research the fundamental physical law describing one-dimensional heat conduction in solids. Write the equation representing this fundamental physical law, and for each parameter in the equation explain what its corresponding parameter is in Darcy's law, which is very similar.
3. *Explain why fine-grained granular materials have lower hydraulic conductivity than coarse-grained granular materials.

5

Hydrology and Geology

Key Terms

Aquifers	124	stage	133
confining layers	124	weir	135
aquitards	124	hydrograph	138
unconfined	124	bank storage	142
confined	124	Flood frequency analysis	145
potentiometric surface	124	exceedance probability	145
artesian	125	Permafrost	182
perched aquifers	125	active layer	182
spring	127		

Contents

5.1 General Patterns of Groundwater Flow 124
5.2 Surface Water Hydrology and Groundwater/Surface Water Interaction 132
5.3 Groundwater in Unconsolidated Deposits 154
5.4 Groundwater in Sedimentary Rocks 168
5.5 Groundwater in Igneous and Metamorphic Rocks 176
5.6 Frozen Ground and Permafrost 181
5.7 Problems 184

In this chapter, we will examine the interconnected flows of water on the earth's surface and under it, as well has how geology impacts those flows. *Hydrology* covers all types of water near the earth's surface, from atmospheric water to surface water to subsurface water. The broader hydrology perspective is important in groundwater science, since the flows of water in and out of the subsurface are directly linked to the dynamics of atmospheric and surface waters.

Usually many different geologic processes combine to produce the distribution of geologic materials in a region. In New England, for example, glacial processes are largely responsible for surficial materials and tectonic processes are responsible for the underlying fractured igneous and metamorphic rock. Patterns of groundwater flow vary widely from one geologic setting to another, since the distribution of porosity and permeability vary so greatly in geologic materials. These patterns are discussed first in a general way and then with reference to specific geologic settings. Additional reading on the subject may be

Groundwater Science, Second Edition. DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-384705-8.00005-4

© 2013, 2002 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

found in books by Davis and DeWiest (1966), Heath (1984), Fetter (2001), and GSA (1988).

5.1 General Patterns of Groundwater Flow

5.1.1 Aquifers and Confining Layers

The terms *aquifer* and *confining layer* are relative descriptors of water-bearing zones or layers in the subsurface. **Aquifers** are the layers with higher hydraulic conductivity and **confining layers** (also called **aquitards**) are the layers with lower hydraulic conductivity. When compared to a marine clay with $K = 10^{-9}$ cm/sec, a glacial till layer with $K = 10^{-4}$ cm/sec might be considered an aquifer. At another location the same till might be considered a confining layer when compared to a sand and gravel layer with $K = 10^{-2}$ cm/sec. Aquifers are the layers that are typically tapped by water supply wells, and aquifers transmit most of the flow in a given location. Confining layers retard flow and typically transmit relatively little water. The term *aquiclude* is no longer used much, and it means an extremely low K confining layer that virtually "precludes" flow.

Aquifers are classified as either **unconfined** or **confined**, as shown in Figure 5.1. An unconfined aquifer is one where the water table occurs within the aquifer layer. Unconfined aquifers are also called *water table* or *phreatic* aquifers.

In a confined aquifer, the whole thickness of the aquifer layer is saturated and there is a confining layer above. The water level in a nonpumping well in a confined aquifer rises above the top of the aquifer. An imaginary surface called the **potentiometric surface** is defined by the heads measured in wells in

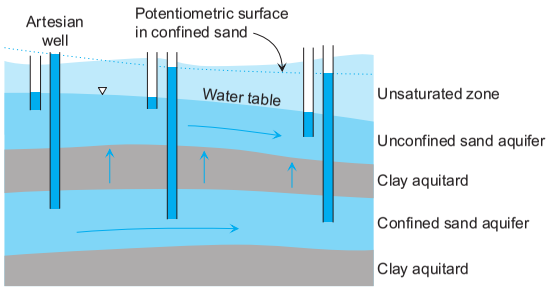


Figure 5.1 Vertical cross-section through an unconfined aquifer and a confined aquifer, with a confining layer separating the two. An artesian well is one where the water level rises above the ground surface.

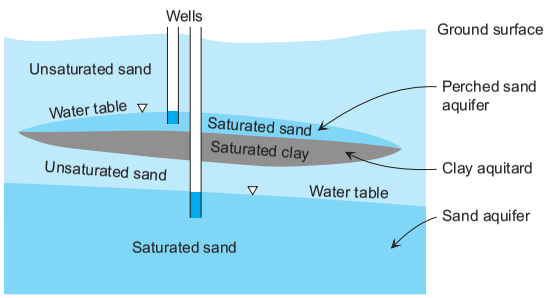


Figure 5.2 Perched aquifer and water table above a lens of low-conductivity clay.

a confined aquifer. In plan view, the potentiometric surface is a contour map showing the horizontal distribution of heads in a confined aquifer.

Sometimes, the water level in a well in a confined aquifer will rise above the level of the ground surface and flow freely without pumping. The aquifer in such cases is called an **artesian** aquifer and the well is called an artesian well. The word artesian comes from the French city Artois, site of free-flowing wells in the Middle Ages. Artesian wells are most common at the base of slopes in hilly terrain, where the high heads under the uplands can induce strong upward hydraulic gradients.

In some heterogeneous settings, there may be **perched aquifers**: zones of saturation completely surrounded by unsaturated zones, as illustrated in Figure 5.2. Lenses of less conductive materials always form the base of the perched zones. If the lens is extensive, the body of perched water may be thick enough to allow a water supply well to tap it without drilling deeper to the regional water table, as shown in Figure 5.2.

5.1.2 Recharge and Discharge

Groundwater is typically on the move. Where is it coming from and where is it going? Most groundwater originates as recharge in upland areas, water that infiltrates from precipitation on the ground surface. Some water enters the subsurface by seeping out of the bottom of surface waters, a situation more common in arid climates than in humid climates. Groundwater discharges from the saturated zone back to the ground surface in low-lying areas, usually at springs or the bottom of surface waters. Since groundwater always moves towards lower head, these exit points are always at a lower elevation than the water table where groundwater enters the system as recharge.

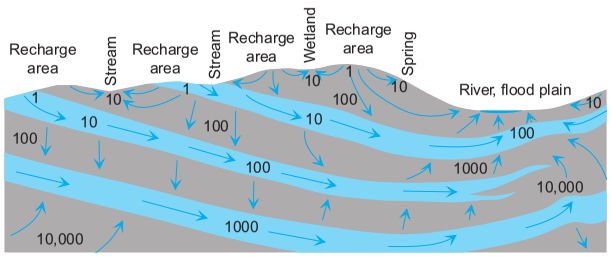


Figure 5.3 Vertical cross-section showing groundwater recharge and discharge areas in a hypothetical setting. Arrows show the direction of flow, and numbers indicate the groundwater residence time in years. Light blue shading indicates aquifers and gray shading indicates aquitards.

Figure 5.3 illustrates a hypothetical vertical cross-section showing how groundwater moves from recharge areas to discharge areas. Recharge enters the groundwater system under upland areas. It then migrates towards discharge areas at low spots in the topography. These are often the sites of wetlands, springs, streams, and lakes.

The pathlines that water travels are often very irregular due to the heterogeneous distribution of hydraulic conductivities in the subsurface. In a high conductivity layer, water tends to flow parallel to the layer boundaries. But in a low-conductivity layer, water tends to take the shortest path through the layer, flowing nearly perpendicular to the layer boundaries.

At shallow depth, there are many small, localized flow patterns as shown in Figure 5.3. Deeper down, groundwater tends to flow in larger regional patterns that reflect the larger scale geology and topography. For example, in Figure 5.3, the deeper flow is focused towards the low river and flood plain on the right side of the profile.

The residence time for groundwater (elapsed time since infiltrating) can range from days to hundreds of thousands of years. Longer residence times are found in larger groundwater basins and in deeper parts of the flow system, where there are long flow paths between recharge areas and discharge areas and slower velocities. Water in aquifers moves much more rapidly than water in aquitards, as illustrated by the residence times posted in Figure 5.3.

Freeze and Witherspoon (1967) conducted numerous mathematical model simulations to demonstrate the effect of water table configuration and heterogeneity on regional groundwater flow patterns. Their models were of two-dimensional steady flow in the vertical plane. Results of two of their

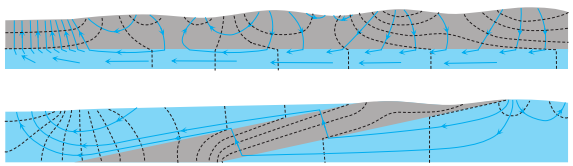


Figure 5.4 Two mathematical models of steady flow in the vertical plane. In each model, the water table undulates up and down creating local flow patterns at shallow depth. The subsurface is heterogeneous with the blue zones 100 times more permeable than the gray zones. Head contours are dotted black lines and flow paths are blue. From Freeze, R. A. and P. A. Witherspoon, 1967, Theoretical analysis of regional groundwater flow: 2. Effect of water-table configuration and subsurface permeability variation, *Water Resources Research*, 3(2), 623–634. Copyright (1967) American Geophysical Union. Modified with permission of American Geophysical Union.

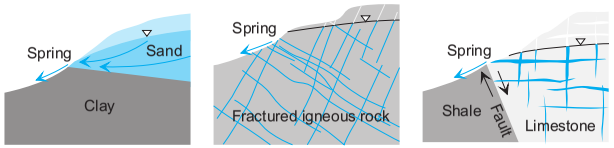


Figure 5.5 Springs in different geologic settings.

models are shown in Figure 5.4. The models demonstrate that localized flow systems occur at shallow depth and that heterogeneity can have a huge impact on flow patterns.

A **spring** is a place where groundwater discharges up to the ground surface. At a spring, the water table intersects the ground surface. Springs commonly occur near the base of a steep slope. Many are located where fractures or the base of an aquifer intersects the slope. Springs in several settings are illustrated in Figure 5.5. Several videos of springs are posted on the book website. One shows springs of enormous discharge issuing from basalt lava flows in Iceland, one shows a spring that flows periodically, and another shows boiling sand in a stream bed spring (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

In some regions, the water table is relatively deep below the ground surface, only intersecting the surface at major stream channels. This situation occurs when the recharge rates are low relative to the transmissivity of the near-surface materials. The upper picture in Figure 5.6 shows such a setting. The water table is deep and gently sloping, and there are long flow paths from recharge areas to the major streams. Streams and wetlands are widely spaced in such settings.

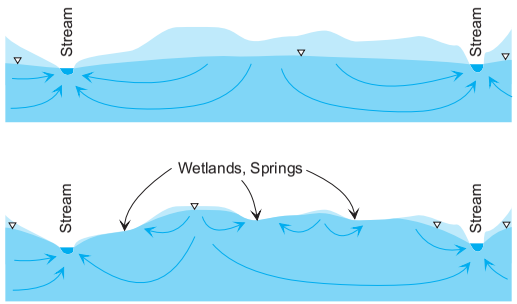


Figure 5.6 The water table position where the recharge/transmissivity ratio is low (top) and high (bottom).

The lower picture in Figure 5.6 shows the opposite situation. The recharge rates are high relative to the transmissivity. The water table is much higher, just under the surface and intersecting the surface at numerous topographic depressions. Low areas form soggy wetlands, springs, ponds, and streams. There are many relatively short, local flow paths in such settings. The association of low-conductivity subsurface materials and numerous wetlands made it difficult to find a suitable new landfill site in Maine in the 1980s and 1990s. Several proposed sites were desirable because their low-conductivity materials would limit the potential for contaminant migration, but they were rejected because of potential impacts on numerous wetlands.

5.1.3 Water Table and Potentiometric Surface Maps

A map of the water table surface (unconfined aquifer) or the potentiometric surface (confined aquifer) is a good tool for understanding the patterns of horizontal flow in aquifers. These surfaces represent the horizontal distribution of hydraulic head in the aquifer. Since water always flows towards lower hydraulic head, horizontal flow directions can be inferred from these maps. If the aquifer materials have isotropic hydraulic conductivity in the horizontal plane, then flow will be perpendicular to the contours of hydraulic head, as discussed in Section 3.5.

To construct one of these maps, you need water level measurements from a number of observation wells screened in the same aquifer. If there are significant vertical head gradients in the aquifer, the data should come from wells that are all screened at approximately the same level in the aquifer. For a water

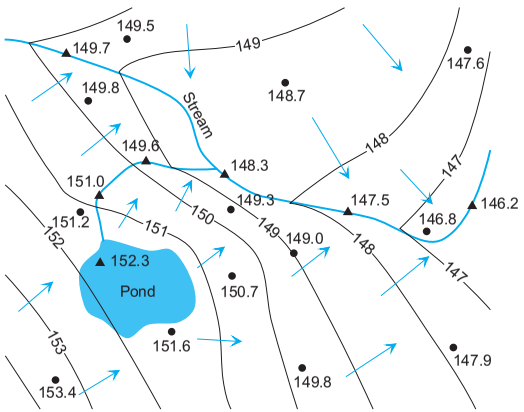


Figure 5.7 Example contour map of the water table in an area with a pond and streams. Contours are based on observation well levels (circles) and surface water elevations (triangles). Blue arrows indicate inferred groundwater flow directions based on the contours.

table map, the data should be from wells that are screened across or just below the water table.

Surface water elevations are another source of useful data for water table maps. If the aquifer and surface water are in direct contact, the water table will intersect the surface water at an elevation close to the elevation of the surface water. Along steep stream banks, there is often seepage because the water table is slightly higher than the stream surface. The elevation of the water table can differ from the elevation of a surface water body if there is a layer of low-conductivity sediment on the bottom of the surface water body.

Figure 5.7 shows an example water table map based on surface water and observation well levels. Contours are drawn by interpolating between the data points, a process that is a bit subjective and guided by experience. The pond level is higher than the surrounding water table, indicating that the pond may be perched. The inferred flow directions near the pond also indicate that it is a source of water to the aquifer.

On the other hand, the inferred groundwater flow directions near the larger stream indicate that groundwater is discharging into it from both sides. This is a gaining stream, one that picks up groundwater discharge. Where water table contours cross a gaining stream, they form a "V" that points in the upstream direction. Losing streams are just the opposite: contours form a "V" that points in the downstream direction.

4. The flow paths taken by these deep fluids are long, increasing the odds that somewhere along the way the fluid will encounter highly soluble minerals like halite or gypsum.

Several of the crustal flow mechanisms illustrated in Figure 5.8 drive mineral-rich pore fluids from deep in the crust up towards the surface. As these fluids rise, they encounter lower pressures and temperatures, causing minerals to precipitate. This general process is widespread in subduction zones and subsiding basins, and leads to the formation of veins and ore deposits in rock. The sum of these veins and mineral deposits in rock is quite large, evidence of the huge volumes of fluid moving over geologic time. To learn more about deep crustal fluids, consult the treatise by Fyfe et al. (1978).

Oil and gas are naturally occurring organic pore fluids that originate from the heating of organic-rich shales as they subside to greater depth in the crust, usually in subsiding basins or subduction zones. Oil and gas exist in distinct phases separate from the water-based phase. The gas consists largely of methane, with other small hydrocarbons (fewer than 10 carbon atoms per molecule) and the inorganic gases nitrogen, carbon dioxide, hydrogen sulfide, and water (England et al., 1987). Liquid petroleum (oil) is a complex mixture of hydrocarbons, most in the range of 4–25 carbon atoms per molecule.

Like water, oil and gas will migrate through the pores of rock, the direction depending on the gradient of the fluid pressure and the fluid density. Oil and gas tend to migrate upwards from their shale source beds because they are less dense than the surrounding water-based pore fluid. Their journey often involves a large horizontal component of migration (100 km or more), as these fluids ride up-dip in permeable layers of sandstone or limestone, trapped under less permeable overlying layers such as shale. Recoverable oil and gas deposits occur only where there are source beds that have been heated to the right temperatures and permeable reservoir rocks nearby to receive, transmit, and trap the migrating oil and gas.

5.2 Surface Water Hydrology and Groundwater/Surface Water Interaction

5.2.1 Measuring and Estimating Stream Discharge

There are no perfectly accurate ways to directly measure stream discharge, but discharge is commonly estimated using stream gaging stations. The U.S. Geological Survey and similar agencies in other countries have established gaging

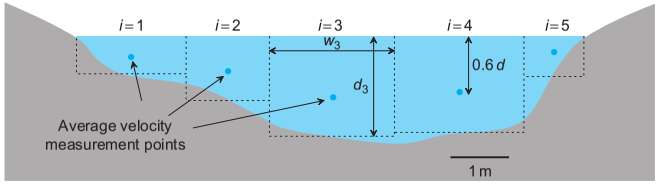


Figure 5.9 Cross-section of a stream channel showing how discharge is measured. Here the channel has been divided into five segments ($N = 5$).

stations on streams and rivers where water levels are measured and discharges are estimated based on measured water levels.

Most gaging stations on larger streams are located at a spot with an irregular stream channel. At these stations there can be no simple mathematical relationship between **stage** (stream surface elevation) and discharge, so a series of measurements must be made to define this empirical relationship. To get one stage/discharge measurement pair requires many measurements of water velocity across the stream at the station, as shown in Figure 5.9. Typically, the stream channel is broken into N slices, and the average velocity and cross-sectional area is estimated at each segment. The equation for total stream discharge Q is

$$Q = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \hat{v}_i w_i d_i \tag{5.1}$$

where $\hat{v}_i$ is the average velocity in the ith segment, w_i is the width of the ith slice, and d_i is the average depth of the ith slice. The cross-sectional area of the ith slice is $w_i d_i$.

All but the smallest, slowest stream flows are turbulent, and in turbulent flows the average velocity occurs at a depth that is about 60% of the way from the surface to the bottom (Figure 5.10). This is also a reasonable approximation for laminar flows. Therefore, $\hat{v}_i$ can be efficiently estimated by one measurement made at 60% depth. The velocity measurement is typically made with a flow meter that has an impeller that spins at a rate governed by the velocity. For shallow streams that can be waded, the impeller is mounted on the bottom of a rod (Figure 5.11). In deeper rivers the impeller is suspended from a cable or bridge that crosses the channel.

Example 5.1 For the stream cross-section shown in Figure 5.9, the average velocities measured at 60% depth are listed in Table 5.1. Compute the total stream discharge.

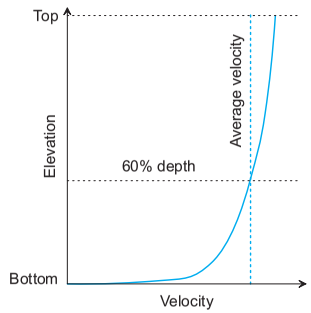


Figure 5.10 General distribution of velocity with depth in a stream channel. Velocity goes to zero at the bottom and is maximum at the top. The average velocity occurs at about 60% of the depth.

Figure 5.11 A handheld stream flow meter with a digital unit that displays, averages, and logs velocity measurements. Photo courtesy of Wagtech, www.wagtech.co.uk, with permission of the flow meter manufacturer, Valeport Ltd., www.valeport.co.uk.

First, measure the width and depth of each section using the scale on the figure, then apply Eq. 5.1, all in meter and second units:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \sum_{i=1}^{5} \hat{v}_i w_i d_i \\ &= (0.24)(1.8)(0.65) + (0.57)(1.45)(1.1) + (1.22)(2.2)(1.7) \\ &\quad + (1.31)(2.25)(1.65) + (0.38)(1.05)(0.7) \\ &= 11\ \mathrm{m}^3/\mathrm{sec} \end{aligned}$$

Table 5.1 Stream Velocity Data for Example 5.1

Section (i)	1	2	3	4	5
$\hat{v}_i$ (m/s)	0.24	0.57	1.22	1.31	0.38

The procedure outlined above results in one stage, discharge pair. This is repeated at different stages, yielding a series of stage, discharge pairs for the gage location, as shown in the graph of Figure 5.12. Graphs like this allow estimation of discharge from a simple measurement of stage. At many stations, the channel shape is dynamic as sediment shifts during floods. When significant channel changes occur, the stage-discharge relationship changes and new stage-discharge data must be collected.

On small streams, the gaging station may be a man-made dam with a simple geometric spillway (**weir**). A *flume* serves a similar purpose, but is a narrow sluice with a specific geometry. With a weir or flume there can be a relatively simple equation relating stage to discharge. Two common configurations are illustrated in Figure 5.13: a sharp-crested 90° V-notch weir and a sharp-crested rectangular weir. The following unit-specific equations relate discharge Q to the height of the reservoir water above the sill of the weir (h) for a 90° V-notch weir (based on U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, 2001):

$$Q = 2.48(h + 0.003)^{5/2} \quad \text{(feet, second units)}$$
$$Q = 1.37(h + 0.0009)^{5/2} \quad \text{(meter, second units)} \qquad (5.2)$$

In the case of a rectangular weir of width L, where L is less than half the width of the upstream channel, the approximate unit-specific equations based on the

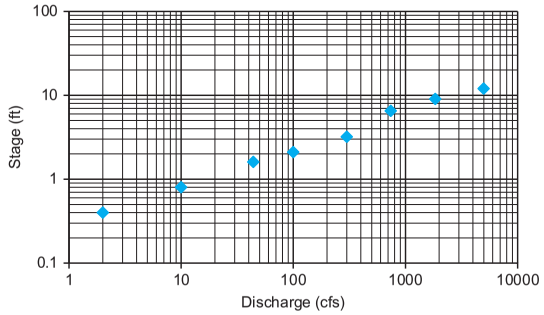


Figure 5.12 An example stage-discharge data set.

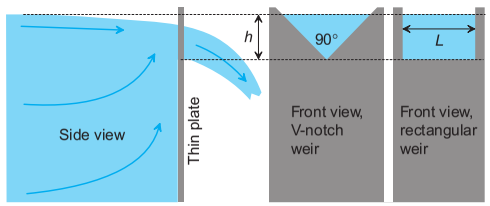


Figure 5.13 Sharp-crested weirs for estimating stream discharge.

U.S. Bureau of Reclamation (2001) are

$$Q = 3.2(L + 0.008)(h + 0.003)^{3/2} \quad \text{(feet, second units)}$$
$$= 1.76(L + 0.0024)(h + 0.0009)^{3/2} \quad \text{(meter, second units)} \qquad (5.3)$$

There are a number of conditions on the weir thickness, height above the outflow pool, measurement of h, etc. In general, these equations apply for thin plate weirs where the flow through the weir opening does not cling to the downstream face of the weir as it drops to the outflow pool. For more details and coverage of other weir and flume configurations, readers are referred to the manual by the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation (2001).

Example 5.2 A sharp-crested 90° V-notch weir has a reservoir height $h = 22$ cm. Compute the discharge.

This is a straightforward application of Eq. 5.2 using meter and second units:

$$Q = 1.37(h + 0.0009)^{5/2}$$
$$= 1.37(0.22 + 0.0009)^{5/2}$$
$$= 0.031\ \text{m}^3/\text{sec}$$

In a stream channel that has relatively uniform slope and channel geometry, the discharge can be estimated with the Manning equation:

$$Q = \frac{1.5}{n} A R^{2/3} S^{1/2} \quad \text{(feet, second units)}$$
$$= \frac{1.0}{n} A R^{2/3} S^{1/2} \quad \text{(meter, second units)} \qquad (5.4)$$

where n is the Manning coefficient, $R = A/P$ is the ratio of the channel cross-section area A to the wetted perimeter P, and S is the slope of the stream surface and stream bed measured along the channel. The wetted perimeter P is the length along the stream bed in the channel cross-section. If a channel is not a

Table 5.2 Manning Roughness Coefficient Ranges

Channel Description	n
Smooth concrete*	0.012
Unlined earth canal*	0.020
Natural sandy or rocky channels**	0.024–0.075

*Source: Hornberger et al. (1998).
**Source: Barnes (1967).

consistent slope or width (e.g. riffles and pools), Manning's equation should not be applied.

The Manning coefficient is a dimensionless measure of the roughness of the stream channel. Ranges of n for man-made and natural channels are listed in Table 5.2. With the natural channels examined by Barnes (1967), the low end of the range ($n < 0.04$) had obstructions such as cobbles or branches with dimensions that were a small fraction of the channel width (roughly less than 5%). At the higher end of the range ($n \geq 0.04$) the obstructions were larger, with larger n values corresponding to larger obstructions relative to the channel width. Barnes (1967) analyzed 50 different channels and included photos of each.

Example 5.3 A long rectangular concrete irrigation canal is 8 ft wide and slopes uniformly at a rate of 12 ft (3.66 m) vertical per mile (1.61 km) horizontal. The water depth is 1.7 ft (0.52 m). Estimate the discharge in the canal.

We will apply Manning's equation. First, compute A, P, and R:

$$A = (12)(1.7) = 20.4\ \text{ft}^2\ (1.90\ \text{m}^2)$$

$$P = 12 + 2(1.7) = 15.4\ \text{ft}\ (4.7\ \text{m})$$

$$R = A/P = 20.4/15.4 = 1.32\ \text{ft}\ (0.40\ \text{m})$$

Insert A, R, and the roughness coefficient for smooth concrete into Manning's equation (Eq. 5.4), with feet and second units:

$$Q = \frac{1.5}{n} A R^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{1.5}{0.012}(20.4)(1.32)^{2/3}\left(\frac{12}{5280}\right)^{1/2}$$

$$= 150\ \text{ft}^3/\text{sec}\ (4.1\ \text{m}^3/\text{sec})$$

5.2.2 Stream Hydrographs, Baseflow, and Quickflow

As discussed in Section 1.4.3, precipitation can make its way to a stream channel quickly by running off on the surface or flowing in very permeable materials at the surface (quickflow), or it can take a slower route by infiltrating, recharging groundwater, and flowing in the saturated zone to the channel (baseflow). Large pores in leaf litter, and pores left by rotting tree roots and burrowing animals allow near-surface soils to transmit a significant amount of quickflow below the surface (Hornberger et al., 1998). Baseflow is the groundwater discharge into a stream bed, and it can be estimated by examining records of stream discharge at gaging stations.

Figure 5.14 shows plots of stream discharge vs. time at specific locations on two different streams. This type of plot is known as a stream **hydrograph**. Both streams are in northern Indiana and experience similar precipitation patterns. The geology of the two basins differs, however, and causes quite different stream hydrographs. The low permeability clayey soils in Wildcat Creek's basin limit infiltration, recharge, and baseflow to a small fraction of precipitation, and most of the stream discharge comes from overland flow (Manning, 1992). On the other hand, the Tippecanoe River basin has sand and gravel soils and most of the stream discharge there is baseflow (Manning, 1992). The overland flow that dominates the discharge of Wildcat Creek fluctuates greatly in response to precipitation events, while the baseflow-dominated discharge of the Tippecanoe River undergoes mild fluctuations.

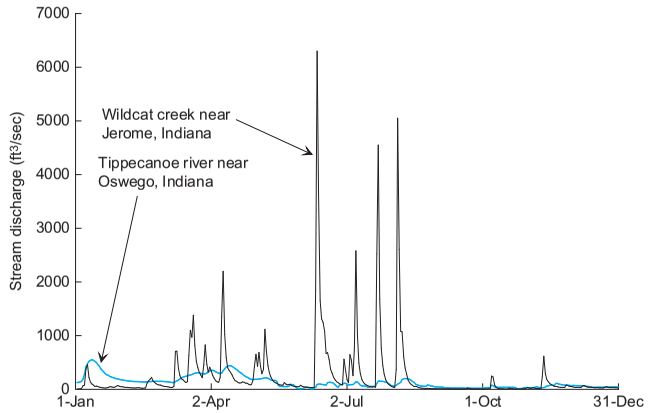


Figure 5.14 Hydrographs for two nearby streams in northern Indiana during 1998. The basin upstream of the gage on the Tippecanoe River is 113 mi^2 (293 km^2), and the basin upstream of the Wildcat Creek gage is 146 mi^2 (378 km^2). From the U.S. Geological Survey (http://waterwatch.usgs.gov).

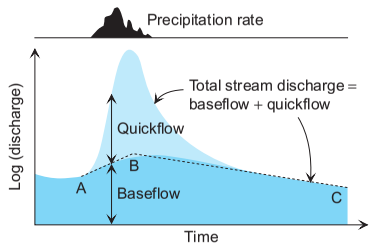


Figure 5.15 Hypothetical stream hydrograph during a single precipitation event, showing the contributions of baseflow and quickflow to the total stream discharge. The dotted line illustrates one empirical method for defining baseflow: the line extends parallel from the baseflow recession part of the curve (C) back to directly under the discharge peak (B), and then to the beginning of the rise (A).

A video on the book website shows a small stream from a bridge at a time when it is essentially just baseflow, and then from the same spot at a time of flooding, when most of the discharge is quickflow. The difference between these two modes is large at this site (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

Figure 5.15 shows a hypothetical stream hydrograph from a single precipitation event. The stream discharge rises during the event and then gradually recedes after the event. The different shades of blue in Figure 5.15 illustrate a schematic separation of the total stream discharge Q_s into the baseflow portion Q_b and the quickflow portion Q_q:

$$Q_s = Q_b + Q_q \tag{5.5}$$

The baseflow part of the stream discharge responds slowly to the precipitation event, with its peak occurring after the peak in stream discharge. This is because it takes time for infiltration and recharge to raise groundwater levels, which in turn drive larger groundwater discharges. If enough time passes without the onset of another precipitation event, the stream discharge may become entirely baseflow. As baseflow recedes after a precipitation event, it tends to do so with an exponential decay:

$$Q_b = Q_{b0}e^{-at} \tag{5.6}$$

where t is time, Q_{b0} is the baseflow at $t = 0$, and a is a constant. The exponential decay in stream discharge after a precipitation event is called the baseflow recession. When $\log(Q)$ is plotted vs. time in a stream hydrograph, it typically is linear during the baseflow recession.

Empirical, graphical methods for estimating the baseflow and quickflow components in a stream hydrograph can be found in most hydrology textbooks (see Bras, 1990, for example). Baseflow separation and estimation techniques are most accurate when applied to small watersheds where precipitation events are relatively uniform over the watershed and where there are no significant dams or reservoirs. One empirical, graphical approach to separating baseflow from quickflow is sketched in Figure 5.15 (Chow, 1964). Computer programs have been developed to analyze the time series of Q vs. t at a stream gage and digitally filter out the baseflow component from the total Q, using various algorithms (Arnold et al., 1995; Eckhardt, 2008; Nathan and McMahon, 1990). These digital filtering approaches are more consistent than empirical methods, especially when storm events are frequent and their impacts are overlapping.

Baseflow can also be estimated based on measurements of the chemistry of precipitation, groundwater, and stream water. This technique requires that there is a chemical constituent that can be used as a conservative tracer in the water, and that its concentration in precipitation is markedly different than its concentration in groundwater (Buttle, 1994; Sklash et al., 1976).

The concentration of the tracer in stream water will be somewhere between the concentration in groundwater and the concentration in precipitation and quickflow. The mass flux (mass/time) of this tracer chemical in the stream could be expressed as

$$Q_s c_s = Q_b c_b + Q_q c_q \tag{5.7}$$

where Q indicates water discharge [L^3/T], c indicates concentration of the tracer chemical [M/L^3] (mass of tracer per volume of water), and the subscripts s, b, and q refer to stream, baseflow, and quickflow, respectively. It is assumed that c_q equals the concentration of the tracer in the precipitation (and quickflow) and c_b equals the concentration of the tracer in groundwater (and baseflow). Assuming that measurements can be made of Q_s, c_s, c_b, and c_q, the baseflow Q_b and quickflow Q_q discharges can be calculated with Eqs. 5.5 and 5.7.

Commonly used chemical tracers include conservative major ions, which occur in much higher concentrations in groundwater than in precipitation. Total dissolved solids and electrical conductivity have also been used for this purpose (Stewart et al., 2007). Burnett et al. (2010) used radon (^{222}Rn) as a tracer, since radon levels in groundwater are usually two to three orders of magnitude larger than in precipitation or surface waters. Radon is chemically

inert but is radioactive with a half-life of 3.8 days, so it is quickly depleted from surface waters. Using radon as a tracer introduces radioactive decay as an additional key process that must be accounted for in the analysis.

5.2.3 Discharges between Groundwater and Surface Water

The discharge of water between a surface water body and the underlying groundwater can go either way, and it often is a significant fraction of the body's water budget. In humid climates, most often there is net groundwater discharge into streams, wetlands, and lakes. On the other hand, surface waters in drier climates or during dry spells often have a net outward discharge into the groundwater beneath. If the hydraulic head in the surrounding groundwater zone is higher than the level of the surface water, groundwater will discharge into the surface water. The opposite is true if the surface water level is higher than the groundwater head.

Discharge patterns beneath lakes and rivers are interesting, with many possible configurations. Modeling and field studies of this interaction include papers by Meyboom (1967), Winter (1976), and Anderson and Munter (1981). Some general patterns of flow beneath lakes are illustrated in Figure 5.16. Pattern (a) is more typical in a wet climate and pattern (b) is more typical in an arid climate. Mixed patterns like (c) and (d) are also common. In a lake with a dam at the outlet, the flow pattern is likely to resemble pattern (c), with the outlet at the left side and the inlet at the right. Surface waters can be classified as *gaining* or *losing*, depending on whether there is net discharge from groundwater to the surface water or vice versa. In Figure 5.16, case (a) is a gaining lake and case (b) is a losing lake. Along a stream, the regime can alternate between gaining reaches and losing reaches, depending on the underlying geology and on topography. For example, a reach upstream of a waterfall is probably losing and a reach downstream of a waterfall is probably gaining.

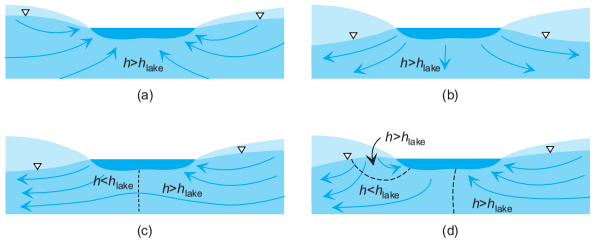


Figure 5.16 Typical flow patterns beneath lakes or rivers. In (a) groundwater discharges into the lake everywhere. In (b) ground water discharges out of the lake everywhere. In (c) and (d), discharge direction varies in different parts of the lake.

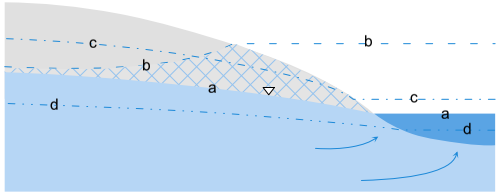


Figure 5.17 Vertical cross-section of a river bank showing water levels under average conditions (a), during a flood (b), after a prolonged wet period (c), and after a prolonged dry period (d).

Discharges between surface waters and groundwater are not constant over time, but vary as surface water and groundwater levels change in response to precipitation events, floods, and pumping. Figure 5.17 shows a cross-section of a river bank. Under average conditions at this spot, the river stage is lower than the local water table, and groundwater discharges into the river (case a). When the river floods due to a storm event upstream of this location, the river stage rises more than the local water table does (case b) and water flows from the river into the groundwater. This flow saturates the cross-hatched zone, storing water temporarily in what is called **bank storage**. After a spell of high local precipitation, the water table has risen more than the river stage has, creating steeper gradients toward the river and higher than average groundwater discharge to the stream (case c). Case (d) illustrates conditions after a period of drought. All water levels drop and the gradient toward the river decreases, decreasing the groundwater discharge to the stream.

Bank storage acts as a buffer of sorts for surface waters. When the surface water stage rises, some of the surface water goes into bank storage, which helps dissipate floods to some degree. When the surface water stage drops, some water exits bank storage and flows into the surface water.

When wells near surface waters are pumped consistently, the long-term local water budget adjusts to accommodate the well discharge. Take a relatively simple case where a well is screened in an aquifer near a surface water, and without any pumping all local aquifer water ultimately discharges to the surface water. When the well pumps for a long period of time, a new approximately steady condition is established where the aquifer discharges are now split between well discharges and discharges to the surface water. Assuming that inflow to the aquifer (e.g. recharge from precipitation) is unchanged by the pumping, the discharges to the surface water will have been reduced by the amount of the well discharge. If the magnitude of the discharge to surface waters is much greater than the well discharge, groundwater will continue to discharge to the surface water but at a reduced rate. If the well discharge is

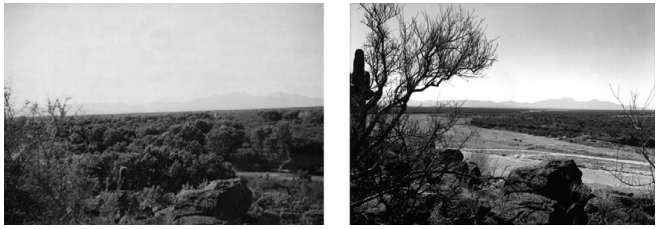


Figure 5.18 Two photos of the Santa Cruz River south of Tucson, Arizona, taken from the same spot. The 1942 photo (left) shows mesquite and cottonwood trees along the river, which are no longer present in the 1989 photo (right) (Alley et al., 1999).

large enough, it may reverse the direction of discharge so that the surface water discharges to the groundwater instead of the other way around.

There are many examples where such pumping has lowered surface water levels and even dried up surface waters entirely. Figure 5.18 shows two photos of the Santa Cruz River valley near Tucson, Arizona, The earlier photo shows a lush riparian zone in the river valley, fed by shallow groundwater. The second photo at the same spot shows a barren valley impacted by groundwater pumping that lowered groundwater levels by over 100 feet and completely dried up the Santa Cruz River. This is a classic example of pumping that altered water budgets drastically with major consequences for surface waters and their ecosystems. Alley et al. (1999) gives a good overview of linked groundwater/surface water budgets and the impact pumping has on these budgets.

Stream or lake bed temperature measurements can be used to identify the location, direction, and magnitude of discharge between a surface water and the underlying groundwater. Conant (2004) took a spatial array of temperature measurements on the bed of a stream in summer and again in winter. Where groundwater was discharging up into the stream bed at higher rates, the temperatures were warmer in winter and cooler in summer (Figure 5.19). Conant's study showed a very heterogeneous distribution of discharge, probably due to irregular distribution of hydraulic conductivity in the stream bed materials.

The rate of discharge into the stream bed can be estimated using mathematical models of vertical heat transport under the stream bed (Conant, 2004; Constantz, 2008). This heat moves by advection of groundwater (heat migrating with the flowing groundwater), and conduction (heat migrating by molecular vibration). One approach is to measure and model the daily oscillation of temperatures with depth under the stream bed (Constantz, 2008). When the discharge is upward and large, daily temperature oscillations do not penetrate much below the stream bed. On the other hand, if the discharge is

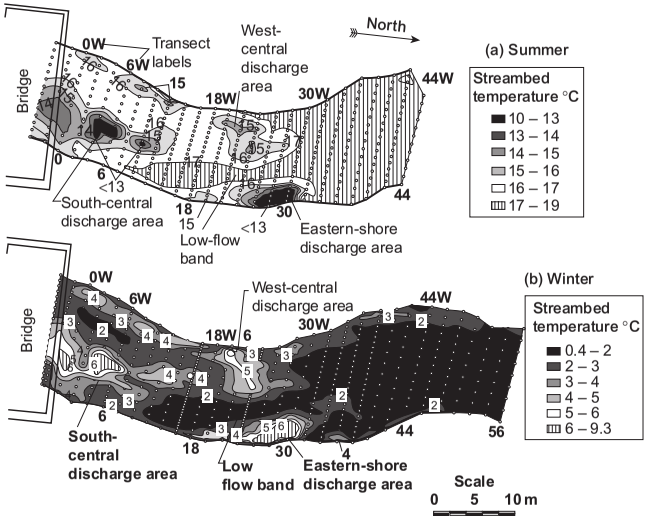


Figure 5.19 Distribution of temperatures in a sandy stream bed in the Pine River, Ontario. The winter and summer temperature anomalies are inverted, but at similar locations where groundwater discharge is greatest. *Source:* Conant (2004).

downward and large, daily temperature oscillations penetrate deep below the stream bed.

5.2.4 Stream Flooding

Precipitation events distribute water to the land surface and to the subsurface. How that water gets partitioned depends on the land surface slope, subsurface geology, and on the speed, location, and duration of precipitation. Runoff and flooding are greater with steeper slopes, subsurface materials with low hydraulic conductivity and high saturation, and longer, more intense precipitation. Geologic and topographic conditions that generate higher runoff tend to generate lower infiltration. As discussed in Section 1.4.1, a larger fraction of preciptation infiltrates early in a storm compared to later when the ground is more saturated.

It is useful to be able to predict the magnitude and frequency of flooding. This kind of analysis is used for designing hydraulic structures like culverts, for defining flood zoning, and for determining flood insurance premiums. Where there is a long record of historic stream gage data, it is possible to use this data

to estimate the probability of flooding. **Flood frequency analysis** is a statistical analysis used to predict the probability that a certain stream discharge will occur in any one-year period. For example, a flood that statistics indicate has a probability of occurring once in a hundred years (the *hundred-year flood*) has a probability of 1/100 of occurring in any given year. The steps in flood frequency analysis are as follows:

- The data to be analyzed is the series of peak discharges measured at a gaging station in each year on record. For example, at a gage with continuous records from 1925–2011, there would be 87 pairs of (year, Q_{max}) data in the series.
- Sort the data from the largest to smallest Q_{max}, and assign each year a rank (1 for the year with the largest Q_{max}, 2 for the year with the second largest Q_{max}, etc).
- The **exceedance probability** of a given Q_{max} is its rank divided by $n+1$ where n is the number of years in the data series. The exceedance probability is the probability of a discharge equal to or greater than this Q_{max} occurring in a given year.
- Graph Q_{max} vs. exceedance probability for all years in the data set and fit a trend line or curve to the graph. In some cases the distribution is log-normal and graphing $\ln(Q_{max})$ vs. exceedance probability on normal probability paper will result in a linear trend.

The trend of the resulting graph can be used to estimate the exceedance probability for a given magnitude of flood (Q_{max}). The return period (the likely return period for a flood of discharge Q_{max} or more) equals the inverse of the exceedance probability. For example, a 50-year flood has a return period of 50 years and an exceedance probability of 0.02.

Example 5.4 The data of Figure 5.20 are from the U.S. Geological Survey gaging station on the Gardner River in Montana just north of Yellowstone National Park. There are peak discharges available for 1939–1972 and 1984-2010 ($n = 61$ years). Table 5.3 shows some data from this series along with rank and computed exceedence probability. Estimate the discharge of a 5-year flood and of a 100-year flood. Which of these is a more certain estimate, and why?

Inverting the return periods of 5 and 100 years gives the exceedence probabilities (EP) of 0.20 and 0.01, respectively. Using a curve fitted through the data, Q_{max} at EP = 0.20 is about 1700 ft^3/sec (48 m^3/sec). Likewise, Q_{max} at EP = 0.01 is about 2200 ft^3/sec (62 m^3/sec). Since there are only 61 years of record, estimating the 100-year flood requires extrapolation beyond the range of the data. The estimate of Q_{max} for a 100-year flood is much more uncertain than the estimate for the 5-year flood, which lies well within the data.

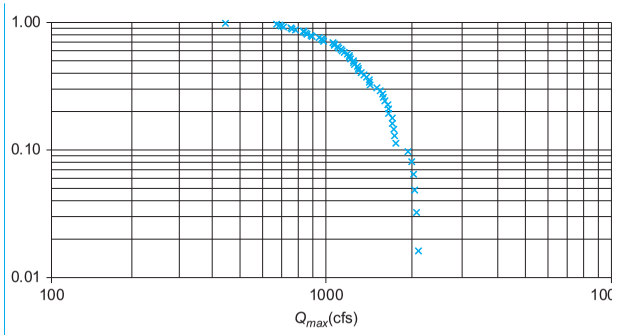


Figure 5.20 Exceedence probability vs. Q_{max} for the Gardner River MT gaging station, Example 5.4. Data from the U.S. Geological Survey (http://waterwatch.usgs.gov).

Table 5.3 Peak Discharge Data for the Gardner River MT Gaging Station, Example 5.4.

Year	Q_{max} (ft^3/sec)	Rank	Exceedence Probability
2010	2110	1	0.016
1956	2080	2	0.032
1997	2050	3	0.048
1959	2030	4	0.065
...	...	...	...
1988	698	58	0.935
1941	689	59	0.952
2007	672	60	0.968
1987	445	61	0.984

As the example illustrates, the uncertainty of flood prediction is larger for more extreme, infrequent floods. We would like to understand the nature of a 100-year or 500-year flood for siting critical facilities, but usually the available historical records are not nearly long enough to provide accurate estimates of these largest events. Uncertain estimates of these largest floods should be tempered with conservative designs.

When a good historical stream gage record is not available for the site of interest, but precipitation records are, rainfall-runoff models may be used to predict flooding in response to an actual or hypothetical (e.g. the 100-year storm) precipitation event. Hypothetical events are based on statistical analysis of historical precipitation data, similar to flood frequency analysis. This sort of analysis is generally done with computer modeling of rainfall-runoff processes in a watershed.

Such models break the watershed into smaller sub-watershed areas. Each area is assigned values to represent the topographic slope, the surface properties (e.g. pavement, field, forest) and the subsurface properties (e.g. hydraulic conductivity, depth to water table). Model input also includes information about the geometry of stream channels and reservoirs in the watershed. Modeling proceeds in small time steps through the simulated storm, applying rainfall to each area, which in turn routes the water to the next area downstream or a stream channel. At each time step, the model collects flows from the highest part of the watershed, proceeding downstream to the main trunk stream of the watershed summing discharges along the drainage network and adjusting water levels in each stream/reservoir reach to be consistent with the discharges. This is repeated through all time steps during and after the storm to estimate discharges and stages through time in the surface waters of the watershed. The interested reader should consult hydrology texts for coverage of rainfall-runoff modeling (Bedient et al., 2008; Chin, 2006; Gupta, 2008).

A much simpler, rudimentary way to estimate peak stream discharges in a storm event is the Rational equation:

$$Q_{peak} = CiA \tag{5.8}$$

where Q_{peak} is the peak discharge at a particular spot on a stream, C is a runoff coefficient that is a function of landscape, i is the rainfall intensity during a storm (length/time units), and A is the drainage basin area upstream of the spot. The Rational equation is usually applied to small, uniform watersheds for the purpose of designing storm drains. The coefficient C is an empirical parameter that accounts for soil type and slope. Table 5.4 lists C values for some common landscapes.

The Rational equation entails many assumptions, including:

- The precipitation event provides uniform rainfall intensity over the entire drainage basin area.
- Rainfall intensity is constant through time.

Table 5.4 Runoff Coefficients for the Rational Equation

Description	*C*
Asphalt, concrete pavement, or roofs	0.70–0.95
Lawn with sandy soil, < 2% slope	0.05–0.10
Lawn with sandy soil, 2–7% slope	0.10–0.15
Lawn with sandy soil, > 7% slope	0.15–0.20
Lawn with clayey soil, < 2% slope	0.13–0.17
Lawn with clayey soil, 2–7% slope	0.18–0.22
Lawn with clayey soil, > 7% slope	0.25–0.35

Source: American Society of Civil Engineers (1993).

- Rainfall lasts longer than the time required for runoff rates to traverse through the basin.
- The rate of runoff generation is constant, not influenced by changes in saturation, stream stage, or the water table.

The Rational equation is a crude model, since reality often deviates significantly from the above assumptions. It should only be applied to very small basins (no more than 4 to 80 ha (10 to 200 acres) according to a variety of sources cited by Chin (2006)), and basins without storm drainage control structures or reservoirs.

The runoff coefficients of Table 5.4 show the marked impact that development has on runoff and infiltration. Paved surfaces and roofs generate 3 to 10 times more runoff than undeveloped surfaces do. Developed areas experience more runoff and larger floods than undeveloped areas do, all other factors being equal. At the same time, infiltration rates and aquifer recharge rates are generally lower in developed areas. Development often goes hand-in-hand with water table declines due to this reduction in recharge. In some urban areas such as Phoenix and Tucson, Arizona, aquifer pumping also contributes to water table declines. Recently, there has been more effort made to route storm runoff back to the subsurface and raise infiltration and recharge rates closer to predevelopment rates. Rather than route all storm runoff to a nearby river or ocean, storm runoff detention basins are created to store and infiltrate storm runoff. Another way of restoring infiltration is to use porous pavements instead of impermeable pavements.

5.2.5 Spatial and Temporal Variations in Recharge

Recharge rates vary with location at a large scale due to variations in climate and precipitation patterns. Maps of estimated recharge rates show patterns

similar to maps of precipitation rates. Precipitation governs the availability of water at the surface, which is key to recharge. In some climates like monsoon climates, recharge is distributed quite unevenly through the year with a rainy season and a dry season. In temperate and polar climates, there is also a strong seasonal variation in recharge, with almost no recharge occurring when and where ground is frozen, and a pulse of recharge when the ground thaws and snow melts. Short-term daily or weekly variations in recharge rates are associated with specific precipitation events.

Infiltration, the precursor to recharge, can occur when precipitation rates exceed evapotranspiration (ET) rates. When ET rates are highest (hot, dry conditions), recharge rates are lower. Outside of tropical latitudes, there is a strong seasonal variation of ET, with highest rates in summer and lowest rates in winter. In these regions, recharge rates tend to be higher in the cool months, except when the ground is frozen.

As discussed earlier in Section 5.2.2, the permeability of subsurface materials is a key control on recharge rates, with higher rates occurring with more permeable soils. Higher rates are also associated with drier surface soils and greater depth to the water table.

Topography also influences recharge rates at a more local scale. In humid climates, recharge rates tend to be highest in flat, upland areas and low or negative (groundwater discharging to the surface) in low-lying areas and valleys. In arid climates, the general pattern is quite different. Higher recharge rates tend to be focused in lowlands, ephemeral stream valleys, and alluvial fans, where the occasional precipitation runs off and eventually infiltrates, transpires, or evaporates. On a small scale, subtle topographic variations can focus recharge in low spots where runoff accumulates. For example, in a nearly flat 2.7 hectare field underlain by permeable sands, measured local recharge variations of over 50% corresponded to topographic variations of less than a couple of meters (Delin et al., 2000).

Vegetation is another factor affecting recharge. Forest and shrub landscapes are more effective at transpiring water than grassland or crop landscapes, and thus tend to have lower recharge rates (Scanlon et al., 2002). For similar reasons, areas lacking vegetation have higher recharge rates than vegetated areas. Allison et al. (1990) found that recharge rates at sites in the Murray Basin, Australia increased by about two orders of magnitude when native deep-rooted eucalyptus vegetation was replaced by shallow-rooted crops.

Under irrigated lands, recharge rates can increase dramatically due to infiltration of excess water (irrigation return flows). In the southern High Plains Aquifer in the U.S., irrigation return flows have increased average annual recharge rates about twentyfold (Alley et al., 1999). In California's Central Valley, predevelopment recharge was greatest during winter months, but now there is an additional pulse of higher recharge during the growing season, thanks to irrigation return flows (Faunt, 2009). Irrigation return flows are now the largest contributor to recharge in the Central Valley aquifer system, and irrigation applies more water to the land surface than precipitation does. Drip irrigation and low-level sprinkling systems are more efficient than older irrigation systems and help minimize return flows.

Where the water table is shallow, transit times from the surface to the water table are short, and recharge rates oscillate up and down in concert with precipitation transients. When the water table is deep, transit times to the water table are long and tend to blur and merge the effects of individual precipitation events at the depth of the water table. Recharge rates at a deep water table tend to be much more uniform than infiltration rates up near the surface.

Urban and suburban development often alters recharge rates. Paving and structures limit infiltration, and runoff is often channeled and routed to distant surface waters, which also reduces recharge. Construction of canals, dams, and reservoirs can have large impacts on recharge. New reservoirs add a new source of high recharge, often lifting water tables in a broad area. Sewer and water lines often leak, becoming new sources of recharge. They also can create permeable conduits, creating new pathways for groundwater migration.

5.2.6 Estimating Recharge Rates

There are many methods for estimating groundwater recharge rates, and each method applies to certain spatial and temporal scales. Some of the most common approaches are summarized below roughly in order of decreasing spatial and temporal scale. This discussion is largely based on information presented by Scanlon et al. (2002), Delin et al. (2007), and Healy (2010).

1. *Watershed-scale water budgets.* Water budgets at the watershed scale were discussed in Section 1.5. Water budgets apply to a defined region or volume, and mass balance for this region balances flows in, flows out, and changes in the amount of water stored within. One region that can be chosen is the saturated zone in the watershed, and Eq. 1.3 defines its budget. Rearranging this equation to isolate recharge gives

$$R = -G_i + G_o + G_s + ET_d + Q_w + \frac{dV}{dt} \tag{5.9}$$

where R is recharge, G_i and G_o are groundwater inflows and outflows through the lateral boundaries and bottom of the aquifer, G_s is net groundwater discharge to streams, ET_d is deep evapotranspiration extracted from the saturated zone, Q_w is well discharge, and dV/dt is rate of change in the volume of water stored in the saturated zone. R is estimated by filling in estimates of all the other terms in this equation. This method becomes more tractable if the region can be defined so that $G_o - G_i \simeq 0$. With deep water tables, $ET_d \simeq 0$. G_s (baseflow) is usually estimated from stream hydrograph data. If the system is roughly in a steady state, $dV/dt \simeq 0$.

There are many variations on the water balance approach, drawing the region boundary in different ways. For example, the region may be the surface and unsaturated zone instead of the saturated zone, in which case the terms in the budget equation include precipitation, shallow ET, runoff, net interflow, direct evaporation, and storage changes at the surface and in the unsaturated zone. In all these water budget approaches, recharge is estimated as the residual after all other terms have been estimated. The recharge estimate is only as accurate as the least accurate of the other terms in the equation. The best estimates using this approach define the region cleverly, so that there is minimal uncertainty in the other terms in the budget equation.

2. *Calibration of complex models.* These models are based on water balance concepts and equations, but they embody the equations in a more sophisticated way than the simple region-wide budget that is the basis of the watershed-scale water budget approach. The representation of the region includes spatial and temporal variations in the flow terms in the balance, including recharge. Simulations can focus on just the saturated zone (groundwater flow models like those described in Chapter 9), the unsaturated zone, or the entire watershed system including surface water, unsaturated zone, and groundwater systems. Models are calibrated to observed heads, discharges, and sometimes chemical observations, so that the modeled system closely matches observed system behavior. This approach allows synthesis of many different types of observations into the estimation of the spatial and temporal distribution of recharge. More accurate results are possible when there are more observations to calibrate to, especially discharges.

3. *Vertical migration of tracer chemicals.* Vertical concentration profiles of tracer chemicals in the unsaturated or saturated zones can be a useful technique for estimating recharge at one location. Two commonly used tracers are isotopes introduced at markedly higher levels into precipitation as a result of above-ground nuclear bomb testing in the 1950s and 1960s: ^{3}H (tritium) and ^{36}Cl. Other tracers introduced by humans in the past century include chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) and SF_6. Section 10.10 describes some of these isotopes. The history of CFC concentrations in the atmosphere is shown in Figure 10.19. Due to global limits on CFC production (Montreal Protocol), surface atmospheric CFC levels peaked in the 1990s or early 2000s and have decreased 1–12% by 2010 (varies by specific CFC compound) (World Meteorological Organization, 2010). Vertical profiles of the concentrations of such chemicals or isotopes can reveal the current location of the pulse of infiltration that entered the ground with precipitation. For example, see the vertical profile of ^{3}H concentrations shown in Figure 10.18, where the peak concentration introduced in the early 1960s is now well below the water table. Knowing the history of the chemical's introduction, it is possible to estimate the apparent downward velocity of the groundwater pulse. In the saturated zone, the recharge rate is related to this average downward velocity $|\bar{v}_z|$ as

$$R = |q_z| = n|\bar{v}_z| \tag{5.10}$$

where q_z is the vertical specific discharge and n is porosity. Analysis of unsaturated zone migration is not as easy, often complicated by preferential flow paths that create a wide range of vertical migration velocities.

It is also possible to apply tracer chemicals to the ground surface and track their vertical migration to and beyond the water table after they infiltrate. This approach is particularly effective where recharge rates are high and unsaturated zones are thin, so that the tracer pulse moves far enough in a reasonable amount of time. Healy (2010) summarizes various tracers and methods in more detail.

4. *Water table fluctuation method.* This method is based on analysis of detailed time-series records of head vs. time in wells near the water table in unconfined aquifers. A pulse of recharge from a precipitation event manifests itself as a relatively sudden jump in head as that water reaches the water table. Assuming the migration of water through the unsaturated zone is vertical and that the pulse arrives much more rapidly than changes in horizontal flow in the aquifer, the analysis boils down to the following equation:

$$RD = S_y \Delta h \tag{5.11}$$

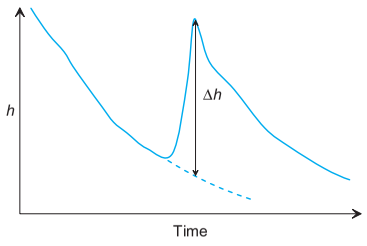


Figure 5.21 Estimating Δh in the water table fluctuation method. The dotted line shows extrapolation of the previous recession curve. Δh equals the difference between the extrapolated line and the peak h from the recharge pulse.

where RD is the vertical depth of recharge contributed by the event, S_y is the aquifer specific yield (see Section 6.8.2), and Δh is the head change induced by the recharge pulse. This method has been employed widely and for a long time (Meinzer, 1923). Δh is estimated from the well hydrograph as the jump in head induced by the pulse, as shown in Figure 5.21. Recent advances include computer programs that automate determination of RD (e.g. Delin et al., 2007). The average recharge rate over time interval Δt sums RD values from N precipitation events:

$$R = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{N} RD_i}{\Delta t} \tag{5.12}$$

The water table fluctuation method works best when recharge events are infrequent and can be easily isolated in the hydrograph record, and where the transit time from precipitation to recharge is short compared to response times for horizontal aquifer flow. The method requires frequent head measurements (hourly or daily) to get an accurate time series. This method results in R estimates at a point, and should be done at a number of wells to get a more regional picture of average R.

5. *Unsaturated zone water content profiles.* This method attempts to quantify the downward migrating pulses of water through the unsaturated zone, assuming one-dimensional (vertical) migration of water in the unsaturated zone. This is done by installing instrumentation that allows measurement of head and water content at various depths and over time. The targeted zone for measurement is above the water table and below what is known as the *zero-flux plane* (ZFP). On the ZFP, the vertical hydraulic gradient is zero ($\partial h/\partial z = 0$), separating shallow upward-migrating water that will ultimately evaporate or transpire from deeper water that migrates downward to the water table. By observing water contents vs. time in a profile below the ZFP, it is possible to track downward-migrating pulses of moisture from precipitation events and quantify the net downward discharge from the pulse (see Figure 3.22). Barring significant horizontal flow in the zone of measurements, recharge is the sum of pulse discharges. This method was first proposed by Richards et al. (1956), and has since been widely employed (e.g. Healy, 1989; Schwartz et al., 2008). This approach essentially yields recharge estimates at one location, unlike other methods that pertain to a large region.

Example 5.5 Solomon et al. (1993) measured vertical profiles of ^{3}H concentrations at a sand aquifer site in Sturgeon Falls, Ontario. The average porosity of the sand is $n = 0.35$. In 1986, they found the peak ^{3}H concentration at a depth of 8.7 m below the water table. Atmospheric concentrations of ^{3}H peaked in 1963. Estimate the vertical average linear velocity $\bar{v}_z$ and the recharge rate R at this site.

The vertical average linear velocity is the apparent migration rate of the ^{3}H peak:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{v}_z &= dz/dt \\ &= \frac{-8.7\ \text{m}}{1986 - 1963\ \text{yr}} \\ &= -0.38\ \text{m/yr} \end{aligned}$$

The recharge rate is given by Eq. 5.10:

$$\begin{aligned} R &= n|\bar{v}_z| \\ &= (0.35)(0.38\ \text{m/yr}) \\ &= 0.13\ \text{m/yr} \end{aligned}$$

5.3 Groundwater in Unconsolidated Deposits

Unconsolidated deposits like sand, silt, and clay usually have their geologic origin as alluvial, marine, or glacial deposits. The coarser deposits, sands and gravels, are among the most porous and permeable of earth materials. Where present, they form important aquifers that have high yields and are easily

tapped at shallow depth. Many of these unconsolidated aquifers are in contact with rivers or other surface waters, which adds significantly to their potential yield when pumped.

Most shallow unconsolidated deposits have little cement in them and their porosity and permeability is governed mostly by grain size distribution. The more uniform (well sorted) the grain sizes are, the higher the porosity. The coarser the material, the higher its permeability and hydraulic conductivity.

Water-laid sediment is stratified, which causes anisotropy in the large-scale average hydraulic conductivity. As discussed in Section 3.6, the bulk average K is highest in the direction parallel to the bedding, and lowest normal to the bedding. The bulk average anisotropy ratio (ratio of highest to lowest K) in stratified unconsolidated materials can be as low as 2 or as high as 1000. The more variable the strata are, the higher the anisotropy ratio.

Alluvial deposits are common on flood plains and terraces of rivers (Figure 5.22). These materials can range from clays to gravels, depending on the turbulence of the water that deposited them. The coarser sands and gravels tend to be deposited in the faster parts of the main river channel, while the finer silts and clays are deposited in stagnant oxbow lakes and beyond the channel during floods. Since the channel meanders over time, the sequence of sediment associated with it also shifts. Meandering channels tend to erode and rework bank materials and cut off big loops from time to time. The result is that a floodplain becomes a complex distribution of former channel sands, levee silts, and floodplain silts and clays.

Alluvium is also common in basins within mountain ranges. Sometimes these basins are closed, sometimes they have an outlet. Figure 5.23 illustrates common features of a fault-block mountain basin typical of the basin and range province of western North America. The alluvium is coarsest at the margins of the basin, where streams deposit sands and gravels in alluvial fans. These streams exit mountain valleys and flow onto the basin alluvium

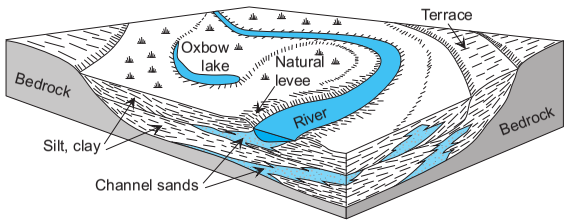


Figure 5.22 Unconsolidated deposits beneath a floodplain.

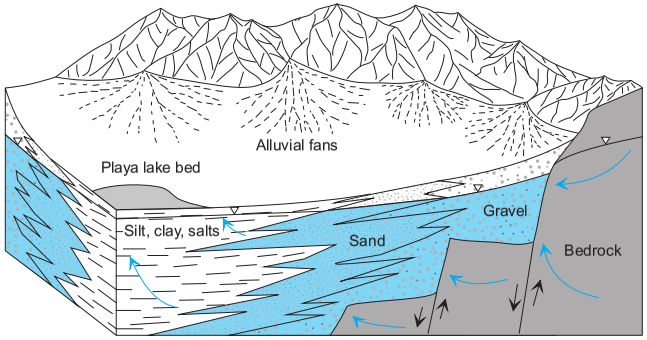


Figure 5.23 Unconsolidated deposits beneath a closed fault-block mountain basin.

and become losing streams, losing all their discharge to the subsurface before flowing far.

There is often an ephemeral playa lake in the center of a closed basin. The alluvium deposited in the lake bed is dominated by silts, clays, and evaporite minerals. The water table is usually closest to the surface in the center of the basin. During very wet seasons, the water table intersects the surface and the playa lake fills with water. In dry times, the water table drops below the surface and the lake drains and evaporates, depositing salts.

Coastal plains are another setting where there are significant aquifers in unconsolidated deposits. The east coast of the United States south of New England has a wide coastal plain, as discussed in the case study of Section 5.3.2. Coastal plains are common on other passive continental margins around the world.

The deposits under a coastal plain consist of near-horizontal layers of sediment ranging from sands and gravels to silts and clays. They are deposited in near-shore terrestrial and marine environments. A given layer forms a near-horizontal bed as the position of the shoreline and the associated depositional environments slowly progress landward or regress seaward over geologic time. The stratigraphy of the coastal plain is usually continuous with its submerged portion under the continental shelf. The bedding generally dips gently towards the ocean, and the layers thicken in the down-dip direction.

Hydrologically, coastal plains form a thick stack of alternating aquifers (sands and gravels) and aquitards (silts and clays), both of which may be continuous for hundreds of kilometers. Aquifers often outcrop inland at their up-dip limit, where recharge enters them (see Figure 5.30, Section 5.3.2).

Depending on many factors, including the history of sea level, the fresh–salt water interface in a given aquifer may be inland from the present-day shoreline or seaward of it. When sea level has recently transgressed (risen relative to land), the interface tends to be farther offshore.

Regions like northern North America and Europe were glaciated multiple times in the Pleistocene epoch, 1.8 million to 10,000 years ago. Glaciation left a veneer of unconsolidated deposits, some laid down by melting ice and others by waters that drained from the melting ice. The thickness of these unconsolidated deposits ranges from less than a meter to over a hundred meters. Some typical glacial deposits are illustrated in Figure 5.24.

There is a great range in the grain size of these materials and in their hydraulic conductivity. At the low-K end of the spectrum are lacustrine and marine silty clays and clayey tills, which are among the lowest-conductivity earth materials. Typical conductivities for clayey glacial sediments are in the range $K = 10^{-9}$ to 10^{-5} cm/sec. The higher the clay content, the lower the conductivity. All clayey materials can become desiccated and fissured above the water table, greatly increasing their bulk hydraulic conductivity (Grisak and Cherry, 1975; Ruland et al., 1991).

Tills are pervasive in areas that were subject to continental glaciation. More than two-thirds of the state of Maine has till just under the surface. The till is often just a thin veneer over the bedrock surface. In New England, the tills usually are quite dense and have a matrix consisting of fine sand, silt, and clay.

Lacustrine silts and clays were deposited in large lakes that formed at the margins of continental glaciers. The present-day Great Lakes of North America were much larger in late Pleistocene, depositing extensive lacustrine clays in the areas that border the present-day Great Lakes in Michigan, Illinois, Indiana, and Ohio. Other large Pleistocene lakes existed in Utah and Nevada (glacial lakes Bonneville and Lahontan), on the Minnesota–Dakota border (glacial lake Agassiz), and along the Connecticut River valley (glacial lake Hitchcock).

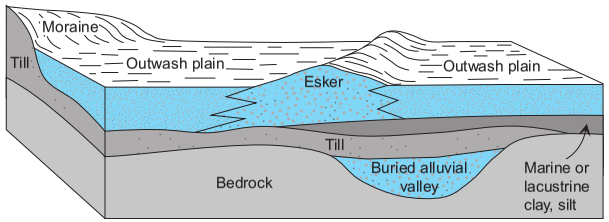


Figure 5.24 Typical hydrogeologic setting in a glaciated area. Sands and gravels in various glaciofluvial deposits like outwash plains, eskers, and buried valleys form aquifers. Aquitards consist of less permeable materials like tills, lacustrine silts and clays, or marine silts and clays.

In coastal areas that have been overrun by continental glaciers, marine silts and clays are now found above sea level. These are deposited in shallow marine environments as the ice sheet melts and shrinks, but before the crust rebounds fully. Once the crust does rebound enough, these deposits become elevated above sea level. Such marine clays are common in New England, the eastern Canadian provinces, and Scandinavia. Curiously, these glacial marine clays are often "sensitive," meaning that their shear strength drops dramatically when disturbed. It is not uncommon for the disturbed strength to be 20, 40, or even 80 times smaller than the undisturbed strength. Such clays pose difficult construction conditions in coastal New England, the St. Lawrence seaway in Quebec, and coastal Scandinavia.

The high-K end of the glacial deposit spectrum includes various glaciofluvial sands and gravels. The conductivities of these materials are typically in the range $K = 10^{-3}$ to 1 cm/sec. Glaciofluvial sands and gravels form important aquifers where they are thick and extensive. Many different glacial landforms are composed of these permeable deposits: outwash plains, eskers, kames, and glacial marine deltas.

The landscape of New England and the upper Midwest U.S. is punctuated by all of these landforms. The southern part of Cape Cod is a wide glacial outwash plain. The blueberry barrens of eastern Maine are a large glacial marine delta, now 265 ft above sea level. The source of bottled water at Poland Spring, Maine is an esker/kame deposit fed by bedrock fractures.

5.3.1 The High Plains Aquifer

The High Plains aquifer system is a shallow, unconfined aquifer in the Midwest U.S., spanning parts of eight states from Texas to South Dakota (Figure 5.25). The area is relatively dry (15–25 inches of rain per year), but abundant groundwater allows extensive irrigation farming. In 1980, about 170,000 irrigation wells pumped a total of 22 km^3 of water, about 30% of all groundwater pumped for irrigation in the United States (Weeks et al., 1988).

The main geologic unit of the High Plains aquifer is the Ogallala formation, Miocene-aged clay, silt, sand, and gravel deposited by braided streams that flowed to the east from the Rocky Mountains. The Ogallala is unconsolidated, except for some calcite-cemented layers, particularly common near the top of the formation. The Ogallala formation is as much as 700 ft thick where it filled in preexisting river valleys. The underlying bedrock is a wide range of Permian to Oligocene sedimentary rocks of low permeability compared to the Ogallala.

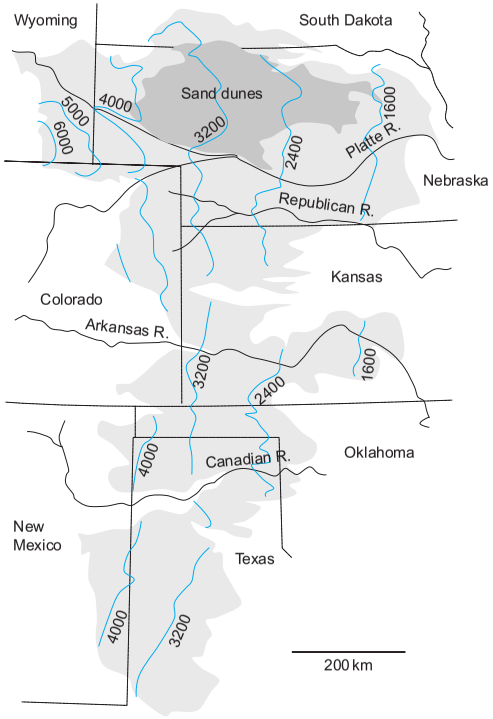


Figure 5.25 High Plains aquifer (light shading). The Nebraska sand hills, extensive Pleistocene dunes, are shaded dark gray. Contours of the water table elevation are shown in blue. From U.S. Geological Survey (Gutentag et al., 1984).

In its northern and eastern areas, the High Plains aquifer consists of the Ogallala formation plus layers of overlying permeable Quaternary sediments. In central Nebraska a huge field of Pleistocene sand dunes, as thick as 300 ft, overlies the Ogallala (Figure 5.25). The dunes consist of a fine sand, blown off extensive outwash plains. There are several other smaller dune fields outside of Nebraska. The dune sands are partly saturated, and are important recharge areas for the aquifer.

In eastern Nebraska, central Kansas, and along major rivers, Quaternary alluvial deposits overlie the Ogallala formation. These are often permeable, saturated, and hydraulically connected to the Ogallala.

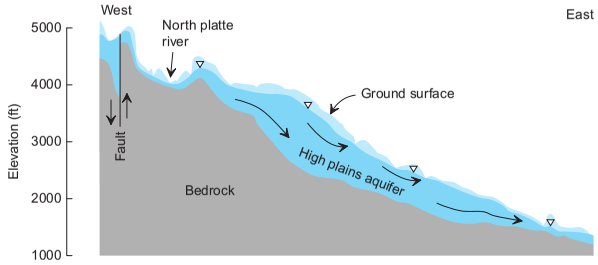


Figure 5.26 Vertical east–west profile of the High Plains aquifer through eastern Wyoming and central Nebraska. From U.S. Geological Survey (Gutentag et al., 1984).

The hydraulic conductivity of the High Plains aquifer varies widely because of the variable nature of braided stream and other depositional environments. The average horizontal hydraulic conductivity of the aquifer is mostly in the 20 to 200 ft/day range (Gutentag et al., 1984).

An east–west profile of the aquifer through the middle of Nebraska is shown in Figure 5.26. Figure 5.27 shows the distribution of saturated thickness in the aquifer. The greatest thickness is in the Nebraska sand hills area.

Water in the aquifer generally flows east to west, with local variations in flow direction as groundwater converges on streams and rivers, where it discharges. The overall east-dipping slope of the water table is controlled by the sloping base of the aquifer. The average linear velocity of flow is on the order of 1 ft/day (Gutentag et al., 1984). Water enters the aquifer as diffuse recharge under broad upland areas, and as localized recharge from ephemeral stream channels during floods. Estimated upland recharge rates for the aquifer range from a few percent of the precipitation rate in the drier southwestern parts, to 10–20% of the precipitation rate in the Nebraska sand hills section (Gutentag et al., 1984).

Groundwater exits the aquifer as discharge into larger streams and rivers, and as irrigation pumpage. Irrigation pumping began in the late 1800s using windmills, but significant withdrawals did not begin until the late 1930s and 1940s when drought, cheap natural gas, and better pump technology combined to make irrigation attractive. Total irrigation pumping in the aquifer rose from about 2.5 km^3 in 1949 to 22 km^3 in 1980 (Weeks et al., 1988). The water pumped in 1980 is enough to flood the entire state of Connecticut 4 m (13 ft) deep.

The estimated average water fluxes for the southern part of the aquifer in the period 1960–1980 are listed in Table 5.5. The fluxes indicate a significant

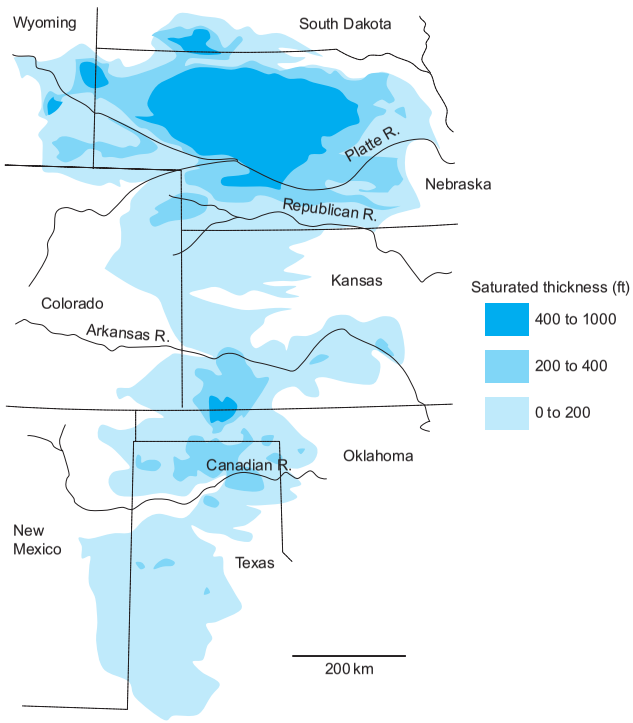


Figure 5.27 Saturated thickness of the High Plains aquifer. From U.S. Geological Survey (Gutentag et al., 1984).

imbalance, which decreases the amount of water stored in the aquifer. The imbalance is greatest in the southern part of the aquifer where the climate is dry, recharge is low, and irrigation is high.

The net discharge/area of −4.6 cm/year listed in Table 5.5 means that if the aquifer were merely a giant bathtub, its level would decline an average of 4.6 cm/year. Since the aquifer is a porous medium, the actual rate of water table decline is greater, closer to 30 cm/year. This systematic imbalance has persisted since the onset of extensive irrigation, and there have been large long-term declines in the water table in the southern two-thirds of the aquifer (Figure 5.28). As of 1980, the water table had declined more than 100 ft over an area of about 2500 square miles (Gutentag et al., 1984).

Table 5.5 Estimated Water Budget for the Southern High Plains Aquifer, 1960–1980

	Discharge (km^3/year)	Discharge/Area (cm/year)
Inflows		
Recharge from irrigation	3.6	4.8
Recharge from precipitation	1.6	2.1
Outflows		
Well discharges	8.6	11.4
Discharge to streams	0.1	0.1
Inflows–Outflows	−3.5	−4.6

Source: Luckey et al. (1986).

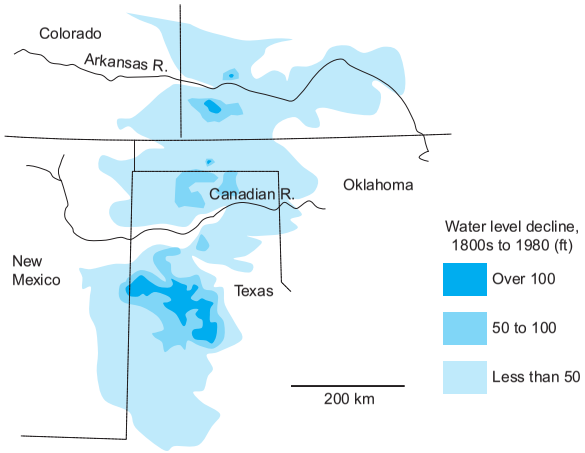


Figure 5.28 Groundwater level decline from 1800s to 1980. From U.S. Geological Survey (Gutentag et al., 1984).

Where water table declines are extreme and the hydrologic budget is far from balanced, irrigation farming will cease to be viable at some point; the cost of lifting the water will go up and well discharges will go down. As long as the discharges out of the aquifer exceed discharges into the aquifer, water is removed from storage. When inflows are substantially smaller than outflows, which is the situation in the southern High Plains, water is essentially mined from the aquifer.

5.3.2 New Jersey Coastal Plain

The New Jersey coastal plain is a southeast-dipping wedge of Cretaceous to Holocene sediment that underlies the southern half of the state, as shown in Figure 5.29. The up-dip limit of the coastal plain parallels the Delaware River along the Fall Line, where coastal plain sediments give way to outcrops of the underlying crystalline bedrock. A schematic northwest–southeast section of the coastal plain is shown in Figure 5.30. The coastal plain sediment gets thicker than 6500 ft in Cape May, at the southern tip of New Jersey (Martin, 1998; Zapecza, 1984). The actual dip of the sediments is quite gentle, generally less than a couple of degrees.

Aquifer layers consist mostly of sand, but contain interbeds of silt and clay. Most estimates of the horizontal hydraulic conductivity of aquifers are in the range 20–200 ft/day (Martin, 1998). The major aquifer layers are extensive, some of them continuous under the entire New Jersey coastal plain and beyond. Each aquifer layer receives recharge where it outcrops at its up-dip limit. Discharge from the aquifers occurs at stream channels, pumped wells, and the shore. Aquitards in the system consist mostly of silt and clay with some sand interbeds. Most estimates of their vertical hydraulic conductivity range from 10^{-6} to 10^{-2} ft/day (Martin, 1998).

General groundwater flow directions, as of 1978, are shown in Figures 5.30 and 5.31. Flow in the aquitards is mostly vertical and normal to layering, and

Figure 5.29 Map of the New Jersey coastal plain (shaded gray) and the nearby region. The coastal plain is southeast of the Fall Line. Sediments in the coastal plain dip gently to the southeast, as the arrows indicate.

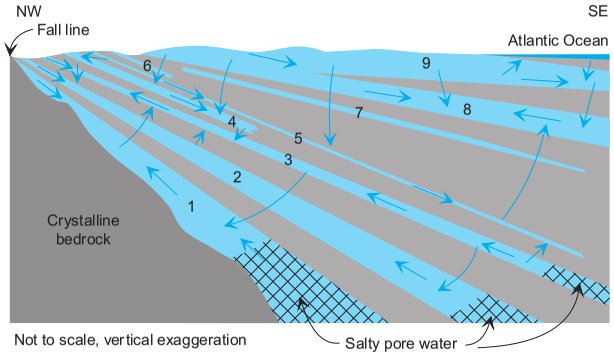


Figure 5.30 Northwest–southeast schematic cross-section through the New Jersey coastal plain (see section line in Figure 5.29). Aquifers are light blue and aquitards are gray. The major aquifers are: (1) Lower Potomac–Raritan–Magothy (PRM), (2) Middle PRM, (3) Upper PRM, (4) Englishtown, (5) Wenonah–Mount Laurel, (6) Vincentown, (7) Piney Point, (8) Lower Cohansey–Kirkwood, and (9) Upper Cohansey–Kirkwood. Flows within and between aquifers are shown with blue arrows. From U.S. Geological Survey (Martin, 1998).

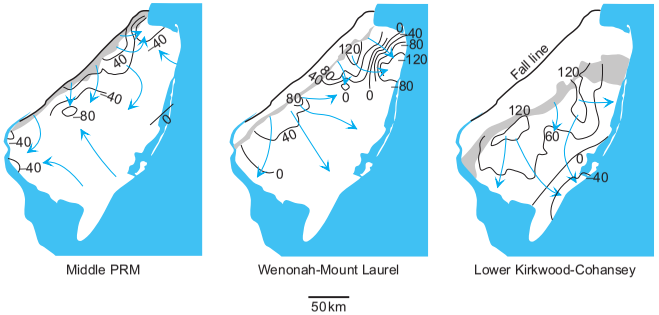


Figure 5.31 Maps showing the distribution of hydraulic heads and flow directions in three New Jersey coastal plain aquifers in 1978. Head contours are in feet above mean sea level. The outcrop areas of the aquifers are shaded gray. Based on measured and simulated heads presented by the U.S. Geological Survey (Martin, 1998).

flow in the aquifers is mostly horizontal and parallel to layering. In the shallow unconfined Cohansey–Kirkwood aquifer, groundwater flows from upland areas to local streams and to the coast.

Heads and flow in the confined aquifers are strongly influenced by well discharges, as shown in Figure 5.31. Total groundwater withdrawals from New Jersey coastal plain aquifers climbed from near zero in the late 1800s to 350 million gallons per day (1.3 million m^3/day) by 1980 (Martin, 1998). Pumping centers in Camden and near New York City have created cones of depression as low as 80 ft below sea level in the Potomac–Raritan–Magothy aquifer. In the Wenonah–Mount Laurel aquifer, well discharges near the northern Jersey shore have dropped heads to more than 200 ft below sea level. Well discharges near Atlantic City have reduced heads to more than 60 ft below sea level in the confined Kirkwood aquifer. Extensive pumping has dramatically altered flow patterns in these confined aquifers. Prior to development, flow used to be more uniformly from outcrop and recharge areas in the northwest towards the shore.

Figure 5.30 shows the approximate position of the fresh–salt water interface in the Potomac–Raritan–Magothy aquifers. Generally, the interface is located more inland (northwest) in deeper aquifers. In the shallowest aquifers, the interface is located offshore; the interface in the confined Kirkwood aquifer is at least 25 miles offshore (Martin, 1998). Fresh water is pumped from this aquifer at a depth of 800 ft in Atlantic City, which sits on a narrow barrier island. The extensive fresh water offshore owes its existence to confining layers and to the low stand of sea level during the Pleistocene, when the shoreline was near the edge of the continental shelf. Despite heavy pumping that has reduced heads far below sea level, there is still abundant fresh water in most of the confined aquifers.

5.3.3 Western Cape Cod Glacial Deposits

All of Cape Cod is underlain by thick unconsolidated deposits of glacial origin. Aquifers in these deposits are the sole source of water for the area, which is home to a growing population and the Massachusetts Military Reservation (MMR).

The main surficial deposits in western Cape Cod are two large end moraines and a broad, pitted outwash plain (Figure 5.32). The Buzzards Bay and Sandwich moraines were deposited in late Pleistocene at the margins of two distinct lobes of ice, one centered in Buzzards Bay and the other in Cape Cod Bay. There is another, earlier set of moraines to the southeast on

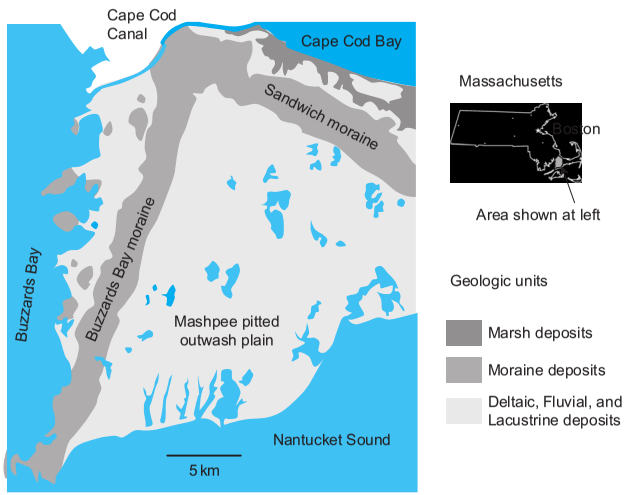


Figure 5.32 Distribution of surficial deposits in western Cape Cod. From U.S. Geological Survey (Masterson et al., 1997).

Nantucket and Martha's Vineyard, deposited when the ice margin was there. Nantucket Sound, now marine, was a proglacial lake at the time the Buzzards Bay and Sandwich moraines were deposited (Masterson et al., 1997). The terminal moraines that go through Nantucket and Martha's Vineyard formed a dam, behind which the lake developed. The moraines consist of a coarse till, poorly sorted gravel, sand, and silt, with minor clay. The average hydraulic conductivity of the moraine till is in the range 10–150 ft/day (Masterson et al., 1997).

The Mashpee pitted outwash plain consists of sandy sediments that were deposited in a delta that prograded southeast across the proglacial lake. The outwash plain sediments tend to be coarser near their sources at the margins of the Buzzards Bay and Sandwich moraines, and at shallower depth. As the delta prograded southeast, coarser topset and foreset beds were laid down over fine-grained bottomset beds and lake bed sediments (Figure 5.33). The coarser topset and foreset materials are gravel and sand with hydraulic conductivities of 100–400 ft/day, but the finer foreset beds and lake bed sediments are fine sand and silt with hydraulic conductivities of 10–100 ft/day (Masterson et al., 1997).

At the time the delta was being deposited, numerous large, grounded ice blocks sat in the proglacial lake and sediment accumulated around them. As

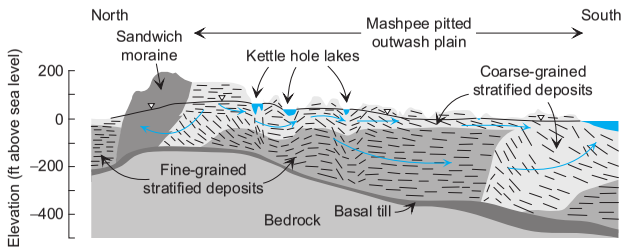


Figure 5.33 Vertical north–south cross-section through western Cape Cod, showing glacial deposits and groundwater flow directions (blue arrows). From U.S. Geological Survey (Masterson et al., 1997).

the ice blocks melted, the surrounding sediments slumped in to fill the voids forming kettle holes (pits) in the outwash plain. The kettles are characterized by slumped bedding and coarse materials that have dropped to deeper levels than in the surrounding plain (Figure 5.33). Lakes occupy the deeper ones.

When the ice margin later retreated from the position of the Buzzards Bay and Sandwich moraines, more coarse outwash sediments were deposited to the north and west of these moraines. These deposits show up on the shores of Buzzards Bay and Cape Cod Bay (Figure 5.32).

Beneath the moraine and outwash plain sediments is a thin layer of older basal till deposited beneath the ice sheet (Figure 5.33). In contrast to the sandy till of the moraines, the basal till has a dense, silty/clayey matrix. Typical hydraulic conductivities of the basal till are on the order of 1 ft/day (Masterson et al., 1997). The basal till overlies low-conductivity crystalline bedrock.

The coarser unconsolidated glacial deposits form a large, permeable, and shallow unconfined aquifer. The average precipitation rate for this area is about 45 inches/year. About 60% of that, about 26 inches/year, ends up as recharge to the surficial aquifer (Masterson et al., 1998). The total amount of recharge over the area of western Cape Cod shown in Figure 5.32 is about 0.25 km^3/year.

Groundwater flows from upland recharge areas in the north-central part of the area, radially outwards towards the coasts (Figure 5.34). About 53% of the groundwater flux in western Cape Cod discharges to the ocean, about 41% discharges to streams, and about 6% is pumped out by supply wells (Masterson et al., 1998). The system is in an approximate steady state with these discharges.

The recharge areas for each public supply well are also shown in Figure 5.34; these are based on flow modeling by Masterson et al. (1998). A well's recharge area tends to be a narrow swath extending upgradient. Wells that are screened deep below the water table do not capture recharge from directly above the screen, but from an area that begins some distance upstream.

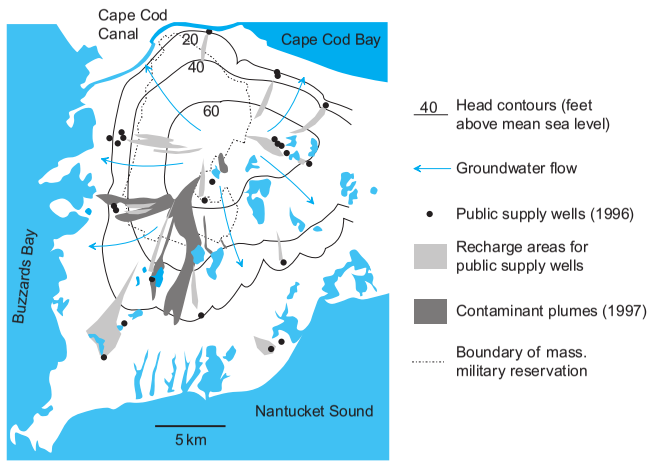


Figure 5.34 Contours of the water table and groundwater flow directions on western Cape Cod. Also shown are the public supply wells and their recharge areas, and known contaminant plumes from sources at the Massachusetts Military Reservation (MMR). From U.S. Geological Survey (Masterson et al., 1998).

Some supply wells, particularly the one farthest southwest in Figure 5.34, capture flow that has moved through a kettle hole lake. Most kettle hole lakes on Cape Cod receive inflow from groundwater on their upgradient side and discharge outflow to groundwater on their downgradient side, like the pond illustrated in Figure 5.16(c).

There are several mapped contaminant plumes migrating from sources at the MMR, as shown in Figure 5.34. As of 1998, several of these plumes were being remediated by pumping water out, treating it, and then reinjecting the treated water. The close proximity of contaminant plumes and supply well recharge areas is proof that careful consideration must be given to land uses near water supply wells.

5.4 Groundwater in Sedimentary Rocks

A large fraction (about 3/4) of the shallow bedrock under of the earth's land area is sedimentary as opposed to igneous or metamorphic. Sedimentary rock sequences can extend for hundreds or even thousands of kilometers, forming huge regional groundwater flow systems. These kinds of sedimentary sequences occur in central North America, central Australia, and northern Africa, for example.

6

Deformation, Storage, and General Flow Equations

Key Terms

effective stress	189	specific storage	218
barometric efficiency	192	storativity	219
compressibility	202	specific yield	220
consolidation	211	General equations	225
elastic storage	217	Dupuit–Forchheimer approximation	229
water table storage	217	Boundary conditions	236
phreatic storage	217		

Contents

6.1 Introduction 187
6.2 Effective Stress 188
6.3 Atmospheric Pressure Fluctuations 190
6.4 Excavation Instability and Liquefaction 193
6.5 Slope Instability 195
6.6 Earthquakes and Groundwater Pressures 198
6.7 Matrix Compression 201
6.8 Changes in Subsurface Water Storage 217
6.9 General Flow Equations 225
6.10 Overview of Mathematical Modeling 234
6.11 Problems 237

6.1 Introduction

Changes in head and pore water pressure cause deformation of the solid matrix that holds the water, deformation that has a range of impacts including subsidence, fissures, liquefaction, slope failure, and faulting. Pore pressure changes and matrix deformation are also key aspects of transient (time-dependent) groundwater flow. The last sections of this chapter introduce the general equations of transient groundwater flow, which follow from Darcy's law, mass balance, and storage concepts. The general equations of flow are the basis for mathematical models of groundwater flow, which are discussed in subsequent chapters.

Groundwater Science, Second Edition. DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-384705-8.00006-6

© 2013, 2002 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

6.2 Effective Stress

When the soil or rock matrix compresses or expands, it does so in response to changes in something called *effective stress*. To illustrate what this is, consider the vertical column shown in Figure 6.1. What is holding this column up? A reasonable assumption is that there is no net vertical supporting force on the sides of the column; this column does not support or drag down neighboring columns. The total weight of the column is borne by its base.

The weight of the column divided by the area of its base is called the total vertical stress and is given the symbol σ_{vt}. The units of stress are force/area, just like the units of pressure (N/m^2 or lb/ft^2, for example). In a rock or soil with a uniform wet density ρ, the total weight of the column at a depth b below the ground surface would be

$$W = \rho g b A \tag{6.1}$$

where g is gravitational acceleration and A is the cross-sectional area of the column. The total vertical stress at depth b is the weight per area:

$$\sigma_{vt} = \rho g b \tag{6.2}$$

If the subsurface profile consists of n layers, each with a unique density, the total vertical stress is given by

$$\sigma_{vt} = g \sum_{i=1}^{n} \rho_i b_i \tag{6.3}$$

where ρ_i and b_i are the density and thickness of the ith layer. The vertical force per area at the base is σ_{vt}.

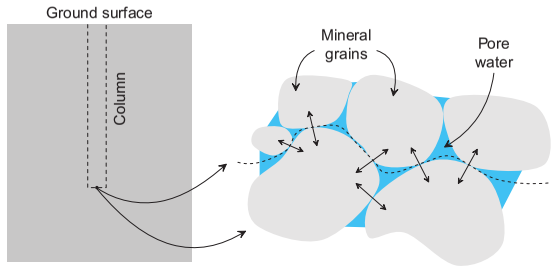


Figure 6.1 Column of soil supported by its base (left) and a close-up of the soil at the base (right). Two things support the column: forces across grain-to-grain contacts (effective stress) and pressure in the pore water.

Imagine drawing a roughly planar surface through the interconnected pore spaces at the base, as shown by the dotted line on the right side of Figure 6.1. Looking closely at this surface, we see that the total stress is borne by two types of forces that act across the surface. One is the force of the pore water pressure, and the other is the force in the solid matrix. The force of the pore water pressure P acts all across this surface. The force in the matrix acts through the network of grains in soils and in the matrix of rock. The matrix forces acting across the base divided by the area of the base is the vertical effective stress, σ_{ve}. The vertical effective stress plus the pore water pressure equals the total vertical stress:

$$\sigma_{vt} = P + \sigma_{ve} \tag{6.4}$$

The column is held up by two forces: the pore water pressure, and the matrix forces (effective stress).

In general, **effective stress** is the force/area acting through the solid matrix. The concept of effective stress was first described by Karl Terzaghi (1925), and it is a key concept in modern soil mechanics (see Atkinson, 2007; Budhu, 2010; Lambe and Whitman, 1979; Terzaghi et al., 1996).

Example 6.1 Consider a sand that is unsaturated from the ground surface down to a depth of 4.5 ft (1.37 m), and saturated below that. The total unit weight of the unsaturated sand is $\rho g = 112$ lb/ft^3 (17,600 N/m^3) and the total unit weight of the saturated sand is $\rho g = 125$ lb/ft^3 (19,600 N/m^3). Assuming that the distribution of pore water pressures is hydrostatic, calculate σ_{vt}, P, and σ_{ve} at a depth of 12 ft (3.66 m).

The total stress is given by Eq. 6.3, summing the contributions of the unsaturated and saturated zones:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_{vt} &= \left(112\ \text{lb/ft}^3\right)(4.5\ \text{ft}) + \left(125\ \text{lb/ft}^3\right)(7.5\ \text{ft}) \\ &= 1442\ \text{lb/ft}^2 (69,000\ \text{N/m}^2)\end{aligned}$$

The pore water pressure 12 ft down (7.5 ft below the water table) in a hydrostatic situation is given by

$$\begin{aligned}P &= (h - z)\rho_w g \\ &= (7.5\ \text{ft})\left(62.4\ \text{lb/ft}^3\right) \\ &= 468\ \text{lb/ft}^2\left(22,400\ \text{N/m}^2\right)\end{aligned}$$

The effective stress is then simply

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_{ve} &= \sigma_{vt} - P \\ &= 974\ \text{lb/ft}^2\ (46,600\ \text{N/m}^2)\end{aligned}$$

Equation 6.4 can also be written for changes in stress and pressure as

$$d\sigma_{vt} = dP + d\sigma_{ve} \tag{6.5}$$

Since the weight of aquifer matrix materials in a given column is approximately fixed, changes in total vertical stress $d\sigma_{vt}$ are due almost entirely to changes in the amount of water in the column as the water table moves up or down. Pore water pressure changes dP in a confined aquifer do not usually cause significant changes in the water table position, so it is reasonable to assume that $d\sigma_{vt} = 0$ during transient flow in a confined aquifer. With this assumption,

$$d\sigma_{ve} = -dP \qquad (d\sigma_{vt} = 0) \tag{6.6}$$

As the pore pressure falls, effective stress rises and vice versa. Recalling the definition of head,

$$h = \frac{P}{\rho_w g} + z \tag{6.7}$$

we can write an expression relating changes in pressure to changes in head at a fixed location:

$$dh = \frac{dP}{\rho_w g} \tag{6.8}$$

Combining Eqs. 6.6 and 6.8 gives the relationship between changes in head and changes in effective stress, assuming σ_{vt} is constant:

$$d\sigma_{ve} = -\rho_w g\, dh \qquad (d\sigma_{vt} = 0) \tag{6.9}$$

As head declines, effective stress increases and conversely, as h increases, σ_{ve} decreases. This is why when aquifers are pumped, the aquifer compresses and the ground subsides.

6.3 Atmospheric Pressure Fluctuations

Although we normally assume that atmospheric pressure is constant, it does fluctuate slightly with changing weather patterns. These changes induce changes in stresses, pore water pressures, and water levels in wells.

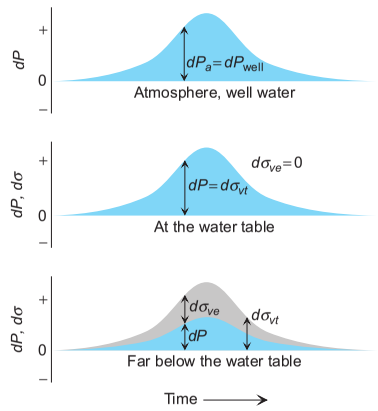


Figure 6.2 Changes in atmospheric pressure P_a and the absolute water pressure in a well P_{well} (top), changes in absolute pore water pressure P and vertical effective stress σ_{ve} at the water table (middle), and changes in absolute pore water pressure and vertical effective stress far below the water table (bottom).

Consider the changes in pressures and stresses induced by a rapid rise in atmospheric pressure (Figure 6.2). For this discussion, we will consider all water pressures as absolute pressures (measured from zero pressure) rather than gage pressures (measured relative to atmospheric pressure P_a). When atmospheric pressure rises by an amount dP_a, it causes an identical pressure increase in water that is in direct contact with the atmosphere. The rise in water pressure at the water table and in a well open to the atmosphere equals dP_a, as shown in the upper two diagrams of Figure 6.2:

$$dP_{\text{water table}} = dP_{\text{well}} = dP_a \tag{6.10}$$

Now examine the changes that occur in an aquifer below the water table. For static equilibrium, the change in atmospheric pressure must cause a corresponding change in total vertical stress,

$$d\sigma_{vt} = dP_a \tag{6.11}$$

Some of the increase in total vertical stress is borne by the pore water and some is borne by the matrix, as stated mathematically by Eq. 6.5 and shown graphically by the bottom diagram of Figure 6.2. In this case, the increase in pore water pressure in the aquifer is somewhat less than the pressure increase in the atmosphere or well:

$$dP_{\text{aquifer}} < dP_a = dP_{\text{well}} \qquad \text{(below the water table)} \tag{6.12}$$

Therefore, $dh_{\text{aquifer}} < dh_{\text{well}}$ and water flows from the well into the aquifer. So as atmospheric pressure rises, the water level in the well falls. Conversely, as atmospheric pressure falls, water flows into the well and its water level rises.

Wells that are screened near the water table have little barometric-induced water level fluctuations. Both the aquifer's pore water and the well water mimic atmospheric pressure changes, so $dP_{\text{well}} \approx dP_a$ and there is little induced flow to or from the well.

With increasing depth below the water table and increasing confinement, the hydraulic connection to the water table and atmospheric pressure becomes more tenuous. In deeper, confined aquifers the pore water pressure change is substantially less than the atmospheric pressure change. This difference is what induces flow in or out of a well, causing its water level to change.

The **barometric efficiency** (BE) is a measure of how isolated the aquifer or formation is from the water table:

$$BE = -\frac{\rho_w g dh}{dP_a} \tag{6.13}$$

where dh is the head (water level) change in the well during a change in atmospheric pressure (dP_a). For a well screened right at the water table, $BE \approx 0$. A well screened in a confined aquifer with almost no hydraulic connection to the water table will have $BE \approx 1$. All confining layers leak to some degree, so most wells in confined aquifers have $BE < 0.9$.

Figure 6.3 shows records of barometric pressure and the water level in a deep bedrock well as a large low-pressure storm passes. The inverse relationship between well water level and atmospheric pressure is clear. Before and after the storm passes, this well also shows cyclic fluctuations that result from earth tides. The gravity forces of the moon and sun deform the earth's crust in cycles similar to ocean tides; the earth's surface rises and falls as much as a few tens of centimeters as a result of these forces (J. Wahr, personal comm.). In crystalline rock with little porosity, this crustal deformation has a slight effect on pore water pressures and water will flow in and out of wells in response.

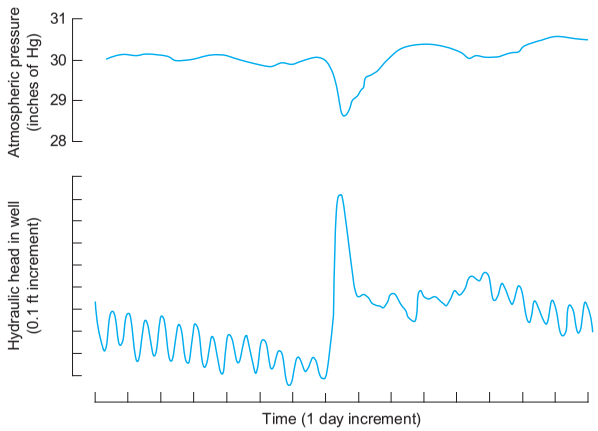


Figure 6.3 Records of atmospheric pressure and hydraulic head in a crystalline bedrock well in Georgia in March, 1993. A large low-pressure storm passes in the middle of the record. This well is open in the interval from 37 to 620 ft deep, and its barometric efficiency during this storm was 0.58. From Landmeyer, J. E. 1996, Aquifer response to record low barometric pressures in the southeastern United States, Ground Water, 34(5), 917–924. Reprinted from *Ground Water* with permission of the National Ground Water Association. Copyright 1996.

6.4 Excavation Instability and Liquefaction

When an excavation is dug, the removal of material causes an immediate decrease in the total vertical stress in the zone directly below the excavation, as shown in Figure 6.4. In this zone, the total horizontal stress does not change much due to the confining conditions that persist in the horizontal direction. The pore water pressures in this zone will begin to decrease due to the contact with atmospheric pressure at the excavation surface, but instability will result if the pore pressures still exceed the total vertical stress somewhere below the excavation floor. When the pore water pressure exceeds the total vertical stress (right side of Figure 6.4), there are unbalanced forces and in accord with Newton's laws, overlying materials accelerate upward. In clayey deposits, it is called heaving, and in sands or silts, it is called liquefaction.

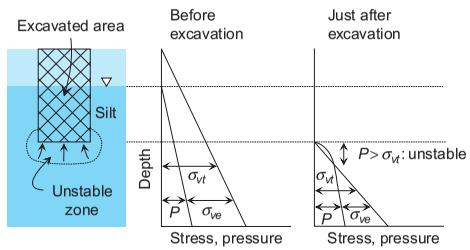
There is force balance and static equilibrium whenever pore pressure and stresses are related as follows:

$$P \leq \sigma_{vt}, \quad \sigma_{ve} \geq 0 \quad \text{(stable)} \tag{6.14}$$

Instability and acceleration occur whenever there is the following force imbalance:

$$P > \sigma_{vt}, \quad \sigma_{ve} = 0 \quad \text{(unstable)} \tag{6.15}$$

Figure 6.4 Vertical cross-section of silt to be excavated (left). Vertical distribution of pore pressures and vertical stresses before excavation begins (center), and immediately after excavation (right). The post-excavation profile is along the centerline of the excavation.



During heaving or liquefaction, the upward motion of the unstable materials quickly reduces pore water pressures, so that once again a vertical force balance is established and materials cease moving. Motion ceases in liquefied sands or silts once P is slightly less than σ_{vt} and σ_{ve} is small. Since friction in granular materials is proportional to effective stress, there is very little friction or strength in liquefied soils. Slopes and building foundations commonly fail when soils liquefy and lose strength.

Liquefaction can also occur when a loose sand or silt densifies during ground shaking caused by earthquakes or pile-driving, among other things. Shaking causes grains to rearrange and stresses to shift from grain-to-grain forces (σ_{ve}) to pore water pressures P. With enough shaking and a loose enough material, the effective stress can be reduced to near zero, and liquefaction results. After the shaking ends, water flows out of the high-P liquefied zone, causing P to decrease, and σ_{ve} to rise.

A fascinating video of earthquake liquefaction may found on the book website. It was filmed in Makuhari, Japan during the 2011 magnitude 9.0 earthquake. The film shows cracks opening and closing with the shaking, and episodic eruptions of water up the cracks from below. A loose layer at depth contracted during the shaking, experienced very high pore water pressures, and liquefied. Stiffer near-surface materials did not liquefy, but cracked due to weakness below. As seismic waves passed through the site, pore pressures cycled up and down causing sporadic water eruptions (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

"Quicksand" is sand near the ground surface that is in a liquefied state with very low effective stress. It is caused by high pore water pressures at shallow depth, usually where there is strong upward groundwater flow at a spring.

Heaving and liquefaction often occur at the bottom of a borehole during drilling. A hole advanced below the water table is just a miniature excavation,

and it can experience the same pattern of instability as illustrated in Figure 6.4. The way to avoid instability is to maintain a high fluid pressure in the borehole, high enough to keep the total stress higher than the pore pressure in the underlying materials. This is done by keeping the hole filled with water or drilling mud as drilling proceeds. "Keep a head on the hole" is good advice for maintaining a stable borehole.

6.5 Slope Instability

A slope becomes unstable only when the shear stresses exceed the shear strength along some surface that becomes the failure surface. Shear stresses occur any time that the total stresses in a material are anisotropic. Consider the cross-section of a slope shown in Figure 6.5. Assume that this slope is long in the direction normal to the page. The total stresses at a point are illustrated in the figure; σ_{1t} is the direction of greatest stress, σ_{3t} is the direction of least stress, and the intermediate principal stress σ_{2t} is normal to the page. These anisotropic stresses create shear stresses across a surface as shown.

Shear stresses at such a point increase with the steepness of the slope and with the weight of the materials that lie above the point. When a slope is steepened by excavating at its toe or by adding fill near its crest, shear stresses increase and so does the risk of slope failure. It is common for slope failures to occur during wet weather, because shear stresses increase with the increased weight of wetter slope materials.

Failure initiates when the shear stress exceeds shear strength at some point and the material begins to shear. The failure will propagate from the point of

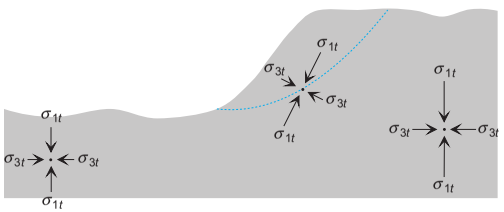


Figure 6.5 Anisotropic total stresses beneath a slope and below adjacent flat ground. Under the slope, the shear stresses may be large enough to exceed shear strength on a potential failure surface (dotted line). The magnitude of a stress is proportional to the length of the opposing arrows.

initial failure if the shear stresses beyond the margins of the growing failure surface also exceed shear strengths. A failure surface that grows progressively in this way can become large enough to cause large-scale slope failures. Some failure surfaces stop propagating and do not lead to failure.

A simple and widely used model of shear strength in earth materials is the Mohr–Coulomb failure criterion:

$$\tau_f = c + \sigma_{fe} \tan\phi \tag{6.16}$$

where τ_f is the shear strength (the shear stress at failure) along a failure plane, c is the cohesion of a material, σ_{fe} is the effective stress normal to the failure plane, and ϕ is the friction angle of the material. The effective stress σ_{fe} is the difference between total stress and pore pressure (see Eq. 6.4):

$$\sigma_{fe} = \sigma_{ft} - P \tag{6.17}$$

where σ_{ft} is the total stress normal to the failure plane and P is pore water pressure. Combining the two previous equations gives the Mohr–Coulomb failure criterion in terms of total stress and pore pressure:

$$\tau_f = c + (\sigma_{ft} - P) \tan\phi \tag{6.18}$$

It is clear from this equation that as P increases, the shear strength τ_f decreases.

Clayey soils have significant cohesion (shear strength in the absence of any effective stress), but granular materials like silts, sands, and gravels do not. The friction angle of granular materials is usually in the range $\phi = 30°$ to $45°$. Friction angle increases with increasing soil density and with increasingly angular particles.

The book website has several videos of slope failures. One shows a large slope failure along the banks of the Amazon in Manaus, Brazil. An excavation at the toe of the slope triggered a progressive failure in clay that lost strength dramatically as it failed ("sensitive clays" like this lose 90% or more of their shear strength when disturbed). Another video shows small slope failures in soft, fine sediment as a reservoir is rapidly drained when the Condit Dam (Washington state) was removed in 2011. The drawdown caused immediate reduction in total stresses on the sediment, but pore water pressures responded more slowly (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

6.5.1 Vaiont Reservoir Slide

In 1963, there was a tragic slope failure in the Italian Alps that is a clear example of the connection between pore water pressure, effective stress, and slope stability. The failure occurred on the slopes of the reservoir behind Vaiont Dam, sending about 240 million cubic meters of rock plunging into the reservoir (Kiersch, 1976). The 265 m high thin arch dam, the highest in the world at the time, amazingly survived the force of a great wall of water displaced by the slide. This wall of water overtopped the dam by about 100 m, and flooded the valley below, killing about 2600 people.

Figure 6.6 shows a map of the dam, reservoir, and slide area, with a typical cross-section through the slide, reservoir, and valley. The valley is underlain by a syncline consisting mostly of limestones with clay interbeds. The dip of the bedding under the slide area was roughly parallel to the slope of the ground. Before the dam was constructed in 1960, the water table surface was constrained to deeper levels by the deeply incised river valley.

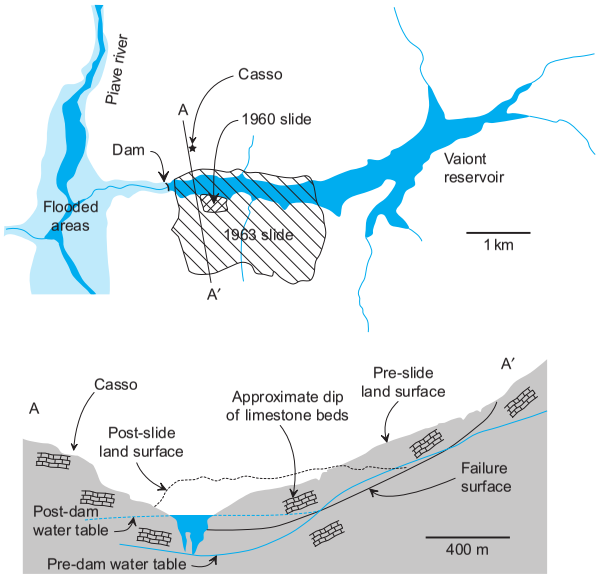


Figure 6.6 Map of the Vaiont reservoir slide and vicinity (top), and vertical cross-section A–A′ through slide (bottom). Modified from Kiersch (1976).

When the dam was constructed and the reservoir began to fill, the water table rose under the side slopes, as illustrated in Figure 6.6. This caused increased pore water pressures and decreased effective stresses and shear strengths under the slopes. In 1960, a smaller slope failure (about 10^6 m^3) occurred just upstream of the dam. After this failure, officials kept the reservoir level about 120 m below the crest of the dam to reduce the risk of additional slides. Despite this precaution, the area that later failed in 1963 continued to creep at rates of a few cm/day during 1960–1963 (Kiersch, 1976).

The large slide occurred in October 1963 after 12 days of heavy rains. The reservoir level had risen to within about 100 m of the crest just before the failure (Kiersch, 1976). The increased pore pressures and the added weight caused by the rains were what finally caused the failure to propagate rapidly. The failure occurred at night and if anyone witnessed it, they did not survive to tell their story. The nearest survivor was located in the Village of Casso, on the valley wall opposite the slide. He reported an air blast that took the roof off his home, followed by loud rumbling and flying rock debris (Kiersch, 1976). The failure must have moved very rapidly to create such a wave of compressed air ahead of itself.

6.6 Earthquakes and Groundwater Pressures

Earthquakes result from large-scale failures along surfaces in crustal rocks. They occur when the shear strength is exceeded by the shear stress, which is usually caused by large-scale tectonic forces that create differential total stresses ($\sigma_{1t} > \sigma_{3t}$). The Mohr–Coulomb failure criterion discussed in reference to slope failures (Eq. 6.18) applies equally well to earthquake failures. This equation shows that as pore water pressure increases, the shear strength of the rock decreases, increasing the chance of failure.

The study of thrust faulting led scientists to a better understanding of the key role of pore water pressures in earthquakes. Thrust faulting displaces huge slabs of crust horizontally over shallow-dipping fault surfaces. Most of the earth's largest earthquakes, including the magnitude 9.2 Alaska earthquake of 1964, occur on thrust faults in subduction zones. The thrusted sheets of crust are thin but hundreds of kilometers in areal extent. Thrust sheets remain largely intact despite being thrust a total of many kilometers by numerous earthquake displacements.

Thrust faulting seems mechanically impossible, yet is widespread in the geologic record. Hubbert and Rubey (1959) studied the mechanics of thrust

faulting and concluded that it is feasible only if pore water pressures along the failure plane are so high that the effective stresses and frictional resistance drop to very low values. Without these conditions, the forces needed to move the slab would exceed its strength and it could not remain intact and relatively undeformed. The necessary high fluid pressures do occur in subduction zones, the result of compaction and deformation in the wedge of sediments that is scraped off the descending plate (Ingebritsen and Sanford, 1998).

Another geologic setting prone to high fluid pressures and earthquakes is the region surrounding magma chambers. Several processes help generate high pore fluid pressures near magmas; pore fluids expand as their temperature rises, phase changes from liquid to gas cause expansion, and some chemical reactions generate more voluminous products than reactants.

Some human activities cause pore pressure changes over large regions, which can, in turn, trigger earthquakes. It is quite common for earthquakes to be triggered in the vicinity of a large reservoir soon after it fills for the first time (Gupta, 1992). As a reservoir fills, the water weight adds to the total stress field in the nearby rocks, which is borne by a combination of increased pore water pressure and increased effective stress. In addition, water flows from the reservoir into the underlying rocks, increasing pore water pressures. The increased pore water pressure and increased total stress can push shear stresses to the point of failure, generating an earthquake. The giant slide failure at Vaiont Dam (previous section) could be viewed as a minor, but catastrophic, earthquake triggered in this manner.

Usually these earthquakes are small, but occasionally significant ones result. Reservoir-induced earthquakes with magnitudes of 6 or more have occurred in China, Zambia/Zimbabwe, Greece, and India (Gupta, 1992). The largest and most damaging one was a magnitude 6.3 earthquake in 1967 near the Konya Dam in western India, occurring only a few years after the Konya reservoir was first filled (Gupta, 1992; Gupta et al., 2000). This earthquake damaged many structures and left 200 dead, 1500 injured, and thousands homeless. There have been many reservoir-induced earthquakes between magnitude 5 and 6, including ones at Hoover and Oroville Dams in the U.S., Aswan Dam in Egypt, and Eucumbene Dam in Australia.

In a now-famous case, over 1500 minor earthquakes were induced by deep injection of liquid wastes at the Rocky Mountain Arsenal near Denver, Colorado in the 1960s. Wastes were injected down a deep well into fractured Precambrian gneiss below the Denver basin at a depth of 3.7 km (Hsieh and Bredehoeft, 1981). Most of the earthquake epicenters were in an elongate zone 2×8 km in plan view, centered on the injection well. The foci were at

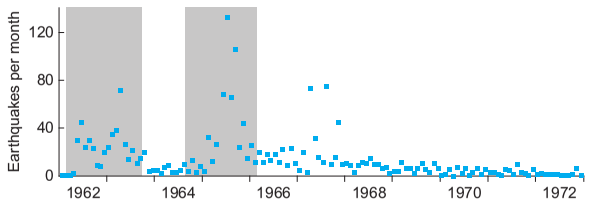


Figure 6.7 Time series of earthquakes at the Rocky Mountain Arsenal, showing correlation to two periods of deep waste injection (shaded). From Hsieh, P. A. and J. D. Bredehoeft, 1981, A reservoir analysis of the Denver earthquakes: A case of induced seismicity. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 86B, 903–920. Copyright (1981) American Geophysical Union. Modified with permission of American Geophysical Union.

depths ranging from 3 to 8 km. The largest of these earthquakes had Richter magnitudes between 3 and 5, but most were much smaller.

Figure 6.7 shows the correlation of injection and seismicity. Earthquakes were much more frequent during the two injection episodes, and declined dramatically after them. A higher, but declining rate of seismicity persisted for several years after injection ceased, probably due to slow dissipation of high pore pressures that had built up near the injection well.

Before, during, and after earthquakes, the local rocks experience strains and fracturing, which cause changes in the rock's permeability and changes in water levels and discharges. As shear stress levels build prior to an earthquake, rocks in the fault zone dilate, forming fractures perpendicular to the minimum stress direction. This dilation increases porosity and draws pore fluid into the zone. When an earthquake occurs, the opposite is true: shear stress drops, dilated fractures close, porosity declines, and pore fluid pressure increases. These changes drive groundwater flow outward from the fault zone. This process of slow pore fluid infilling followed by rapid expulsion of pore fluids with an earthquake is called *seismic pumping* (Muir-Wood, 1994; Sibson, 1994; Sibson et al., 1975).

The magnitude 7.1 Loma Prieta earthquake south of San Francisco in October 1989 induced well-documented hydrologic changes in nearby streams and wells (Rojstaczer and Wolf, 1992). The discharge of small streams located 10–40 km northwest of the epicenter jumped dramatically following the quake, as shown in Figure 6.8. The elevated stream discharges persisted for months. While stream discharges increased, the water levels in bedrock wells

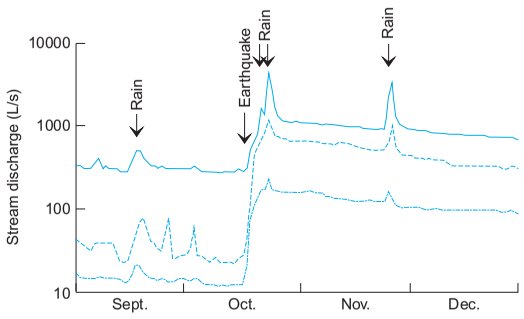


Figure 6.8 Hydrographs of three different streams near the October 1989 Loma Prieta earthquake south of San Francisco. From Rojstaczer, S. and S. Wolf, 1992, Permeability changes associated with large earthquakes: An example from Loma Prieta, California, *Geology*, 20(3), 211–214. Copyright (1992) The Geological Society of America, Inc.

in upland areas fell. Water levels in upland wells dropped anywhere from a few meters to 21 m (a well located on a ridge) within the first few weeks after the quake. Many of these wells went dry.

Rojstaczer and Wolf (1992) attribute these changes to rock permeability increases due to fracturing during the earthquake. The increased permeability increased the rate of groundwater discharge into streams. As groundwater flowed from the subsurface at a greater rate, heads in upland areas dropped. Within a year, the stream discharges had returned to pre-quake levels, as water levels and gradients stabilized at new, lower values under the new regime of higher permeability.

6.7 Matrix Compression

When the effective stress changes, earth materials will either expand or contract. An increase in effective stress increases the grain-to-grain forces in a granular material or the forces across fractures in a rock mass. This increased load on the solid matrix causes the matrix to compress. Some materials like crystalline rocks compress very little for a given increase in effective stress, but softer materials like some clays compress significantly. The converse is also true: a decrease in effective stress causes a material to expand.

Effective stress can change for many different reasons. These can be understood by examining the relation between total stress, effective stress, and pore water pressure (Eq. 6.4). Effective stress increases when water is pumped from an aquifer, because the pumping reduces the pore water pressure P. Withdrawals of oil and gas also reduce pore fluid pressures in the formation being pumped, and reduce P in nearby water-bearing zones. Effective stress increases if a heavy load like a footing or embankment is added, increasing the total stress σ_t. When a dry soil is wetted but not saturated, capillary forces cause pore water pressure to change from zero (dry state) to negative values (moist state), increasing the effective stress. This can cause compression of dry soils that are irrigated for the first time.

Some natural phenomena also cause effective stress changes. Drought will lower head and P, increasing σ_e, while wet weather will increase head and P, decreasing σ_e. Erosion of the landscape over geologic time will reduce both σ_t and σ_e.

Stresses, both effective and total, are properties that vary with direction. The stress at a point normal to one direction is not necessarily equal to the stress in a different direction at that point. In most unconsolidated materials, the horizontal effective stress is about half of the vertical effective stress. On the other hand, pore water pressure, and pressure in all liquids, is the same in all directions.

Traditionally, groundwater scientists have focused on stresses and compression in the vertical direction only, reasoning that changes in effective stress are fairly uniform over extensive areas and that most deformation is in the vertical direction. We will proceed here with the traditional vertical strain approach, even though some recent research calls these assumptions into doubt. Burbey (1999, 2001) analyzed radial flow to a pumping well and found that there is significant horizontal deformation in addition to vertical deformation.

Different geologic materials compress different amounts under similar changes in vertical effective stress. The **compressibility** α is a measure of one-dimensional (vertical) matrix stiffness; the smaller α is, the stiffer the medium is. Compressibility is defined as

$$\alpha = -\frac{db/b_0}{d\sigma_{ve}} \tag{6.19}$$

where b_0 is the initial vertical thickness, db is the change in vertical thickness, and $d\sigma_{ve}$ is the change in vertical effective stress. Compressibility here is defined in terms of vertical strain db/b_0, which for one-dimensional compression is equal to volume strain dV_t/V_{t0}, where V_{t0} is initial total volume.

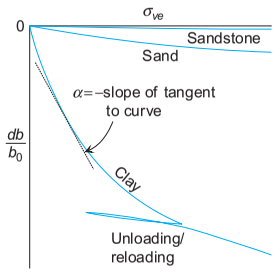


Figure 6.9 Compression curves showing vertical strain vs. effective stress for clay, sand, and sandstone. Compressibility is defined as the slope of a tangent to such curves. The clay is stiffer (smaller α) during swelling and recompression than it is during initial compression.

The total volume of aquifer equals the volume of voids plus the volume of solids, and volume changes are similarly related:

$$V_t = V_v + V_s, \quad dV_t = dV_v + dV_s \tag{6.20}$$

It is safe to assume that the mineral solids are incompressible ($dV_s \simeq 0$), so virtually all compression results from compression of void space ($dV_t \simeq dV_v$).

Since strain is dimensionless, the units of α are area/force, the inverse of stress units. Compressibility α can be thought of as minus the slope of the tangent to an effective stress vs. strain curve, as shown in Figure 6.9. Since earth materials are not linear elastic materials, the curves are not straight and α depends on the stress level. The compressibility also depends on the history of effective stress, as illustrated by the curve for clay in Figure 6.9.

This curve shows how the clay strains during loading (increasing σ_{ve}), unloading (decreasing σ_{ve}), and reloading. Clay is much stiffer during reloading than it is when being compressed for the first time. This behavior is hysteretic; it depends on the history of stress. The compression of clays is particularly hysteretic, stiffer during unloading and reloading than during "virgin" compression (compression at effective stresses higher than any prior effective stress).

Since compression is nonlinear and hysteretic, α is not a single-valued material constant. The value chosen for α should be consistent with the stress level and stress history of the situation being analyzed. Often the range of σ_{ve} experienced by aquifers and aquitards is quite limited, so assuming a constant α is a reasonable approximation for an analysis. Table 6.1 lists general ranges of α for different geologic materials. Compared to clays, granular soils and rocks tend to be stiffer and more linear and elastic in their compression.

Table 6.1 Typical Values of Compressibility α

Material	α (m^2/N)
Soft clay	3×10^{-7} to 2×10^{-6}
Stiff clay	7×10^{-8} to 3×10^{-7}
Loose sand	5×10^{-8} to 1×10^{-7}
Dense sand, gravel	5×10^{-9} to 2×10^{-8}
Fractured rock	3×10^{-10} to 7×10^{-9}
Sound rock	$< 3\times10^{-10}$

Source: Domenico and Mifflin (1965).

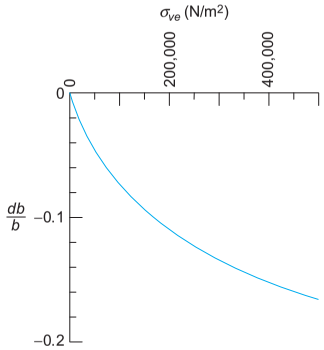


Figure 6.10 Compression curve for the clay in Example 6.2.

Example 6.2 A clay layer 7 m thick exists as a lens within a sand aquifer. The middle of the clay layer is 20 m below the ground surface. A piezometer installed in the middle of the clay layer has a water level 18 m above the piezometer tip (pressure head = 18 m). A compression curve showing virgin compression for this clay is shown in Figure 6.10. The average wet density of the sand and clay in the upper 20 m of the profile is 2200 kg/m^3. There are plans to pump the aquifer, which will draw heads down 12 m lower than their prepumping levels. Because there are utility lines and structures on the surface, people want to know how much the ground will settle due to compression of the clay lens.

First, calculate the effective stress in the middle of the clay layer both before and after the drawdown. Before the drawdown, effective

stress is

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_{ve} &= \sigma_{vt} - P \\ &= (\text{height})(\text{soil density})g - (h-z)\rho_w g \\ &= (20\text{ m})\left(2200\text{ kg/m}^3\right)\left(9.81\text{m/s}^2\right) \\ &\quad - (18\text{ m})\left(1000\text{ kg/m}^3\right)\left(9.81\text{m/s}^2\right) \\ &= 255,000\text{ N/m}^2\end{aligned}$$

After drawdown, the effective stress is

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_{ve} &= (20\text{ m})\left(2200\text{ kg/m}^3\right)\left(9.81\text{m/s}^2\right) \\ &\quad - (6\text{ m})\left(1000\text{ kg/m}^3\right)\left(9.81\text{m/s}^2\right) \\ &= 373,000\text{ N/m}^2\end{aligned}$$

From the curve of Figure 6.10, the amount of strain that occurs in the clay from an effective stress of 255,000 N/m^2 up to 373,000 N/m^2 is

$$\frac{db}{b_0} = -(0.15 - 0.125) = -0.025$$

The change in the layer thickness that occurs due to this amount of strain in the whole clay layer is

$$\begin{aligned}db &= -0.025 b_0 \\ &= -(0.025)(7\text{ m}) \\ &= -0.18\text{ m}\end{aligned}$$

Therefore the ground settles 0.18 m.

If the thickness of a compressing deposit varies dramatically over a short horizontal distance, there will be horizontal deformation as well as vertical compression. In some cases, the horizontal deformation leads to fissures at the ground surface. Several alluvial basins in southern Arizona have just this situation, as illustrated in Figure 6.11. The basins are normal fault block basins (grabens) that are typically a few tens of kilometers wide, with thousands of meters of unconsolidated sediments in the center tapering to none at the edges. Pumping from aquifers in the alluvial basin fill sediments has lowered groundwater levels and caused up to several meters of subsidence. Where the thickness

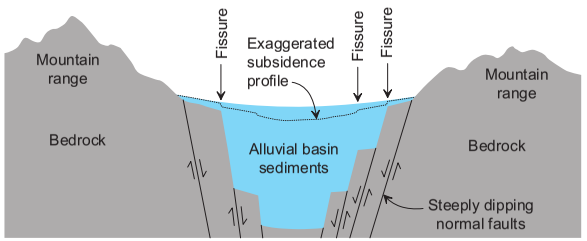


Figure 6.11 Vertical cross-section of a typical alluvial basin in Arizona. Pumping from aquifers in the alluvial sediment causes compression and subsidence. Greater subsidence occurs near the pumping wells and where sediments are thicker. Fissures develop where there are abrupt lateral changes in the amount of subsidence.

of compressing layers changes abruptly above steep normal faults, differential settlements and fissures have developed.

Photographs of these fissures are shown in Figure 6.12. The fissures in southern Arizona are as wide as 5–10 ft and as deep as 10–20 ft (Fellows, 1999). With time, the fissures tend to collect surface water drainage and fill with sediment and vegetation. The contrast between vegetated fissures and their dry, barren surroundings makes them prominent from the air, as shown in the upper photo of Figure 6.12.

6.7.1 Subsidence in the San Joaquin Valley

A classic case of widespread compression due to pumping is the San Joaquin Valley in central California. "Subsidence in the San Joaquin Valley probably represents one of the greatest single man-made alterations in the configuration of the Earth's surface in the history of man" (Ireland et al., 1984). The San Joaquin Valley is the southern end of the California Central Valley, a deep basin roughly 400 km long and 60 km wide that lies between the Coast Ranges and the Sierra Nevada mountains. A typical vertical cross-section of the valley is shown in Figure 6.13. The uppermost layers in the basin are compressible alluvial and lacustrine deposits that are as thick as 900 m in places. These unconsolidated deposits are underlain by marine sedimentary rock that fills the deeper part of the basin.

Between 1920 and 1980, extensive irrigation pumping from aquifers within the unconsolidated sediments lowered pore pressures dramatically. This caused increased vertical effective stresses, compression of sediments, and subsidence of the land surface over broad areas. The distribution of subsidence

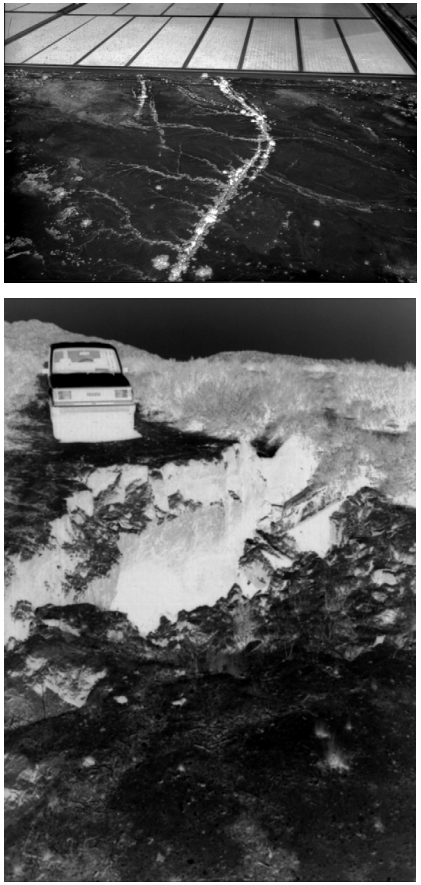


Figure 6.12 Upper photo: aerial view of a fissure in the Picacho Basin near Eloy, Arizona. The fissure stands out due to the vegetation in it. In the background are a road and cultivated fields. Photo copyright of Larry D. Fellows, Arizona Geological Survey; reprinted with permission. Lower photo: recent fissure cutting a dirt road in the Higley Basin near Phoenix, Arizona. Photo copyright of Raymond C. Harris, Arizona Geological Survey; reprinted with permission.

in a large, heavily pumped area on the west side of the valley is shown in Figure 6.14. Over an area of roughly 2000 km^2, the land subsided more than 2 m. At one place, the subsidence totaled about 9 m (29 ft), as shown in the photograph in Figure 6.15.

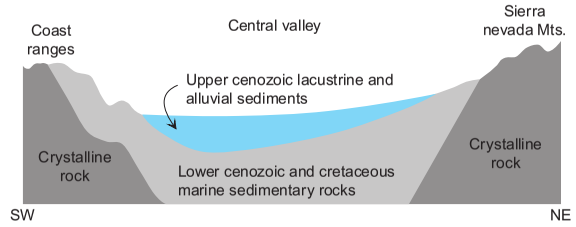


Figure 6.13 Schematic vertical cross-section through the San Joaquin Valley (Central Valley) in California. The cross-section runs from southwest to northeast.

This figure also shows the record of land subsidence vs. time at this location and records of water levels from nearby wells that were screened in the deep confined aquifer system. From this plot, the correlation between subsidence and decreasing water levels is apparent. In the late 1960s, the rate of pumpage decreased because surface water supplied by new aqueducts began to replace groundwater as an irrigation source. In the 1970s, heads in confined aquifers actually increased, and the rate of subsidence decreased. The increasing aquifer heads did not reverse the subsidence trend because the lower-conductivity clayey layers in the system were still in the process of draining and compressing, a time-dependent process known as consolidation, which is discussed in the next section. Most of the compression in this system occurs in the clayey aquitards, which are more compressible than the sandy aquifers (Ireland et al., 1984).

Measuring subsidence and compression accurately requires careful instrumentation. Satellite measurements and high-precision leveling surveys are used in these types of studies. Survey benchmarks in areas with compressible deposits usually consist of a rod or cable that is anchored at the bottom of a deep borehole. There is a casing that protects the rod or cable from frictional contact with the compressing deposit (Figure 6.16). As the layers between the anchor and the ground surface compress, the rod or cable rises at the ground surface.

Subsidence monitoring at one site where a benchmark was anchored at a depth of 578 ft shows a consistent relationship between the change in hydraulic head and vertical strain (Figure 6.17). The pattern of cycles is caused by the seasonal nature of irrigation withdrawals. In summer, irrigation reduces heads, increasing effective stresses and compressing the deposits. In winter, the heads rebound, effective stress is reduced, and the deposit swells. The deformation is not perfectly elastic; repeated compression–swelling cycles result in net compression of the deposit.

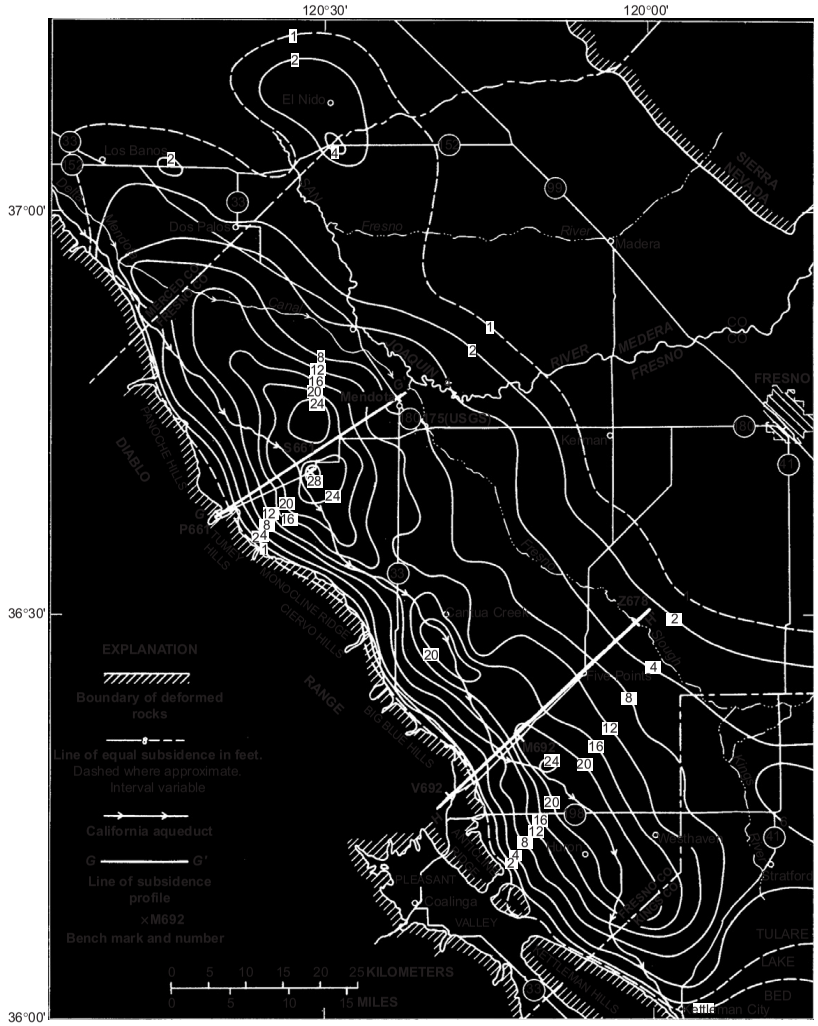


Figure 6.14 Subsidence of the land surface from 1926–1972 in the western San Joaquin Valley. Contours of subsidence in feet. From U.S. Geological Survey (Ireland et al., 1984).

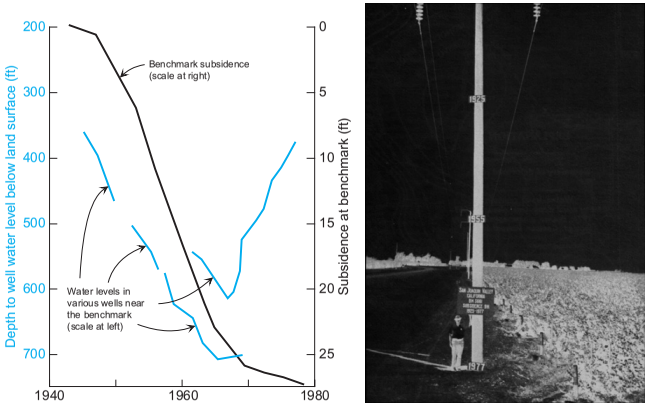


Figure 6.15 Subsidence of a benchmark southwest of Mendota, California (left). Also shown are the water level records from nearby wells screened in the confined aquifer (left). The photograph illustrates the former positions of the land surface on a telephone pole at this site. From U.S. Geological Survey (Ireland et al., 1984).

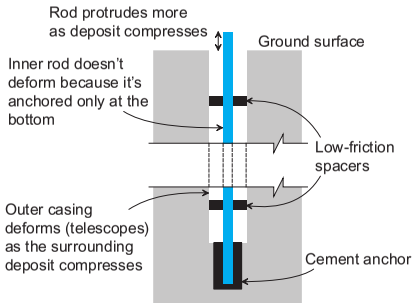


Figure 6.16 Schematic of a benchmark used to measure compression of a near-surface layer. The inner rod stays a constant length, while the outer casing and the surrounding deposits compress.

6.7.2 Consolidation: Time-Dependent Compression

Water must drain out of saturated deposits as they compress and into them as they swell. In sands and gravels, this flow of water is so rapid that compression or expansion happens almost instantly as stresses are changed. This is not true of low-conductivity deposits like silts and clays, however. In these, there is a significant time lag between changes in stress and the corresponding drainage or

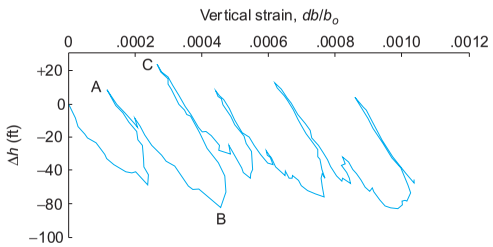


Figure 6.17 Record of the change in groundwater head at one location in the San Joaquin Valley and the corresponding vertical strain. Recorded in a benchmark that spanned the uppermost 578 ft of the deposit. A typical annual cycle is illustrated by the portion of the curve from A to C. A to B is during the irrigation season, and B to C is during the non-irrigation season. From U.S. Geological Survey (Ireland et al., 1984).

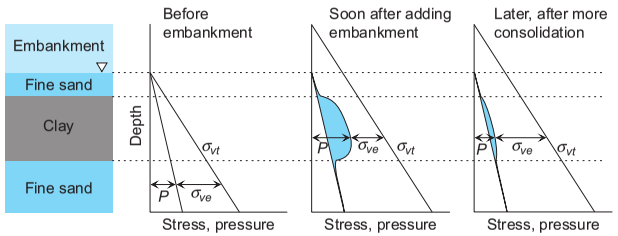


Figure 6.18 Stress and pore pressure changes in soils beneath a new embankment. Right after placing the embankment the added total stress is borne by an increase in pore pressure (shaded blue). With time, water is expelled from the pores, P decreases, and σ_{ve} increases as the added load is shifted from pore water pressure to the mineral matrix. This drainage and transfer of stress occurs faster in the sand than in the clay.

swelling. The time-dependent drainage that occurs in low-K deposits is called **consolidation**.

To illustrate how consolidation works, imagine a clay layer sandwiched between fine sand layers with a newly constructed, extensive highway embankment (Figure 6.18). The clay and fine sands are saturated before and after the embankment is added. Addition of the embankment adds to the total vertical stress, and the materials ultimately respond by compressing.

Initially, the increase in total stress is borne entirely by an increase in pore water pressure with no increase in effective stress and no compression. The increased pore water pressure causes gradients in hydraulic head that, in turn, drive water from the region of increased pore pressure. In this example, the water flows up into the unsaturated embankment and down to deeper zones less affected by the embankment load. As time proceeds, water flows out of the affected zones, pore pressures drop, effective stresses rise, and the deposits compress. During consolidation, the load (total stress) caused by the embankment is shifted from the pore water to the mineral skeleton.

Consolidation proceeds rapidly in the fine sand, but quite slowly in the clay layer. Since consolidation depends on the flow of pore water, low-conductivity materials like clays are much slower to consolidate than higher-conductivity materials like sands. Consolidation takes seconds or minutes for most rock, sands, and gravels, but it can take years in thick clay layers.

Terzaghi (1925) first developed a mathematical model of transient one-dimensional consolidation in a single compressing layer. Without going through his derivations, we can state his main conclusions. The time required for consolidation of a layer is inversely proportional to the hydraulic conductivity normal to the layer K_z and directly proportional to α and b^2 where b is the layer thickness (see Eq. 6.21). Since K_z varies over such an enormous range for unconsolidated materials, consolidation times vary enormously. The following equation gives the time required for a single layer of thickness b to complete a given percent of its consolidation and compression due to an abrupt change in stress:

$$t = \frac{F_t \rho_w g \alpha (b/2)^2}{K_z} \tag{6.21}$$

where t is the time since the stress change, F_t is a dimensionless time factor (see Figure 6.19), ρ_w is the density of water, g is gravitational acceleration, and α is the compressibility of the material (Lambe and Whitman, 1979). Equation 6.21 assumes that the layer is horizontal and extensive, that it drains to more conductive materials on both its upper and lower boundaries, and that consolidation and compression are one-dimensional in the vertical (z) direction. If the consolidating layer is bounded above or below by an impermeable layer and it only drains towards the other boundary, then use b in place of $b/2$ in Eq. 6.21.

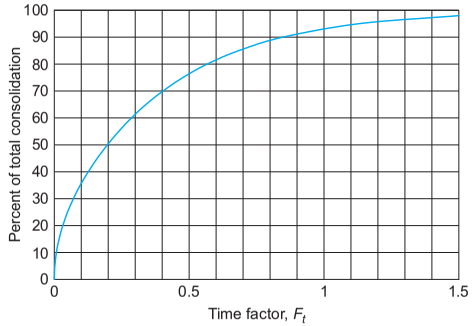


Figure 6.19 Time factor F_t vs. percent of total consolidation. The percent of total consolidation is equal to the average percent of consolidation in the entire layer, and is also equal to the percent of ultimate compression that will occur. For example, a layer that has achieved 75% total consolidation has compressed 75% of the total amount it would ultimately compress a long time after a change in stress.

Example 6.3 An 8 m thick saturated silt layer is underlain by massive shale bedrock with very low hydraulic conductivity, and overlain by a conductive coarse sand layer. The vertical hydraulic conductivity of the silt has been measured as $K_z = 10^{-7}$ m/s. The compressibility of the silt is estimated as $\alpha = 10^{-7}$ m^2/N. For construction of airport runways, this area is to be filled with an additional 10 m of sand fill, which has a total bulk density of about 2100 kg/m^3. Estimate the added total stress, the ultimate compression of the silt layer, and the times required for 50% and 90% consolidation of the silt layer.

The estimated increase in total stress will equal the incremental increase in stress due to the new fill:

$$\begin{aligned} d\sigma_{vt} &= (\text{thickness of fill})(\text{density of fill})g \\ &= (10\text{ m})\left(2100\text{ kg/m}^3\right)\left(9.81\text{ m/s}^2\right) \\ &= 206{,}010\text{ N/m}^2 \end{aligned}$$

When the silt fully consolidates, this change in total stress will be transferred to an equivalent change in effective stress $d\sigma_{ve} \simeq d\sigma_{vt}$.

The change in the thickness of the silt layer can be calculated with Eq. 6.19:

$$\begin{aligned} db &= -b_0 \alpha d\sigma_{ve} \\ &= -(8\text{ m})\left(10^{-7}\text{ m}^2/\text{N}\right)\left(206{,}010\text{ N/m}^2\right) \\ &= -0.16\text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

The thickness of the silt decreases by 0.16 m.

The time required for 50% consolidation (0.08 m of settlement) is estimated from Eq. 6.21, using b in place of $b/2$ because the silt drains to its upper boundary but not to its lower boundary. From Figure 6.19, the time factor at 50% consolidation is about $F_t \simeq 0.20$.

$$\begin{aligned} t_{50\%} &= \frac{F_t \rho_w g \alpha b^2}{K_z} \\ &= (0.20)\left(1000\text{ kg/m}^3\right)\left(9.81\text{ m/s}^2\right)\left(10^{-7}\text{ m}^2/\text{N}\right)(8\text{ m})^2 / \left(10^{-7}\text{ m/s}\right) \\ &= 125{,}000\text{ sec} \\ &= 35\text{ hours} \end{aligned}$$

The calculation for 90% consolidation is similar, but uses $F_t \simeq 0.85$, resulting in $t_{90\%} = 148$ hours (6.2 days).

6.7.3 Pore Water Pressures in Sedimentary Basins

Interesting large-scale consolidation processes occur in many sedimentary basins. A growing pile of sediment adds total stress to the underlying sediment layers, stress that is borne by a combination of increased pore water pressure and effective stress. When the sedimentation is rapid and the sediments have low hydraulic conductivity, long times are required for the consolidation process and there will be zones of elevated pore water pressure as a result. The situation is similar to the embankment loading shown in Figure 6.18, except on a much larger scale and with a much smaller loading rate.

Sediments in the Gulf of Mexico basin on the coasts of Texas and Louisiana have excess pore water pressure due to rapid sedimentation and incomplete consolidation. The current average sedimentation rate in this part of the basin is about 2.2 mm/year (Harrison and Summa, 1991). Vertical profiles of pore

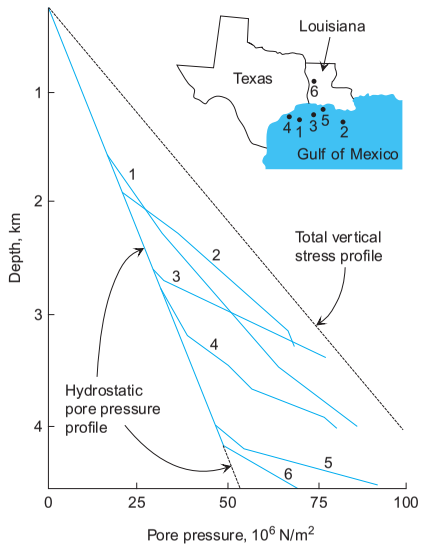


Figure 6.20 Profiles of pore water pressure vs. depth in six deep offshore wells in the Gulf of Mexico. Well locations are shown on the inset map. From Harrison and Summa, 1991, *Amer. Journal of Science*. Reprinted with permission of American Journal of Science.

water pressure at six deep wells in the basin are shown in Figure 6.20. In the upper few kilometers of the profile, the pore water pressure increases in a nearly hydrostatic manner, at a rate of about 10^7 N/m^2 per kilometer of depth (10^4 N/m^2 per meter of depth). The upper few kilometers are hydrostatic because the permeable, sandy sediments there drain quickly relative to the rate of sediment loading.

On the other hand, incomplete consolidation causes pore water pressures to be higher than hydrostatic in the deeper parts of the profiles shown in Figure 6.20. In these deeper sediments, drainage is slowed by low conductivity clay-rich sediments. Sediment loading causes increased total stress and elevated pore pressures, which in turn induces flow out of these layers. Because of their low conductivity, it takes a long time for water to drain and the elevated pore pressures persist.

In the oil and gas industry, such zones of elevated pore water pressure are known as *overpressured* or *geopressured* zones. Drilling into such zones can be hazardous if the pressures are high enough to blow the drilling fluid up and out of the borehole. In the deepest part of several wells shown in Figure 6.20, the pore water pressure is so high that it is only slightly below the total vertical stress. At these locations, there is only a small vertical effective stress (see Eq. 6.4).

Example 6.4 In April 2010, the Macondo well in the Gulf of Mexico blew out, killing 11 on board the Deepwater Horizon drilling rig and ultimately creating the largest oil spill in U.S. history. The well drilled into oil and gas in sand layers about 18,100 feet (5.52 km) below sea level. The estimated natural pore fluid pressure in these sands was about 11,850 psi (82×10^6 N/m^2) (BP, 2010). Examine where the pore pressure in the target sands would plot in Figure 6.20. Is this close to a hydrostatic condition or close to a liquefaction (zero effective stress) condition? Is this an unusual pore fluid pressure for the Gulf of Mexico? What is the minimum density for drilling mud that would balance the formation pore fluid pressure, assuming the mud was static and filled the drill pipe down to the sands?

This depth/pore pressure point is a bit off the bottom of the plot, but extrapolating the hydrostatic and total pressure lines puts this about midway between the two lines. Based on the other curves, this is not unusual for Gulf of Mexico sediments.

To balance the formation pressure with a hydrostatic column of drilling mud requires that the static pressure at least equal the formation pore pressure. Recall from Section 2.5.1 that static fluid pressure equals weight density times depth:

$$P = (\text{depth})\rho g$$

Solving this for the weight density gives

$$\rho g = \frac{P}{\text{depth}} = \frac{11,850 \text{ psi}}{18,000 \text{ ft}}\left(\frac{144 \text{ psf}}{\text{psi}}\right) = 94.3 \text{ lb/ft}^3 \ (14,800 \text{ N/m}^3)$$

At the time of the accident, the column of mud in the drill pipe was being partially replaced by sea water (weight density of about 64 lb/ft^3 (10050 N/m^3)), creating lower pressures in the drill pipe than in the sands. Seals near the bottom of the well were thought to be able to withstand the pressure difference, but they failed and allowed high-pressure oil and gas to flow into the drill pipe and up to the surface, causing the explosion.

Overpressured zones are common in thick sediments beneath active river deltas including those of the Nile (Egypt), Po (Italy), Niger (Africa), and Mackenzie (Canada). Overpressured zones are also common in large sedimentary basins such as the North Sea (Europe), Cook Inlet (Alaska), and Western Siberian (Russia) (Hunt, 1990).

6.8 Changes in Subsurface Water Storage

The chapters that follow this one focus on mathematical modeling of groundwater flow. An important aspect of transient groundwater flow modeling is groundwater storage, the subject of this section. The amount of water stored in the subsurface changes with changing effective stress and changing pore water pressure.

Consider a cube with fixed dimensions, entirely within the saturated zone. The aquifer matrix and the water are free to expand and contract, but the coordinates of the cube remain fixed in space; the corners of the cube are not anchored to the matrix. There are two ways to change the amount of water stored within the cube. First, since water is slightly compressible, water in the pore spaces could expand or contract with changes in water pressure. Second, the solid matrix could expand or contract, allowing more or less water to be stored within the cube. Both of these processes occur when the head and water pressure fluctuate during transient flow. In a confined aquifer, these two processes are the only means of changing the amount of water stored, and their combined effect is called **elastic storage**.

Instead of a completely saturated cube, consider a cube that straddles the water table and is part saturated and part unsaturated. In addition to water compression and matrix compression, there is a third way to change the amount of water stored within. This third way involves raising or lowering the boundary between the saturated and unsaturated zones within the volume. When heads decline, the upper part of the saturated zone drains and the water table and saturated/unsaturated boundary shift downwards. When heads rise, the lower part of the unsaturated zone is flooded and the water table and saturated/unsaturated boundary shift upwards. This type of storage is called **water table storage** or **phreatic storage**. In the next sections, we will examine storage concepts, starting with elastic storage and proceeding to phreatic storage.

6.8.1 Elastic Storage

The **specific storage** S_s is the basic storage property of saturated materials. In words, S_s is the amount of water expelled from a unit volume of saturated material when the pore water is subject to a unit decline in head. The mathematical equivalent of this word definition is

$$S_s = -\frac{dV_w}{V_t}\frac{1}{dh} \tag{6.22}$$

where dV_w is the volume of water expelled from aquifer volume V_t when the head changes by dh. The negative sign is there because S_s is a positive constant and when head declines, dh is negative and dV_w is positive. For a unit volume ($V_t = 1$) and a unit decline in head ($dh = -1$), $S_s = dV_w$, as the word definition above states.

When head declines, water is expelled from the volume because the pore water expands and the solid matrix compresses. This type of groundwater storage is called *elastic* storage because the water and matrix are typically assumed to compress and expand elastically (linear, reversible stress–strain).

The volume of water expelled from volume V_t due to water expansion can be written using Eqs. 2.1 and 6.8:

$$\begin{aligned} dV_{w(w)} &= -V_w \beta dP \\ &= -nV_t \beta \rho_w g dh \end{aligned} \tag{6.23}$$

where ρ_w is the density of the water, g is gravitational acceleration, n is porosity, and β is water compressibility, which was discussed in Section 2.2.1. Its value at 20°C is $\beta = 4.5 \times 10^{-10}$ m^2/N.

The volume of water expelled due to matrix compression is written as follows using Eqs. 6.9 and 6.19:

$$\begin{aligned} dV_{w(m)} &= \alpha V_t d\sigma_{ve} \\ &= -\alpha V_t \rho_w g dh \end{aligned} \tag{6.24}$$

Equations 6.23 and 6.24 together describe the total volume of water expelled from aquifer volume V_t during a change in head dh. Adding these two sources of water together gives the total volume of water expelled:

$$\begin{aligned} dV_w &= dV_{w(w)} + dV_{w(m)} \\ &= -nV_t \beta \rho_w g dh - \alpha V_t \rho_w g dh \end{aligned} \tag{6.25}$$

Dividing this last equation through by $-V_t dh$ gives S_s in terms of fundamental water and aquifer properties:

$$S_s = \rho_w g(n\beta + \alpha) \tag{6.26}$$

In Eq. 6.26, pore water expansion is represented in the term $n\beta$ and matrix compression is represented in the term α. Even for high-porosity aquifers, the $n\beta$ term is on the order of 10^{-10} m^2/N, which means that for most unconsolidated aquifers, $\alpha \gg n\beta$ and S_s can be approximated as

$$S_s \simeq \rho_w g\alpha \qquad (\text{if } \alpha \gg n\beta) \tag{6.27}$$

In stiffer rock aquifers, α is so small that the $n\beta$ term is significant and Eq. 6.26 must be used. The dimensions of S_s work out to [1/L], which can be proved by analyzing the dimensions of this equation. Dimensions of [1/L] are consistent with the word definition of S_s: volume of water expelled per volume of aquifer per decline in head.

For two-dimensional aquifer analyses, a more useful storage parameter is one that integrates storage over the height of the aquifer. This integrated property is called the **storativity** S, which for confined aquifers consisting of a single material is defined as

$$S = S_s b \tag{6.28}$$

where b is the vertical thickness of the aquifer. Consider a vertical column in a confined aquifer that has a unit cross-sectional area and spans the whole height b of the aquifer (see Figure 6.21). If the head in the aquifer declines by one unit, the volume of water expelled from the column is equal to S. In other words, S is the decrease in the volume of water stored per unit surface area of aquifer per unit decline in head. Storativity S is dimensionless, as the word definition implies: volume/area/length. It follows from Eqs. 6.28 and 6.22 that the volume of water removed from storage in an area A of aquifer subject to

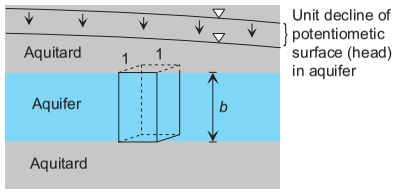


Figure 6.21 Storativity S in a confined aquifer is the volume of water expelled from a vertical prism of unit area per unit decline in head.

head change dh is

$$dV_w = -SAdh \tag{6.29}$$

Again, the negative sign is needed because a decline in head ($dh < 0$) results in a positive dV_w.

Typical values of S in confined aquifers range from 10^{-2} to 10^{-5}. Thick, compressible aquifers have high storativities and thin, stiff aquifers have low storativities. The volume of water that can be extracted from an aquifer is directly proportional to storativity.

Storativity or specific storage can be estimated by analyzing pumping tests (Section 8.4) and by measuring subsidence and compression of strata. In the latter method, you measure the compression of strata and corresponding head changes, then use Eq. 6.19 to estimate the aquifer compressibility α and Eq. 6.26 to estimate S_s. Pope and Burbey (2004) successfully used this approach along with data from benchmarks anchored in different strata to derive specific storage estimates for aquifers and aquitards in the Virginia coastal plain. Their research allowed estimation of the recoverable elastic compression and storage (unload/reload cycles as shown in Figure 6.9), and nonrecoverable ("virgin") plastic compression and storage. At this location, the recoverable specific storage was about 5×10^{-6} m^{-1} in both aquifers and aquitards, and the nonrecoverable specific storage ranged from 1.5×10^{-4} m^{-1} in the aquitards to 1.5×10^{-5} m^{-1} in the aquifers.

6.8.2 Water Table Storage

The storativity in an unconfined aquifer is called the **specific yield** S_y and is conceptually equivalent to storativity S in a confined aquifer:

$$S = S_y \quad (\text{unconfined aquifers}) \tag{6.30}$$

Unconfined aquifers have elastic storage just like confined aquifers do, but their elastic storage is usually insignificant compared to storage associated with drainage of water at the water table. When the head declines, so does the water table. As the water table falls, some water drains from the upper part of the saturated zone. Figure 6.22 illustrates the changes in the vertical profile of water content that accompany a decline in the water table. Consider a vertical column of unit cross-sectional area extending from the aquifer base to the top of the aquifer in the unsaturated zone. The specific yield S_y is defined as the decrease in the volume of water stored in the column per unit decline in

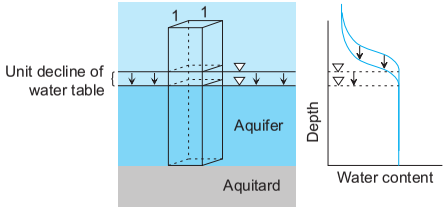


Figure 6.22 Specific yield in an unconfined aquifer is the volume of water drained from the vertical prism of unit area per unit decline in head. The plot on the right shows how the water content profile changes when the head declines by one unit and water drains from some pores near the water table.

head. Like S, S_y is dimensionless. The storage represented by S_y is called *water table* or *phreatic* storage.

An example will help illustrate the meaning of specific yield. Imagine a sand with porosity $n = 0.32$. In the saturated zone, the water content is $\theta = n = 0.32$. Assume that just above the saturated zone the unsaturated water content is $\theta = 0.08$, and that when the water table is lowered, gravity drainage causes the water content to drop to this value above the new position of the water table. In this case, $S_y = 0.32 - 0.08 = 0.24$. If the water table decline were 1 m, the volume of water that would drain from 1 m^2 of aquifer (in surface area) is 0.24 m^3.

In coarse-grained materials like clean sands, gravels, or sandstones, S_y is typically more than half of n. Specific yield will always be less than porosity, since not all water can drain from pore spaces; some is held by capillary forces to the mineral surfaces. The coarser the material is, the closer S_y approaches n. In permeable granular aquifers, S_y is typically in the range 0.10–0.30. In fine-grained materials, S_y is a small fraction of n, because strong capillary forces limit the amount of drainage. Johnson (1967) provides a comprehensive listing of S_y values measured in a variety of geologic materials; these are summarized in Table 6.2.

Specific yield in unconfined aquifers is usually much larger than the storativity in confined aquifers, so more water can be extracted from storage in a given area of an unconfined aquifer than from the same area of a confined aquifer. The volume of water removed from storage in an unconfined aquifer is given by

$$dV_w = -S_y A dh \tag{6.31}$$

which is identical to Eq. 6.29 for confined aquifers, but with S replaced by S_y.

Table 6.2 Typical Values of Specific Yield

Material	S_y
Clay	0.00–0.05
Silt	0.03–0.19
Fine sand	0.10–0.32
Medium sand	0.15–0.32
Coarse sand	0.20–0.35
Gravel	0.14–0.35

Source: Johnson (1967).

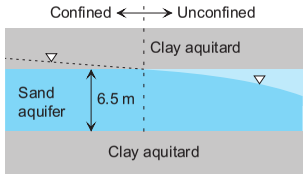


Figure 6.23 Sand aquifer that is confined where the head is above the aquifer top and unconfined elsewhere (Example 6.5).

For granular materials, specific yield can be estimated by measuring water contents in the saturated and unsaturated zones. If θ_u is the water content in the unsaturated zone just above the water table and n is the saturated water content (porosity) below the water table, then

$$S_y \approx n - \theta_u \tag{6.32}$$

For this approach, we assume that a uniform material spans the water table, and that the water table position has been stable long enough for complete gravity drainage above it. This same analysis can be applied to a laboratory specimen that is saturated and then allowed to drain under gravity drainage before measuring θ_u. Specific yield can also be estimated from the results of large-scale pumping tests, as discussed in Chapter 8.

The specific yield is actually a time-dependent parameter. Gravity drainage of pore water does not happen instantly and then cease. More water will drain as time progresses, but the drained water content will ultimately approach a steady value. The specific yield is usually intended to represent this ultimate level of drainage. Field or laboratory tests run over a short time span may result in S_y values that are smaller than what would result from a longer-term test.

Example 6.5 Consider the storage properties of a sand aquifer that is part confined and part unconfined, as shown in Figure 6.23. The sand has porosity $n = 0.30$ and compressibility $\alpha = 10^{-8}$ m^2/N. Assume the

water compressibility is $\beta = 4.5 \times 10^{-10}$ m^2/N. The typical water content of the sand in the unsaturated zone is $\theta_u = 0.12$. Calculate both S and S_y for the sand aquifer. Estimate how much water would be removed from storage in a 1 km^2 area of confined aquifer if the head is lowered by 0.5 m. Do the same for a 1 km^2 area of unconfined aquifer.

First, do the confined aquifer calculations:

$$\begin{aligned} S &= S_s b \\ &= \rho_w g(n\beta + \alpha)b \\ &= \left(9810\ \text{N/m}^3\right)\left((0.3)\left(4.5 \times 10^{-10}\right) + 10^{-8}\ \text{m}^2/\text{N}\right)(6.5\ \text{m}) \\ &= 6.5 \times 10^{-4} \end{aligned}$$

The volume of water removed from storage over 1 km^2 with a 0.5 head decline is

$$\begin{aligned} dV_w &= -SAdh \\ &= -\left(6.5 \times 10^{-4}\right)\left(1\ \text{km}^2\right)(-0.5\ \text{m})\left(\frac{1000\ \text{m}}{\text{km}}\right)^2 \\ &= 325\ \text{m}^3 \end{aligned}$$

An estimate of the specific yield is just the difference between the saturated and unsaturated water contents:

$$\begin{aligned} S_y &\simeq n - \theta_u \\ &= 0.18 \end{aligned}$$

The volume of water removed from storage in the unconfined aquifer is

$$\begin{aligned} dV_w &= -S_y A dh \\ &= -(0.18)\left(1\ \text{km}^2\right)(-0.5\ \text{m})\left(\frac{1000\ \text{m}}{\text{km}}\right)^2 \\ &= 90{,}000\ \text{m}^3 \end{aligned}$$

The storativity of the unconfined part of the aquifer is about 280 times greater than the storativity of the confined part, so the amount of water that can be removed in the unconfined part exceeds what can be removed in the confined part by the same ratio.

6.8.3 Storage in Aquifers with Fresh–Salt Interfaces

Fresh–salt interfaces exist in coastal aquifers that may be unconfined (e.g., Figure 3.26) or confined. Where an interface is present, the interface has a huge impact on storage. As fresh water heads drop, the interface shifts upward and salt water replaces fresh water, removing fresh water from storage.

An unconfined interface aquifer has a dynamic upper boundary (the water table), and a dynamic lower boundary (the fresh–salt interface). For two-dimensional flow models that neglect the vertical resistance to flow in the fresh water as well as in the salt water, the storativity parameter is given as

$$S = S_y + n_e \frac{\rho_f}{\rho_s - \rho_f} \qquad \text{(unconfined interface aquifers)} \tag{6.33}$$

where n_e is effective porosity, ρ_f is the fresh water density, and ρ_s is the salt water density. For typical fresh and salt water densities, $\rho_f/(\rho_s - \rho_f) \approx 40$, so the second term on the right side of Eq. 6.33 dwarfs the first and

$$S \approx n_e \frac{\rho_f}{\rho_s - \rho_f} \tag{6.34}$$

In a confined aquifer with an interface, there is elastic storage and storage contributed by interface motion. The interface storage is many orders of magnitude greater than elastic storage, and the storativity parameter is also given by Eq. 6.34.

When a coastal interface aquifer responds to changing heads, the three possible types of storage respond at much different rates. Elastic storage response is rapid, water table storage response is slower, and interface storage response is the slowest. These varied response rates are due to differences in the amount of water that must flow in order to adjust to the changing head. For interface movement, large volumes of both fresh and salt water must move as heads change. Such movements can't be instant and are limited by the hydraulic conductivity of the aquifer. The more movement is required, the more delayed the response is. For example, when a well is turned on in an unconfined interface aquifer, the elastic storage changes happen almost instantly, the water table changes occur slowly, and the interface movements are slower still. For short-term transient flow problems, these differences must be taken into account. For more detailed coverage of interface storage and modeling, see Bear (1999).

6.9 General Flow Equations

The first step in developing a mathematical model of almost any system is to formulate what are known as general equations. **General equations** are differential equations that derive from the physical principles governing the process that is to be modeled. In the case of subsurface flow, the relevant physical principles are Darcy's law and mass balance.

By combining the mathematical relations describing these principles, it is possible to come up with a general groundwater flow equation, which is a partial differential equation (see Appendix B for an introduction to these). If a mathematical model obeys the general equation, it is consistent with Darcy's law and mass balance. For anyone using or developing models, it is helpful to understand the general equation and how it relates to the underlying physical principles.

There are several different forms of the general flow equation depending on whether the flow is saturated or unsaturated, two-dimensional or three-dimensional, isotropic or anisotropic, and transient or steady state. The most common forms of the general flow equation are explored in the next sections.

6.9.1 Three-Dimensional Saturated Flow

To minimize intimidating, long equations and to make the derivations as understandable as possible, a simple approach is adopted in this section. First, the general equation is developed for the simple one-dimensional case, and then the results are extended to the three-dimensional case.

In a typical mass balance analysis, the net flux of mass through the boundary of an element is equated to the rate of change of mass within the element. We will consider the mass balance for a small rectangular element within the saturated zone, as shown in Figure 6.24. The dimensions of the element are fixed in space, regardless of compression or dilation of the aquifer matrix. For example, if the aquifer compresses, more aquifer solids will be squeezed into the element and some water will be squeezed out of it. To make the derivation of the flow equations as clear as possible, we will assume that the macroscopic flow in the vicinity of this element is one-dimensional in the x direction: $q_x \neq 0,\ q_y = q_z = 0$.

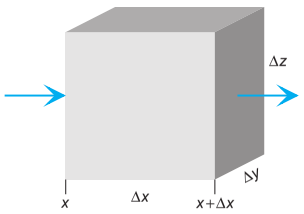


Figure 6.24 Element within the saturated zone with dimensions $\Delta x \times \Delta y \times \Delta z$.

The mass flux (mass/time) of water in through the left side of the element is

$$\rho_w(x) q_x(x) \Delta y \Delta z \tag{6.35}$$

where $\rho_w(x)$ is the water density at coordinate x and $q_x(x)$ is the specific discharge at coordinate x. The corresponding flux out through the right side of the element is

$$\rho_w(x+\Delta x) q_x(x+\Delta x) \Delta y \Delta z \tag{6.36}$$

When these two fluxes are identical, the flow is steady state.

When they differ, the flow is transient and there must be a change in the mass of water stored in the element. According to the definition of specific storage S_s (Eq. 6.22), the change in the volume of water stored in an element of volume V_t when the head changes an amount dh is

$$dV_w = S_s dh V_t \tag{6.37}$$

For the element illustrated in Figure 6.24 and a time interval ∂t, this becomes

$$\frac{\partial V_w}{\partial t} = S_s \frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \Delta x \Delta y \Delta z \tag{6.38}$$

The rate of change in the mass of water stored in the element is therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial m}{\partial t} &= \rho_w \frac{\partial V_w}{\partial t} \\ &= \rho_w S_s \frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \Delta x \Delta y \Delta z \end{aligned} \tag{6.39}$$

The rate $\partial h/\partial t$ is expressed as a partial derivative because in this case, h is a function of two variables, x and t.

Equations 6.35, 6.36, and 6.39 describe all the mass fluxes [M/T] into the element. For mass balance or continuity, the mass flux into the element minus the mass flux out equals the rate of change of mass stored within the element:

$$\rho_w(x) q_x(x) \Delta y \Delta z - \rho_w(x+\Delta x) q_x(x+\Delta x) \Delta y \Delta z = \rho_w S_s \frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \Delta x \Delta y \Delta z \tag{6.40}$$

Dividing by $\Delta x \Delta y \Delta z$ and rearranging gives

$$-\left[\frac{\rho_w(x+\Delta x)q_x(x+\Delta x)-\rho_w(x)q_x(x)}{\Delta x}\right]=\rho_w S_s\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.41}$$

Recalling some differential calculus, the left-hand side is a derivative in the limit as Δx shrinks to zero:

$$-\frac{\partial(\rho_w q_x)}{\partial x}=\rho_w S_s\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.42}$$

Expanding the derivative on the left side of the above equation, it becomes

$$-\rho_w\frac{\partial q_x}{\partial x}-q_x\frac{\partial \rho_w}{\partial x}=\rho_w S_s\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.43}$$

The second term in the above equation is generally orders of magnitude smaller than the first one:

$$\rho_w\frac{\partial q_x}{\partial x}\gg q_x\frac{\partial \rho_w}{\partial x} \tag{6.44}$$

Neglecting the second term in Eq. 6.43, the continuity condition can be simplified to

$$-\frac{\partial q_x}{\partial x}=S_s\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.45}$$

In most situations, Eq. 6.44 is true and the above equation governs, but more rigorous theories may be needed for flow in special circumstances. Derivations of more rigorous general flow equations are given by Freeze and Cherry (1979), Verruijt (1969), and Gambolati (1973, 1974); these account for the velocity of the deforming matrix in very low conductivity materials and fluid density variations.

Substituting the definition of q_x given by Darcy's law (Eq. 3.5) into Eq. 6.45 gives the one-dimensional general equation for saturated groundwater flow:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(K_x\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)=S_s\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.46}$$

If the preceding analysis were carried out without the restriction of one-dimensional flow, there would be additional flux terms for the y and z directions that are similar to the flux term for the x direction. For three-dimensional flow, the general equation is

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(K_x\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)+\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(K_y\frac{\partial h}{\partial y}\right)+\frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(K_z\frac{\partial h}{\partial z}\right)=S_s\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.47}$$

A mathematical model of head ($h(x,y,z,t)=\ldots$) must obey this partial differential equation if it is to be consistent with Darcy's law and mass balance.

Equation 6.47 is the most universal form of the saturated flow equation, allowing flow in all three directions, transient flow ($\partial h/\partial t \neq 0$), heterogeneous conductivities (for example, $K_x = f(x)$), and anisotropic hydraulic conductivity ($K_x \neq K_y \neq K_z$).

Other, less general, forms of the flow equation can be derived from Eq. 6.47 by making various simplifying assumptions. If the hydraulic conductivities are assumed to be homogeneous (independent of x, y, and z), the general equation can be written as

$$K_x\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2}+K_y\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2}+K_z\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2}=S_s\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.48}$$

This simplifies further when K is assumed to be both homogeneous and isotropic ($K_x = K_y = K_z = K$):

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2}+\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2}+\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2}=\nabla^2 h=\frac{S_s}{K}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.49}$$

The symbol ∇^2 is called the Laplacian operator, and it is shorthand for the sum of the second derivatives,

$$\nabla^2(\,)=\frac{\partial^2(\,)}{\partial x^2}+\frac{\partial^2(\,)}{\partial y^2}+\frac{\partial^2(\,)}{\partial z^2} \tag{6.50}$$

So far, all forms of the general flow equation presented here have included a term for storage changes involved with transient flow. If instead the flow is steady state, $\partial h/\partial t = 0$ and the right-hand side of any of the previous equations becomes zero. For example, the general equation for steady flow with homogeneous, isotropic K is

$$\nabla^2 h = 0 \tag{6.51}$$

This is a common partial differential equation known as the Laplace equation. It is well-studied, having numerous applications in fluid flow, heat conduction, electrostatics, and elasticity. It is named after French astronomer and mathematician Pierre de Laplace (1749–1827). There exist hundreds of known solutions to the Laplace equation, many of which apply directly to common groundwater flow conditions.

Any of the flow equations presented here can be reduced from three dimensions to two or one by dropping the y and/or z terms from the equation. Dropping the z dimension, for example, implies that the z-direction term in the general equation equals zero:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(K_z \frac{\partial h}{\partial z}\right) = 0 \tag{6.52}$$

This would be the case if $q_z = 0$, or even if $\partial h/\partial z = 0$.

6.9.2 Two-Dimensional Saturated Flow in Aquifers

Flow in aquifers is often modeled as two-dimensional in the horizontal plane. This can be done because most aquifers have an aspect ratio like a thin pancake, with horizontal dimensions that are hundreds or thousands of times greater than their vertical thickness.

In most aquifers, the bulk of the resistance encountered along a typical flow path is resistance to horizontal flow. When this is the case, the real three-dimensional flow system can be modeled in a reasonable way using a two-dimensional analysis. This is accomplished by assuming that h varies with x and y, but not with z, reducing the spatial dimensions of the mathematical problem to a horizontal plane. This simplifying assumption for modeling aquifer flow as horizontal two-dimensional flow is called the **Dupuit–Forchheimer approximation**, named after the French and German hydrologists who proposed and embellished the theory (Dupuit, 1863; Forchheimer, 1886).

Dupuit and Forchheimer proposed the approximation for flow in unconfined aquifers, but the concept is equally applicable to confined aquifers with small amounts of vertical flow. They understood their approximation to mean that vertical flow was ignored. Kirkham (1967) later clarified the concept, pointing out that there may be vertical flow in Dupuit–Forchheimer models, but that resistance to vertical flow is neglected.

To picture what a Dupuit–Forchheimer model represents in a physical sense, imagine an aquifer perforated by numerous tiny vertical lines that possess infinite hydraulic conductivity. The vertical lines eliminate the resistance to vertical flow, but the resistance to horizontal flow remains the same. In models using this approximation, the head distribution on any vertical line is hydrostatic ($\partial h/\partial z = 0$). Figure 6.25 illustrates the differences between actual three-dimensional flow and flow modeled with the Dupuit–Forchheimer approximation.

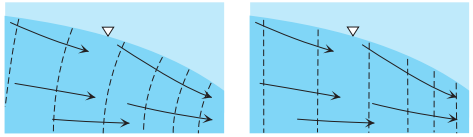


Figure 6.25 Vertical cross-section of actual unconfined flow (left) and the same situation as modeled with the Dupuit–Forchheimer approximation (right). Hydraulic head contours are shown with dashed lines. In the Dupuit–Forchheimer model, there is no resistance to vertical flow, which results in constant head along vertical lines ($\partial h/\partial z = 0$).

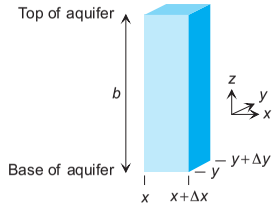


Figure 6.26 Prismatic element of a two-dimensional aquifer.

The general equations for two-dimensional aquifer flow will be derived in a manner similar to that used in the previous section on the three-dimensional flow equations. First, equations will be derived for one-dimensional aquifer flow in the x direction, then they will be extended to two-dimensional flow in the x,y plane. In this derivation, we perform a volume balance instead of a mass balance, which is equivalent to assuming that Eq. 6.44 holds.

Consider an elementary volume that is a vertical prism of cross-section $\Delta x \times \Delta y$, extending the full saturated thickness of the aquifer (b), as sketched in Figure 6.26. First consider the discharge (volume/time) flowing through the face that is normal to the x axis at the left side of the prism. Using Darcy's law the flow (volume/time) into the prism at coordinate x is

$$-K_x(x)b(x)\Delta y \frac{\partial h}{\partial x}(x) \tag{6.53}$$

where $K_x(x)$ is the x-direction hydraulic conductivity at coordinate x, $b(x)$ is the saturated thickness at x, and $\partial h/\partial x(x)$ is the x-direction component of the hydraulic gradient at x.

For a uniform, single-layer aquifer, transmissivity is defined as $T = Kb$, so the above expression can be simplified to

$$-T_x(x)\Delta y \frac{\partial h}{\partial x}(x) \tag{6.54}$$

where $T_x(x)$ is the x-direction transmissivity. Equation 6.54 applies regardless of whether the aquifer consists of a single layer as in Eq. 6.53 or has some more complicated distribution of transmissivity such as multiple layers with varying K_x. The flow out of the right side of the prism at coordinate $x+\Delta x$ is similarly defined as

$$-T_x(x+\Delta x)\Delta y\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}(x+\Delta x) \tag{6.55}$$

The net volume flux (volume/time) into the element through the top and bottom of the prism is given as

$$N\Delta x\Delta y \tag{6.56}$$

where N is the net specific discharge coming in the top and bottom. The dimensions of N are volume/time/area [L/T].

The time rate of change in the volume of water stored in the element (volume/time) is

$$S\frac{\partial h}{\partial t}\Delta x\Delta y \tag{6.57}$$

Balancing the volume fluxes given by the previous four expressions results in

$$-\left[T_x(x)\,\Delta y\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}(x)\right]+\left[T_x(x+\Delta x)\,\Delta y\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}(x+\Delta x)\right]+N\Delta x\Delta y=S\frac{\partial h}{\partial t}\Delta x\Delta y \tag{6.58}$$

Dividing by $\Delta x\Delta y$ and then writing the limit for Δx approaching zero gives

$$\lim_{\Delta x\to 0}\left[\frac{T_x(x+\Delta x)\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}(x+\Delta x)-T_x(x)\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}(x)}{\Delta x}\right]+N=S\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.59}$$

The first term should look familiar; it is a derivative. Therefore, this equation can be written much more compactly as

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(T_x\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)+N=S\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.60}$$

This is the general equation for one-dimensional aquifer flow. It is founded on Darcy's law (Eqs. 6.54 and 6.55) and conservation of mass (Eq. 6.58).

If we extend the derivation that led to Eq. 6.60 to two dimensions, x and y, the result is

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(T_x\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)+\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(T_y\frac{\partial h}{\partial y}\right)+N=S\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.61}$$

Equation 6.61 is the general equation for two-dimensional aquifer flow, allowing for anisotropy and spatial variations in T.

A simpler, commonly used form of Eq. 6.61 results from the assumption that transmissivity is isotropic and homogeneous ($T_x=T_y=T$ = constant):

$$T\left[\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2}+\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2}\right]+N=S\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.62}$$

This equation can be written more compactly by dividing by T and using the symbol for the Laplacian operator (Eq. 6.50):

$$\nabla^2 h+\frac{N}{T}=\frac{S}{T}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.63}$$

If there is zero net recharge or leakage ($N=0$), then this becomes

$$\nabla^2 h=\frac{S}{T}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.64}$$

Another permutation of Eq. 6.63 is for steady-state flow ($\partial h/\partial t=0$):

$$\nabla^2 h=-\frac{N}{T} \tag{6.65}$$

Equation 6.65 is known in physics and engineering as the Poisson equation, named after the French mathematician Denis Poisson (1781–1840). If flow is steady and there is zero net recharge/leakage ($N=0$), Eq. 6.65 reduces to the Laplace equation:

$$\nabla^2 h=0 \tag{6.66}$$

Flow in an isotropic, homogeneous, unconfined aquifer with a horizontal impermeable base is a special case of aquifer flow that is often analyzed. Figure 6.27 shows this situation. If we measure hydraulic head from the base

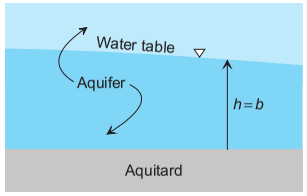


Figure 6.27 An unconfined aquifer with a horizontal impermeable base.

of the aquifer, then $h = b$ and $T = Kh$. Using this definition of transmissivity in Eq. 6.61 results in

$$K\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(h\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)+\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(h\frac{\partial h}{\partial y}\right)\right]+N=S\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.67}$$

where K is assumed to be isotropic and homogeneous.

This is a nonlinear partial differential equation because the terms in parentheses involve h multiplied by its derivative. Nonlinear equations are much more difficult to solve than linear ones. The nonlinear equation can be avoided if it is written in terms of the variable h^2 instead of h. This is done by substituting the following two relations,

$$h\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}=\frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(h^2\right) \tag{6.68}$$

and

$$h\frac{\partial h}{\partial y}=\frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(h^2\right) \tag{6.69}$$

into Eq. 6.67, resulting in a differential equation in terms of h^2:

$$\frac{K}{2}\left[\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}\left(h^2\right)+\frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2}\left(h^2\right)\right]+N=S\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.70}$$

Dividing by $K/2$, this reduces to

$$\nabla^2\left(h^2\right)+\frac{2N}{K}=\frac{2S}{K}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{6.71}$$

For steady flow this becomes the linear Poisson equation,

$$\nabla^2\left(h^2\right)=-\frac{2N}{K} \tag{6.72}$$

If flow is steady and there is zero net infiltration/leakage ($N = 0$) the general equation is the linear Laplace equation,

$$\nabla^2\left(h^2\right)=0 \tag{6.73}$$

Recall that h must be measured from the horizontal aquifer base for Eqs. 6.67–6.73 to be valid.

Some useful and relatively simple solutions to Eqs. 6.64, 6.65, 6.66, 6.72, and 6.73 are discussed in the next two chapters. These solutions are often used in hand calculations and are implemented in many computer programs.

6.9.3 Three-Dimensional Unsaturated Flow

The general three-dimensional unsaturated flow equation is similar to the general saturated flow equation, except that the transient storage term is different. In unsaturated flow, changes in the water content θ occur in addition to pore water expansion and matrix compression. In fact, water content changes yield much more water than elastic storage changes, which are neglected.

In unsaturated flow, the storage mass flux due to water content changes in an element like that pictured in Figure 6.24 is

$$\rho_w\frac{\partial\theta}{\partial t}\Delta x\Delta y\Delta z \tag{6.74}$$

This expression is the analog of Eq. 6.39, which applies to saturated flow.

Following a derivation similar to that presented for saturated flow, the resulting general unsaturated flow equation is

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(K_x\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)+\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(K_y\frac{\partial h}{\partial y}\right)+\frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(K_z\frac{\partial h}{\partial z}\right)=\frac{\partial\theta}{\partial t} \tag{6.75}$$

Since K and θ are functions of pore water pressure (P), the unsaturated flow equation is often written as a function of pressure, making use of the definition of head $h = P/(\rho_w g) + z$:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(K_x(P)\frac{\partial\left(\frac{P}{\rho_w g}\right)}{\partial x}\right)+\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(K_y(P)\frac{\partial\left(\frac{P}{\rho_w g}\right)}{\partial y}\right)+\frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(K_z(P)\left[\frac{\partial\left(\frac{P}{\rho_w g}\right)}{\partial z}+1\right]\right)$$
$$=\frac{\partial\theta}{\partial P}\frac{\partial P}{\partial t} \tag{6.76}$$

This equation is known as the Richards equation (Richards, 1931).

Mathematical models of unsaturated flow require models of the $K(P)$ and $\theta(P)$ relationships, and are substantially more complicated than saturated flow models. This text does not delve further into modeling of unsaturated flow, but Guymon (1994) and Tindall et al. (1999) provide more detail in this area.

6.10 Overview of Mathematical Modeling

Models of groundwater flow are widely used for a variety of purposes ranging from water supply studies to designing contaminant remediation systems. There are dozens of computer programs available to do the computations involved with these models. These programs are not always necessary; a clever

scientist can often solve the essence of a problem with a hand calculation or a simple computer-assisted analysis.

Regardless of the method used, mathematical modeling of flow involves the following general steps.

1. Review all the available data about the material properties, heads, and discharges in the vicinity of the region to be modeled.
2. Develop a conceptual system that is simpler than the real flow system, but which captures the important overall features of the real system.
3. Simulate the conceptual system developed in step (2) using a mathematical model.

Usually developing a model requires several iterations through this process, revisiting steps (1) and (2) in light of the results of the simulations developed in step (3).

Actual groundwater flow systems have mind-boggling complexity. The subsurface is a complex distribution of materials with transient fluxes of water. No matter how much effort is spent drilling, sampling, and testing the subsurface, only a small fraction of it is ever sampled or tested hydraulically. The available data will provide only an incomplete picture of the actual system. Because of the inherent difficulty of characterizing subsurface regions, substantial uncertainty is always introduced when creating the conceptual system.

Typically, the complex distribution of subsurface materials is represented in the conceptual system as regions that are locally homogeneous and often isotropic. The properties assigned to these regions are chosen to represent the large-scale average hydraulic behavior of the region. Complex transient discharges like recharge or pumping rates are represented in the conceptual model as either steady-state average discharges or as transient discharges that change in some simplified manner.

In a well-constructed mathematical model, most of the uncertainty in the results stems from discrepancies between the real system and the conceptual system. Most mathematical models provide a fairly accurate simulation of the conceptual system. Therein lies the danger. Accurate simulation of the conceptual system is often taken to mean accurate simulation of the real system. With beautiful and apparently accurate model-generated graphics, there is a tendency to forget the unavoidable uncertainties in representing the real flow system with a simpler conceptual system. Regardless of these limitations, models are usually the best way to develop judgment when solving quantitative groundwater flow problems.

In the third step outlined above, the conceptual system should be examined to determine which general flow equation applies. There are several different general flow equations, each valid under certain conditions as discussed in previous sections. Which one applies depends on circumstances such as:

- Is the flow saturated or unsaturated?
- Should the flow be represented as one-, two-, or three-dimensional?
- Can the flow can be approximated as steady state or should it be represented as transient?
- Is the flow in a confined or an unconfined aquifer?

For a given general equation, there is an infinite variety of possible solutions. The unique and appropriate solution is the one that matches the particular boundary conditions of your conceptual system. **Boundary conditions** include things like heads at surface waters in contact with the aquifer and the location and discharge of features like a pumping well or leaching field.

The two most common types of boundary conditions are fixed head and fixed discharge conditions, as illustrated in Figure 6.28. At fixed head boundaries, the head is known. These are usually where the groundwater is in direct contact with a surface water like a lake or a river.

There are several types of fixed discharge conditions, including impermeable boundaries that allow zero discharge, recharge boundaries at the top of the saturated zone, and wells or drains that are pumped at a known rate. Some boundary conditions involve some combination of head and discharge

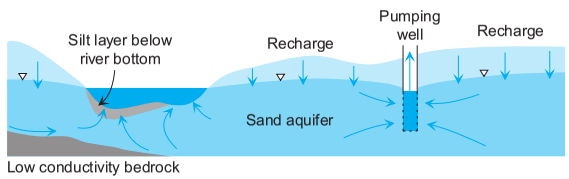


Figure 6.28 Examples of flow domain boundary conditions. The pumping well is a fixed discharge condition at the permeable section of the well. The recharge is a fixed discharge rate applied at the water table. The low-K bedrock is also considered a fixed discharge boundary; in this case, no flow passes across the boundary. The leaky silt layer below the river is a mixed condition where the discharge through the layer is proportional to the difference between the head in the river and the head in the aquifer beneath the silt layer. Where the river is in direct contact with the aquifer, there is a fixed head condition.

specification. For example, leakage through a silty river bed to an underlying aquifer is represented by discharge that is proportional to the resistance (thickness/vertical conductivity) of the silt layer and proportional to the head difference from the river to the underlying aquifer.

Along a particular stretch of boundary, only one condition can be specified. For example, it is not possible to specify both the head and the discharge along the same portion of a boundary. You may specify either, but not both.

Once the general equation is known and the boundary conditions are assessed, review the available modeling techniques and select one that can simulate the general equation and boundary conditions of your problem. Computer programs are widely used to develop complex two- and three-dimensional models. These programs implement numerical or analytic solutions to the general equations, and allow solutions with diverse and irregular boundary conditions. After a model is constructed, its geometry, boundary conditions, and parameters are adjusted as needed to fit the available information about the real system as well as possible. Some groundwater flow models are so complex that months of labor are required to create and adjust them. At the other end of the spectrum, simple models can be created in a matter of minutes. See Chapter 9 for a discussion of the different computer modeling approaches and guidance for building and evaluating models.

There still is a role for hand calculations, though. It is often reasonable to neglect components of flow in one or two directions, and use a two- or one-dimensional analysis of a simple conceptual model. In these cases, an adept modeler can perform simple calculations in minutes to solve the problem. The pursuit of hand calculations often teaches the modeler many useful insights that apply in general ways to other, more complex situations. Also, hand calculations are a good way to check aspects of the system to see what simplifications are justified and which ones are not. Chapter 7 discusses several practical, commonly used methods for analyzing one- and two-dimensional steady-state flow. Some commonly used methods for analyzing transient flow and pumping tests are discussed in Chapter 8.

6.11 Problems

Answers are given at the back of the book for starred (*) problems.

1. *The vertical soil profile at some location is as listed in Table 6.3. The water table at this location is at a depth of 12.2 ft (3.72 m). The

7

Modeling Steady Flow with Basic Methods

Key Terms

linear differential equations	256	slurry wall	268
superposition	256	drawdown	273
capture zone	258	flow net	278
image well	262		

Contents

7.1	Introduction	243
7.2	Aquifers with Uniform Transmissivity	244
7.3	Vertical Plane Flow	275
7.4	Flow Net Graphical Solutions	278
7.5	Unconfined Aquifers with a Horizontal Base	289
7.6	Problems	296

7.1 Introduction

All of the methods presented in this chapter are for flow that is conceptualized as steady state, an assumption typically invoked to model long-term average flow conditions. The methods covered are all one- or two-dimensional, where the resistance to flow in one or two dimensions is neglected. These methods can be done with hand calculations or with the help of relatively simple computer programs. Where there is limited data about a site or where the problem geometry is not too complex, these simple analyses are often the best approach.

The free aquifer modeling software called AnAqSimEDU (analytic aquifer simulator, educational version) is available through the book website. This software allows modeling of steady flow in confined and unconfined aquifers, with anisotropy, heterogeneity, wells, line boundaries, and recharge. It is a good tool for visualizing and understanding many of the concepts covered in this chapter and Chapter 9. Some examples and end-of-chapter problems make use of AnAqSimEDU. Along with the software, the book website includes instructions for installing and getting started with AnAqSimEDU (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

Groundwater Science, Second Edition. DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-384705-8.00007-8

© 2013, 2002 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

7.2 Aquifers with Uniform Transmissivity

For many flow problems in confined aquifers and some in unconfined aquifers, it is reasonable to construct a model that approximates the real system in the following ways:

1. The flow is steady state.
2. The resistance to vertical flow is neglected; only the resistance to horizontal flow is accounted for.
3. The aquifer transmissivity T is homogeneous and constant.

The general equations that govern flow with these assumptions are Eqs. 6.65 and 6.66. Several simple and useful solutions to these general equations are presented in this section.

7.2.1 Solution for Uniform Flow

One solution of the Laplace equation (Eq. 6.66) represents uniform flow in one direction, where the hydraulic gradient is constant over the whole x,y plane and the potentiometric surface is planar. On a large scale, the potentiometric surface of an aquifer is usually not planar. But if the area of interest is just a small portion of an aquifer, the head distribution within that area may be nearly planar and this solution can be useful.

This solution can be derived by observing that one possible set of solutions for the Laplace equation would have both

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} = 0 \tag{7.1}$$

If the above equations are true, then integration of the above gives

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = A \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial h}{\partial y} = B \tag{7.2}$$

where A and B are constants. Integrating both of these equations results in a solution of the form

$$h = Ax + By + C \tag{7.3}$$

where A, B, and C are constants. This solution represents uniform horizontal flow with a planar potentiometric surface. The constants A and B are the hydraulic gradients in the x and y directions, as Eq. 7.2 shows. The constant C moves the head surface up and down to different elevations without affecting the gradient. By itself, this solution represents flow in a uniform direction with

a uniform hydraulic gradient everywhere in the x,y plane. If $A = B = 0$, this solution reduces to $h = C$, a stagnant condition with no gradient and no flow. Three points of known head are required to uniquely define the surface with the constants A, B, and C.

Example 7.1 Figure 7.1 shows a plan view of three observation (non-pumping) wells in a confined aquifer, with the heads measured at each. Determine the mathematical model for uniform flow that fits these observations. Use this model to predict the head at point P.

The model for uniform flow is Eq. 7.3. The three constants A, B, and C are unknown and there are three conditions, namely the heads at the three observation wells, that allow determination of the three unknowns. Equation 7.3, written for location M (meter units) gives

$$h_M = A(0) + B(0) + C$$

$$h_M = C = 120.0$$

Equation 7.3 at location N gives

$$h_N = A(500) + B(0) + C$$

$$h_N = A(500) + 120.0$$

Solving this last equation for A results in $A = -4/500$. Equation 7.3 at location O gives

$$h_O = A(0) + B(-300) + C$$

$$h_O = B(-300) + 120.0$$

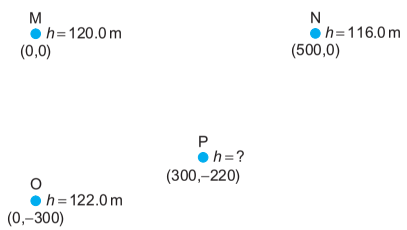


Figure 7.1 Plan view of three wells in a confined aquifer (Example 7.1). The wells are at points M, N, and O. The coordinates are listed below each well in the form (x, y).

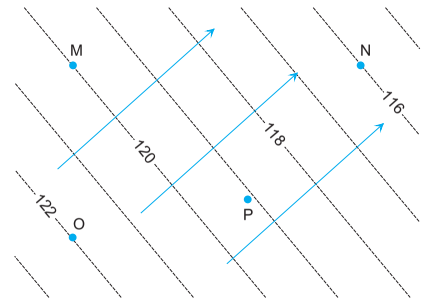


Figure 7.2 Head contours (dashed) for the uniform flow solution for Example 7.1. Streamlines are shown in blue.

Solving this last equation for B results in $B = -2/300$. Therefore the solution, with constants, is

$$h = -\frac{4}{500}x - \frac{2}{300}y + 120.0$$

Plugging the coordinates of point P into this solution gives the modeled head at point P, $h_P = 119.1$ m. The distribution of heads for this solution is shown in Figure 7.2.

7.2.2 Solution for Radial Flow to a Well

It is often of interest to know how water is flowing in the vicinity of a pumping well. A very useful solution to Laplace's equation is that for steady radial flow, which applies to flow in the vicinity of a pumping well. This solution assumes radial flow toward a well, so it makes sense to formulate the solution in terms of a radial coordinate r centered on the well, as shown in Figure 7.3. The origin of the coordinate system is taken as the centerline of the well. With this solution, all flow is radially symmetric in the r direction.

The solution for radial flow can be derived directly from the governing Laplace equation (Eq. 6.66), or it can be derived by combining Darcy's law and mass balance. We will take the latter approach, which is straightforward.

Define the discharge of the well as Q [L^3/T], which by convention here is positive for a well that removes water from the aquifer and negative for a well that injects water into the aquifer. With mass balance, this same discharge must be flowing through any closed boundary that can be drawn around the well.

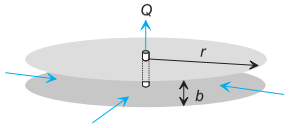


Figure 7.3 Radial flow to a well, showing the aquifer top and bottom. The discharge of the well Q must flow through the sides of a cylinder centered on the well.

Imagine that this boundary is a cylinder of radius r centered on the well. The height of the aquifer is b, so the surface area that flow goes through on this cylinder is $2\pi rb$. The specific discharge in the negative r direction (towards the well) anywhere on this cylindrical surface is $-q_r = K(dh/dr)$. The total discharge through the cylinder is the product of specific discharge and the surface area of the cylinder, and it must equal the discharge of the well:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= 2\pi rbK\frac{dh}{dr} \\ &= 2\pi rT\frac{dh}{dr} \end{aligned} \tag{7.4}$$

This equation can be rearranged to separate the variables r and h to give

$$dh = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\frac{dr}{r} \tag{7.5}$$

Integrating both sides of this equation yields the solution for steady radial flow in an aquifer with constant T:

$$h = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln r + C \tag{7.6}$$

where C is a constant and r is the radial distance from the center of the well to the point where h is evaluated. This solution satisfies Laplace's equation, which when written in terms of radial coordinates for radially symmetric flow is

$$\nabla^2 h = \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial h}{\partial r} \tag{7.7}$$

Because of the natural log in Eq. 7.6, the head predicted by this solution has the following behaviors close to and far from the well:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{as} \quad r \to 0, \qquad h \to -\infty \\ &\text{as} \quad r \to +\infty, \quad h \to +\infty \end{aligned} \tag{7.8}$$

Since wells always have some finite radius, the singular behavior as $r \to 0$ is not a concern. On the other hand, the behavior of this solution becomes inappropriate at large distances from the well. In real aquifers, heads do not increase indefinitely with distance from pumping wells because of the existence of features like rivers or lakes that supply water to the aquifer. Since this solution does not incorporate the influence of such far-field boundary conditions, its predictions become inaccurate far from the well. This solution alone is valid only in the region close to the well where the heads and discharges are dominated by the influence of the well.

When the head is known at some point close to the well, the constant C in Eq. 7.6 can be determined. Say that the head at radius r_0 equals h_0. The solution at $r = r_0$ is

$$h_0 = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln r_0 + C \tag{7.9}$$

Solving the above equation for C yields

$$C = h_0 - \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln r_0 \tag{7.10}$$

Substituting this definition of C back into Eq. 7.6 gives a form of the solution for the case where head is known at a point near the well:

$$h = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln\frac{r}{r_0} + h_0 \tag{7.11}$$

This equation is sometimes referred to as the Thiem equation (Thiem, 1906). The point where $r = r_0$ and $h = h_0$ can be at the radius of the pumping well if you know the head at the pumping well, or it can be at the location of some nearby nonpumping well or piezometer.

Example 7.2 In the confined aquifer illustrated in Figure 7.4, there is a well that pumps water at a steady rate of $Q = 500\,\text{m}^3/\text{day}$. Nearby

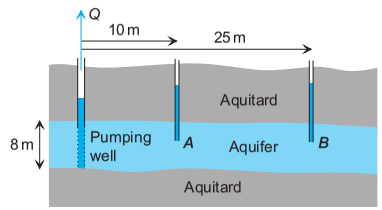


Figure 7.4 Vertical section through a confined aquifer near a pumping well and two observation wells, for Example 7.2.

are two observation wells A and B at radial distances of 10 m and 25 m, respectively. The heads in these wells are $h_A = 80.0$ m, and $h_B = 82.0$ m. Given this information, estimate T and K for the aquifer. Predict the head at the outer wall of the well screen, which has radius $r_w = 0.5$ m.

Since the head at a nearby well is given, use Eq. 7.11 as a starting point. We will use the head at well A in this equation, but we could have used the head at well B and solved things just as easily:

$$h = \frac{Q}{2\pi T} \ln \frac{r}{r_A} + h_A$$

The only unknown in this equation is T. Use the known head at well B to solve for T:

$$h_B = \frac{Q}{2\pi T} \ln \frac{r_B}{r_A} + h_A$$

With a bit of algebraic manipulation, this can be solved for T:

$$\begin{aligned} T &= \frac{Q}{2\pi(h_B - h_A)} \ln \frac{r_B}{r_A} \\ &= \frac{500\ \mathrm{m^3/day}}{2\pi(2.0\ \mathrm{m})} \ln \frac{25\ \mathrm{m}}{10\ \mathrm{m}} \\ &= 36.5\ \mathrm{m^2/day} \end{aligned}$$

Recalling the definition of T,

$$\begin{aligned} K &= T/b \\ &= (36.5\ \mathrm{m^2/day})/(8\ \mathrm{m}) \\ &= 4.6\ \mathrm{m/day} \end{aligned}$$

With T known, the head at the well screen is calculated with the solution

$$\begin{aligned} h_w &= \frac{Q}{2\pi T} \ln \frac{r_w}{r_A} + h_A \\ &= \frac{500\ \mathrm{m^3/day}}{2\pi(36.5\ \mathrm{m^2/day})} \ln \frac{0.5\ \mathrm{m}}{10\ \mathrm{m}} + 80\ \mathrm{m} \\ &= 73.5\ \mathrm{m} \end{aligned}$$

The pattern of heads for this example is shown in Figure 7.5.

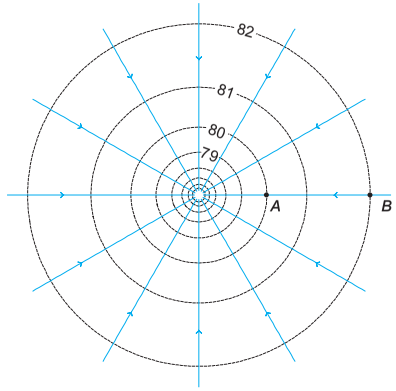


Figure 7.5 Head contours (dashed) and streamlines (blue) using the radial flow model for Example 7.2.

7.2.3 Solution for Uniform Recharge/Leakage

If there is steady flow and a nonzero net vertical flow in through the upper and lower boundaries of the aquifer ($N \neq 0$), Poisson's equation (Eq. 6.65) applies. Then the recharge/leakage rate N is constant and independent of x, y, and there are some fairly simple solutions that can be useful. One case where such a solution is often helpful is the recharge area of an unconfined aquifer. Another is a small portion of a confined aquifer where the net leakage through aquitards is approximately uniform.

The following function is a solution to the Poisson equation that models constant recharge/leakage at rate N over the entire x, y plane, as we will prove by differentiation:

$$h = -\frac{N}{2T}\left(Dx^2 + (1-D)y^2\right) + C \tag{7.12}$$

where D is a positive constant in the range $0 \leq D \leq 1$. Performing the double differentiations on this solution proves that it is a solution of Poisson's equation for constant recharge/leakage at rate N (compare with Eq. 6.65):

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} &= -\frac{N}{2T} 2D - \frac{N}{2T} 2(1-D) \\ &= -\frac{N}{T} \end{aligned} \tag{7.13}$$

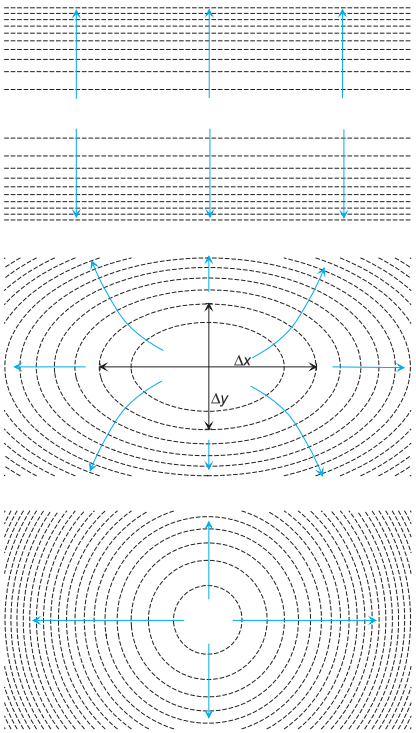


Figure 7.6 Head contours (dashed) and streamlines (blue) for the uniform recharge/leakage solution: $D = 0$ (top), $D = 1/4$ (middle), and $D = 1/2$ (bottom).

Figure 7.6 illustrates the head pattern produced by this solution for three different values of the constant D. If $D = 1/2$, the recharge/leakage is conducted off to infinity in a radial flow pattern, and the contours of constant head are circles centered on the origin:

$$h = -\frac{N}{2T}\left(\frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{y^2}{2}\right) + C$$

$$h = -\frac{N}{4T}r^2 + C \quad (r^2 = x^2 + y^2) \tag{7.14}$$

The hydraulic gradient increases with distance from the origin, which is necessary to conduct away an amount of recharge/leakage that increases with the square of distance from the origin. If $D = 0$ or $D = 1$, the flow pattern becomes one-dimensional, with water flowing off to infinity in either the y or x direction, respectively. For other values of D, the head contours form ellipses, each with aspect ratio

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \sqrt{D/(1-D)} \tag{7.15}$$

where $\Delta y/\Delta x$ is the ratio of the y and x lengths of the ellipses, as shown in Figure 7.6. When $D < 1/2$, $\Delta y < \Delta x$, and when $D > 1/2$, $\Delta y > \Delta x$. Inverting Eq. 7.15 gives

$$D = \frac{(\Delta y/\Delta x)^2}{1 + (\Delta y/\Delta x)^2} \tag{7.16}$$

There is an infinite variety of solutions depending on the value of D because there is an infinite variety of possible lateral boundary conditions for the case of uniform recharge/leakage.

To see how various factors influence these solutions, examine the radially symmetric form, Eq. 7.14, for a constant-T aquifer in a circular island in a lake. Assume the island has a radius r_0 and the head at the shore is h_0. Applying Eq. 7.14 at the shoreline yields

$$h_0 = -\frac{N}{4T}r_0^2 + C \tag{7.17}$$

Solving for C in the above gives

$$C = h_0 + \frac{N}{4T}r_0^2 \tag{7.18}$$

Substituting Eq. 7.18 back into Eq. 7.14 gives the solution for this particular situation:

$$h = -\frac{N}{4T}(r^2 - r_0^2) + h_0 \tag{7.19}$$

The head surface is a parabolic, radially symmetric mound with its highest level at the center of the island. The head surface is horizontal at the center of the island and gets steeper with increasing r.

The height of the head above the lake level $(h - h_0)$ at the center of the island is

$$h - h_0 = \frac{N}{4T} r_0^2 \quad (\text{at } r = 0) \tag{7.20}$$

The height of the potentiometric surface is proportional to the ratio of recharge/leakage to transmissivity, N/T. When this ratio is higher, the mound in the potentiometric surface is higher. The height of the potentiometric surface is also proportional to r_0^2. The height of the mound is proportional to the square of the average distance to fixed-head boundaries (r_0^2 in this case). These concepts apply to aquifers of variable shape, not just to circular ones.

Flow models created with AnAqSimEDU illustrate the head and flow patterns with uniform recharge. One shows the circular pattern (file UniRechargeCircle.anaq) and another shows the elliptical pattern (file UniRechargeEllipse.anaq). A third shows an irregular polygon boundary, but with a uniform rate of recharge inside (file UniRechargePolygon.anaq, Figure 7.7). All three of these models use a radially symmetric function like Eq. 7.14 added to functions for linesink elements (Section 9.4) around the perimeter of the circle, ellipse, or polygon, which create a constant head boundary. To view the models, run AnAqSimEDU, open the model file, select Solve, and then select Make Plot/Level 1. If you move the cursor over the pathlines in the resulting plot, you will see that the pathlines start at the top of the aquifer near the highest head, and migrate deeper with time as they move towards the boundary. This is due to recharge entering the top of the aquifer (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

7.2.4 Estimating the Recharge/Transmissivity Ratio

A useful application of the uniform recharge/leakage solution is to estimate the average regional rate N/T from the shape of the water table or potentiometric surface in an aquifer. Often the shape of the surface in an upland area will form a pattern that looks like some variation of the patterns shown in Figure 7.6. By fitting the solution of Eq. 7.12 to head contours, an estimate of the ratio N/T may be derived.

This type of analysis should be applied only to an area where the regional recharge and/or leakage is the dominant source or sink for water; avoid areas where there are wells or connected surface waters. The analysis is well-suited for estimating T if the average N is known with only minor uncertainty.

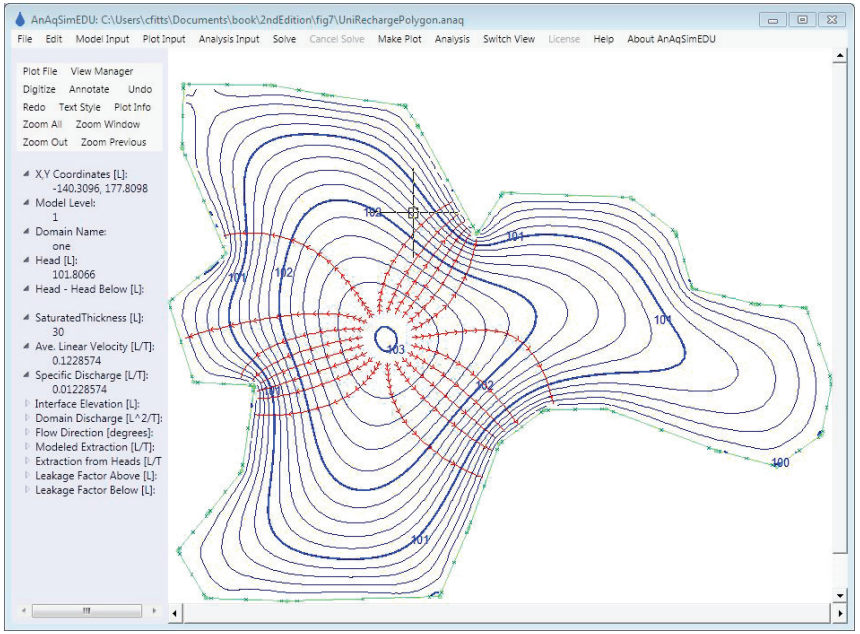


Figure 7.7 Head contours and flow pathlines generated by AnAqSimEDU for an example with uniform recharge and an irregular polygon boundary. Arrows on pathlines are at one-year intervals. Close spacing of arrows occurs where the gradient and velocity is small near the highest head. Wide spacing of arrows occurs where the gradient and velocity are high near the margins.

> ***Example 7.3*** The contour map shown in Figure 7.8 is drawn based on observed heads in shallow wells in an unconfined sand aquifer. The base of the sand is a very low-conductivity bedrock, and we can assume that there is negligible leakage out the bottom of the aquifer. The recharge rate for the aquifer is estimated to be 1.5 ft/year (0.457 m/yr). Using the solution for constant recharge/infiltration, estimate the average T for this aquifer.
>
> Although clearly not a set of perfect ellipses, the contours are roughly elliptical. The average aspect ratio of the ellipses is about 2.5. Let the

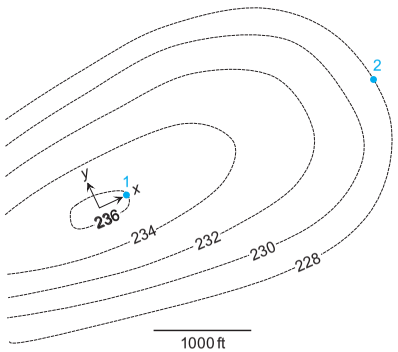


Figure 7.8 Contour map of the water table in an unconfined aquifer in an upland area (Example 7.3). Heads are in feet.

x and y axes be parallel to the long and short axes of the ellipses, as shown in Figure 7.8. Using Eq. 7.16 with an aspect ratio of 2.5 results in $D = 0.138$. We will apply Eq. 7.12 at two points where the head is known to solve for T. From the contour map, these two points are chosen: (1) $x_1 = 320,\ y_1 = 0,\ h_1 = 236$, and (2) $x_2 = 3100,\ y_2 = 0,\ h_2 = 228$. Writing out Eq. 7.12 for these two points gives

$$h_1 = -\frac{N}{2T}Dx_1^2 + C$$
$$h_2 = -\frac{N}{2T}Dx_2^2 + C$$

These are two equations with two unknowns, T and C. Subtracting these eliminates C and gives

$$h_1 - h_2 = -\frac{N}{2T}D(x_1^2 - x_2^2)$$

Solving for T gives

$$\begin{aligned} T &= -\frac{N}{2(h_1 - h_2)}D(x_1^2 - x_2^2) \\ &= -\frac{1.5\,\text{ft/yr}}{2(236 - 228\,\text{ft})}(0.138)\left((320\,\text{ft})^2 - (3100\,\text{ft})^2\right) \\ &= 120{,}000\,\text{ft}^2/\text{yr} \\ &= 340\,\text{ft}^2/\text{day}\ (31.6\,\text{m}^2/\text{day}) \end{aligned}$$

An AnAqSimEDU model of this example is available on the book website (file UniRechargeEllipseExample.anaq). This model has a uniform recharge rate of 1.5 ft/yr (0.00411 ft/yr) and an aquifer transmissivity of 340 ft^2/day. It results in head patterns similar to that shown in Figure 7.8 (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

7.2.5 Superposition

Because the Laplace and Poisson equations are linear differential equations, it is possible to add together different solutions to make new, composite solutions that are more versatile. In **linear differential equations**, the dependent variable (h in our case) or derivatives of it only occur in linear combinations. For example, some terms that are linear in h are

$$12x, \quad \frac{\partial h}{\partial x}, \quad 4\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2}, \quad \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x \partial y}$$

and some terms that are nonlinear in h are

$$3\frac{\partial(h^2)}{\partial y}, \quad \frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\frac{\partial h}{\partial y}, \quad 2\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2}, \quad 4\left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)^2$$

An example of superposition involves three Laplace equation solutions h_1, h_2, and h_3 and one Poisson equation solution h_4. The **superposition** principle in this case is stated mathematically as

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{if} && \nabla^2 h_1 = \nabla^2 h_2 = \nabla^2 h_3 = 0 \\ &\text{and} && \nabla^2 h_4 = E \\ &\text{then} && \nabla^2(h_1 + h_2 + h_3) = 0 \\ &\text{and} && \nabla^2(h_1 + h_2 + h_3 + h_4) = E \end{aligned} \tag{7.21}$$

where E is a constant. There is no limit to the number of solutions that may be superposed. With the aid of computer programs, large numbers of analytic solutions are superposed to simulate very irregular and complex conditions, a method known as the analytic element method (more on that in Chapter 9).

By superposing a few solutions, some interesting problems may be solved just with hand calculations. For example, superposition of two radial flow solutions and the uniform flow solution gives another solution of

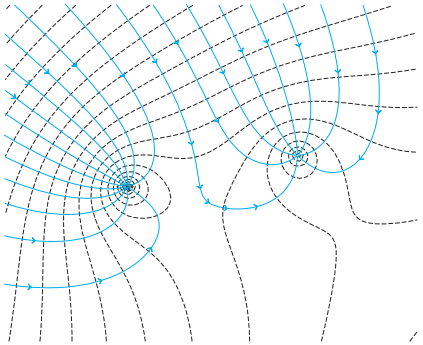


Figure 7.9 Head contours (dashed) and streamlines (blue) for a solution for two wells in a uniform flow.

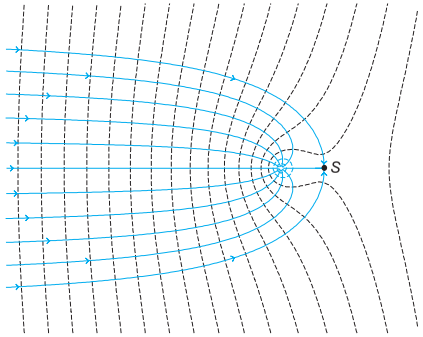


Figure 7.10 Head contours (dashed) and streamlines (blue) for a solution for one well and a uniform flow. The flow stagnates at point S ($q_x = q_y = 0$).

Laplace's equation:

$$h = \frac{Q_1}{2\pi T}\ln r_1 + \frac{Q_2}{2\pi T}\ln r_2 + Ax + By + C \tag{7.22}$$

where Q_1 and Q_2 are the well discharges, r_1 and r_2 are the radii from two different wells to the point where h is evaluated, and A, B, and C are constants. Figure 7.9 shows an example of this solution, where two wells are extracting water ($Q_1 > 0$ and $Q_2 > 0$). Close to the wells, the radial flow solution forms a nearly radial pattern, while far from the wells the uniform flow solution dominates.

When solutions are superposed, the composite solution always has only one constant, like C in Eq. 7.22. If multiple constants are added to a composite solution, they always add together to form a single constant.

7.2.6 Capture Zone of a Well in Uniform Flow

A very useful application of superposition is the solution for a single well in a uniform flow. It is often used to design a well that captures a plume of contaminated groundwater. For uniform flow in the x direction, this solution is

$$h = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln r + Ax + C \tag{7.23}$$

where r is the radius from the pumping well and A is the hydraulic gradient contributed by the uniform flow. $TA = T(\partial h/\partial x)$ is the discharge of the uniform flow passing through a panel that extends one unit in the y direction, and the full height of the aquifer in the z direction.

Figure 7.10 shows the pattern of heads and streamlines for this model. The pathlines in this plot define the zone of groundwater that is eventually pumped out by the well, and it is called the **capture zone** of the well.

To mathematically define the capture zone, examine the solution at point S in Figure 7.10, where the flow stagnates:

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = 0, \quad \frac{\partial h}{\partial y} = 0 \quad \text{(at stagnation point } S\text{)} \tag{7.24}$$

The stagnation point is the only point on the x axis where $\partial h/\partial x = 0$, so we can determine its location by evaluating the x-direction partial derivative of Eq. 7.23:

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial r}{\partial x} + A \tag{7.25}$$

If the center of the x, y coordinate system is placed at the well and we restrict our analysis of the derivative to the x axis, then $r = x$ and this equation becomes

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\frac{1}{x} + A \quad \text{(on } x \text{ axis)} \tag{7.26}$$

At the stagnation point $x = x_s$ and $\partial h/\partial x = 0$. Using these facts and then solving for x_s gives

$$x_s = -\frac{Q}{2\pi TA} \tag{7.27}$$

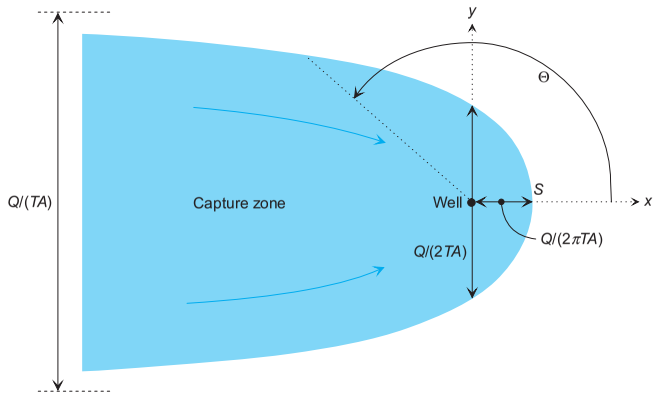


Figure 7.11 Geometry of the capture zone for a well in a uniform flow field.

When $A < 0$, the uniform flow is in the positive x direction and the stagnation point lies to the right of the well as shown in Figure 7.10. If $A > 0$, flow is in the opposite direction and the stagnation point is to the left of the well.

The location of the streamlines that separate captured water from uncaptured water can be derived using an analysis that is beyond the scope of this book. Interested readers can learn more from Javandel et al. (1984) and Strack (1989). The result is this: the coordinates of streamlines bounding the capture zone are defined by

$$y = -\frac{Q}{2\pi TA}\Theta \quad \text{(at edge of capture zone)} \tag{7.28}$$

where the angle Θ is measured in radians and is defined as (Figure 7.11)

$$\Theta = \arctan\frac{y}{x} \quad (-\pi < \Theta < \pi) \tag{7.29}$$

Far upstream from the well, $x \to -\infty$, $\Theta \to \pm\pi$, and the y coordinates of the bounding streamline become

$$y = \pm\frac{Q}{2TA} \quad \text{(far upstream of well)} \tag{7.30}$$

From the previous equation, the total width of the capture zone far upstream of the well is $Q/(TA)$, which follows from continuity of flow and the fact that TA is the discharge of the uniform flow per unit length of aquifer. The y coordinates of the bounding streamline just opposite the well at $x = 0$ may be found with Eq. 7.28, setting $\Theta = \pm\pi/2$:

$$y = \pm\frac{Q}{4TA} \quad (\text{at } x = 0) \tag{7.31}$$

The geometry of the capture zone for this solution is illustrated in Figure 7.11.

An AnAqSimEDU model with a well and capture zone is available on the book website (file CaptureZone.anaq). Figure 7.12 shows a plot generated by AnAqSimEDU for this model, with head contours and flow pathlines. The pathlines have arrows posted at one-year increments. For example, the set of arrows closest to the well represent the location of water one year before

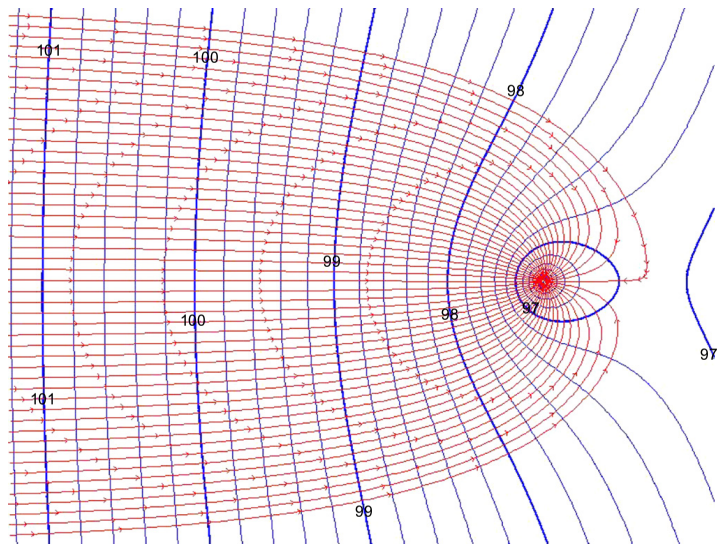


Figure 7.12 Head contours and flow pathlines for the AnAqSimEDU model CaptureZone.anaq. Arrows on the pathlines are at one-year time increments.

arriving at the well. Note the nearly stagnant flow on the pathline to the right of the well. This model approximates a uniform flow field using head-specified linesinks (Section 9.4) far to the left and right of the well (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

Actual capture zones may deviate from the shape defined by this solution for a number of different reasons, including heterogeneity and three-dimensional effects. When the width of a capture zone is not significantly larger than the saturated thickness of the aquifer, three-dimensional effects become important. Under these circumstances, the three-dimensional form of capture zones can be quite complex, as discussed by Bair and Lahm (1996) and Steward (1999).

The model of Eq. 7.23 also does not include the influence of recharge and/or leakage through the top or bottom of the aquifer. This may be a reasonable assumption in the near vicinity of a well. But at larger scales, these sources of water contribute in a significant way to the well discharge and to the shape of a capture zone. Figure 7.13 shows the shape of a modeled capture zone in a two-dimensional model where there is uniform recharge ($N =$ constant). With recharge, the width of the capture zone ultimately decreases upstream from the well because the source of water to the well is a finite area of recharge. This differs from the capture zone geometry without recharge. As shown in Figures 7.10 and 7.11, the capture zone with no recharge approaches a constant width far upstream of the well.

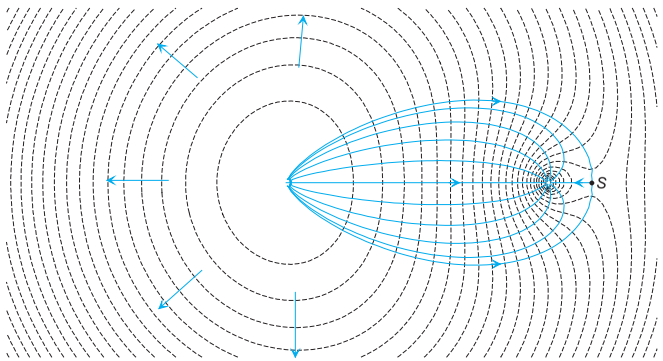


Figure 7.13 Head contours (dashed) and pathlines (blue) for a solution for one well and uniform recharge, where Eqs. 7.6 and 7.14 are superposed. The capture zone in this case covers a finite area.

7.2.7 Wells near Straight Constant Head Boundaries

Multiple radial flow solutions can be superposed to solve problems involving wells near straight constant head or impermeable boundaries. This method is known in the literature as the *method of images*. Figure 7.14 shows head contours and streamlines for a model containing two wells, one of discharge Q, and the other of discharge $-Q$. This figure represents the following analytic solution:

$$\begin{aligned} h &= \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln r_1 - \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln r_2 + C \\ &= \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln\frac{r_1}{r_2} + C \end{aligned} \tag{7.32}$$

where r_1 and r_2 are the distances from the pumping well ($+Q$) and the injection well ($-Q$), respectively, to the point where h is evaluated, and C is a constant.

An interesting and useful symmetry of the solution is that the head is constant along the bisecting line between the two wells. On the bisecting line $r_1 = r_2$, the solution becomes

$$h = C \quad (r_1 = r_2) \tag{7.33}$$

This solution can be used to simulate flow to a single well near a long, straight constant head boundary such as a river or lakeshore (Figure 7.15). The second, fictitious well in the solution is called an **image well** and it is located opposite the real well an equal distance beyond the constant head boundary. The solution in the real domain meets the required conditions of constant head

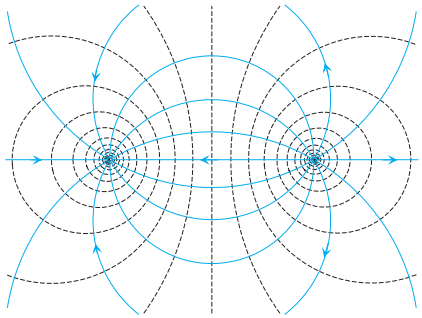


Figure 7.14 Head contours (dashed) and pathlines (blue) for a solution for two wells with opposite discharge.

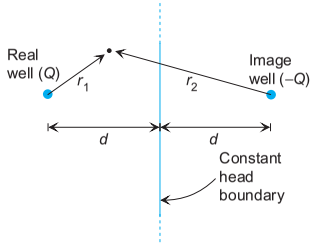


Figure 7.15 Plan view of the geometry of the real well, image well, and straight constant head boundary.

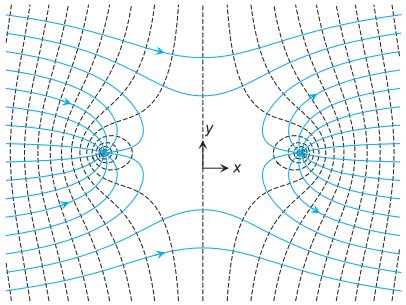


Figure 7.16 Solution for a well near a constant head boundary with uniform flow perpendicular to the boundary.

on the straight boundary and radial flow of discharge Q to the real well. How the solution behaves on the image well side of the constant head boundary is irrelevant, since the solution is appropriate in all of the "real" domain.

The image well solution can be amended to include a uniform flow term, so that it simulates the effect of a well near a straight constant head boundary with a regional uniform flow perpendicular to the boundary. This is a fairly common scenario for a well near a straight river or lakeshore. If the constant head boundary is chosen as the y axis and the well and its image are symmetric with respect to the y axis, the solution

$$h = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln\frac{r_1}{r_2} + Ax + C \tag{7.34}$$

will maintain a constant head $h = C$ along the y axis. This solution is illustrated in Figure 7.16.

Example 7.4 A well is located 50 ft (15.2 m) inland from a long straight lakeshore (see Figure 7.17) in an aquifer that has an average transmissivity of $T = 200\,\text{ft}^2/\text{day}$ ($18.6\,\text{m}^2/\text{day}$). When the well is not pumped, the steady-state water level in it is 2.0 ft (0.61 m) above the lake level. Define two models of steady-state flow, one with and one without the well pumping. Use the latter model to predict what the maximum discharge of the well is before some water will flow back to the well from the lake.

First, define the model for nonpumping conditions. Assume the lake elevation is zero, and that the lakeshore coincides with the y axis. The model for nonpumping involves only uniform flow to the lakeshore:

$$h = Ax + C$$

At the shore, $x = 0$ and $h = 0$, so $C = 0$. Therefore the nonpumping model is

$$h = Ax$$

At the well, $x = 50$ and $h = 2$. Using this information in the previous equation gives

$$\begin{aligned} A &= h/x \\ &= 2/50 = 0.04 \end{aligned}$$

When the well has been pumping a long while, the steady-state model will have additional terms for the well plus an image well located at $x = -50$, $y = 0$:

$$h = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln\frac{r_1}{r_2} + Ax$$

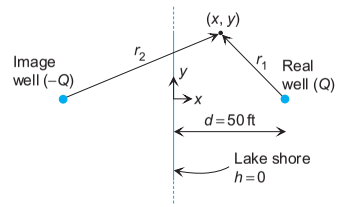


Figure 7.17 A well near a lakeshore (Example 7.4).

where r_1 and r_2 are the distances from the real and imaginary wells, respectively, to the point where h is evaluated. At the lakeshore, $x = 0$ and $r_1 = r_2$, so $h = 0$, as desired. Far away from the well, $r_1 \simeq r_2$ and $h \simeq Ax$, as desired. Far from the well, the flow field is unaffected by the pumping, and the uniform flow field is the same as in the nonpumping case. The constant A for the uniform flow is the same as in the nonpumping case ($A = 0.04$).

To find the highest Q for which no lake water is drawn, we need to examine how water is flowing right near the lakeshore, at $x = 0$, $y = 0$ just opposite the well. If water is flowing in the positive x direction there,

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} < 0 \quad (\text{at } x = y = 0)$$

and the well is drawing some water from the lake. On the other hand, if

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} > 0 \quad (\text{at } x = y = 0)$$

then water is flowing into the lake there, and the well does not draw any lake water. We need to solve for the critical value of Q where $\partial h/\partial x = 0$ at $x = y = 0$; this will be the maximum Q without drawing lake water. Differentiating the solution for the pumping case gives

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\ln r_1 - \ln r_2) + A$$

If we make a restriction to points on the x axis only, $r_1 = d - x$ and $r_2 = d + x$, where $d = 50$ ft is the distance the well is from the shore. Inserting these definitions into the previous equation and differentiating gives

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\left(\frac{-1}{d-x} - \frac{1}{d+x}\right) + A$$

At the point $x = y = 0$, this reduces to

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\left(\frac{-2}{d}\right) + A$$

Setting this gradient equal to zero results in this simple relation for the critical value of Q:

$$Q_{max} = A\pi T d$$

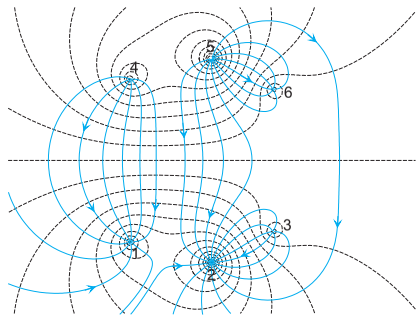


Figure 7.18 Constant head contours (dashed) and pathlines (blue) for a solution for two pumping wells (1,2) and one injection well (3) near a constant head boundary, with image wells (4,5,6).

For the parameters of this problem, $Q_{max} = 1260\ \text{ft}^3/\text{day}$ (35.7 m^3/day). In the previous equation, it is interesting to note that Q_{max} is directly proportional to the hydraulic gradient of the uniform flow A, the transmissivity T, and the distance from the shore d.

The image well concept can be extended to any number of wells. So long as each real well has an appropriate image well across the straight boundary, the condition on the boundary is preserved. Figure 7.18 shows the solution for three wells plus their images near a constant head boundary. Wells 1–3 are the real wells, with wells 1 and 2 pumping and well 3 injecting. The image wells 4–6 have the opposite discharge of their real counterparts. The analytic solution in this case is

$$h = \frac{Q_1}{2\pi T}\ln\frac{r_1}{r_4} + \frac{Q_2}{2\pi T}\ln\frac{r_2}{r_5} - \frac{Q_3}{2\pi T}\ln\frac{r_3}{r_6} + C \tag{7.35}$$

An AnAqSimEDU model similar to the model in Figure 7.18 is available on the book website as file MultiImage.anaq. You can open, solve, and plot this model, and review its input to see how the image wells are paired (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

7.2.8 Wells near Straight Impermeable Boundaries

Using an image well that has an opposite discharge from the real well is appropriate for modeling a constant head boundary. But now consider a model where the image well has the same discharge as the real well; this turns out to be useful for modeling impermeable boundaries. The analytic solution in

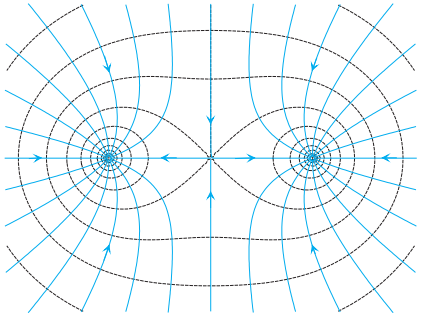


Figure 7.19 Head contours (dashed) and pathlines (blue) for a solution for two wells of equal discharge.

this case is

$$h = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln r_1 + \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln r_2 + C$$
$$= \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln(r_1 r_2) + C \tag{7.36}$$

A plot of heads and flow lines for this solution is shown in Figure 7.19. It is apparent that in this case, the bisecting line between the wells is an impermeable (no flow) boundary. Stated mathematically, the no-flow condition on a boundary is

$$q_n = 0, \quad \frac{\partial h}{\partial n} = 0 \tag{7.37}$$

where n is the direction normal to the boundary. There is no flow across the boundary and the gradient of head in the direction normal to the boundary is zero.

To prove that this solution does in fact meet the no-flow condition on the bisecting line, consider a model using Eq. 7.36, where the wells lie on the x axis and the bisecting line is the y axis. The coordinates of the real well are x_1, $y_1 = 0$, and the imaginary well is at $x_2 = -x_1$, $y_2 = 0$. The radial distances r_1 and r_2 are defined as

$$r_1 = \sqrt{(x-x_1)^2 + (y-y_1)^2}$$
$$r_2 = \sqrt{(x-x_2)^2 + (y-y_2)^2} \tag{7.38}$$

where x, y are the coordinates of the point where h is evaluated. The no-flow condition on the y axis is stated mathematically as $\partial h/\partial x = 0$ when $x = 0$. This

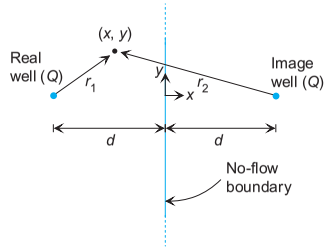


Figure 7.20 Plan view of the geometry of the real well, image well, and straight no-flow boundary.

can be checked by differentiating Eq. 7.36 with respect to x:

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\ln r_1 + \ln r_2)$$
$$= \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\left(\frac{x-x_1}{r_1^2} + \frac{x-x_2}{r_2^2}\right) \tag{7.39}$$

On the y axis $x = 0$ and $r_1 = r_2$, so the above becomes

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = -\frac{Q}{2\pi T}\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{r_1^2}\right) \quad \text{(on the } y \text{ axis)} \tag{7.40}$$

With the proper image symmetry, $x_1 = -x_2$, so the above expression becomes zero:

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = 0 \quad \text{(on the } y \text{ axis)} \tag{7.41}$$

This proves mathematically what Figure 7.19 shows: there is no flow across the bisecting line between the well and its image. This solution is appropriate for the case where a pumping well is located near a very low-conductivity lateral boundary of the aquifer, which can be approximated as a straight impermeable boundary. Such a situation is illustrated in Figure 7.20.

> ***Example 7.5*** Refer to Figure 7.21, which shows a pumping well located near a slurry wall. A **slurry wall** is a vertical wall of concrete and/or clay that is installed in a trench. They are used to block the flow of contaminated groundwater, as building foundations, and for bracing excavations.
>
> The slurry wall is long in the direction normal to the page, so the plan-view geometry of the problem is like that of Figure 7.20. The

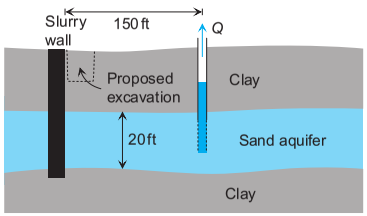


Figure 7.21 Vertical cross-section of a well near a slurry wall (Example 7.5).

well has a diameter of 1.0 ft (0.305 m) and it pumps at a steady rate of 1000 ft^3/day (28.3 m^3/day). The head in the pumping well is $h_w = 90$ ft (27.4 m). It is screened in a confined sand aquifer that is about 20 ft (6.1 m) thick and has an average horizontal conductivity of $K = 2$ ft/day (0.61 m/day). An excavation is to be made next to the wall at the location shown in the figure. If the head in the sand under the excavation is too high, the excavation bottom will heave upward, so the excavating contractor wants an estimate of the head in the sand just to the right of the slurry wall, beneath the left edge of the excavation. Use the image well solution to estimate the head at this spot.

Use the solution of Eq. 7.36, where the slurry wall is the impermeable boundary. Assign the y axis to the slurry wall location, place the real well at $x = 150$, $y = 0$, and the image well at $x = -150$, $y = 0$. According to our solution, the head at the screen of the pumping well is

$$h_w = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln(r_1(w)\, r_2(w)) + C = 90\text{ ft}$$

where $r_1(w)$ is the radial distance from the centerline of the pumping well to a point on its own screen (0.5 ft), and $r_2(w)$ is the radial distance from the centerline of the image well to the screen of the pumping well (300 ft). A similar equation may be written for the head below the left edge of the excavation:

$$h_{ex} = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln(r_1(ex)\, r_2(ex)) + C$$

where at this point, $r_1(ex)$ and $r_2(ex)$ are the radial distances from the pumping well and the image well to the left edge of the excavation and slurry wall. In the previous two equations, there were only two unknowns: C and h_{ex}. By subtracting the two, we can eliminate C:

$$h_{ex} - h_w = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}[\ln(r_1(ex)\, r_2(ex)) - \ln(r_1(w)\, r_2(w))]$$

With some algebra, h_{ex} can be isolated and evaluated:

$$h_{ex} = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln\left(\frac{r_1(ex)\, r_2(ex)}{r_1(w)\, r_2(w)}\right) + h_w$$

$$= \frac{1000\text{ ft}^3/\text{day}}{2\pi(2\text{ ft/day}\cdot 20\text{ ft})}\ln\left(\frac{(150)(150)}{(0.5)(300)}\right) + 90\text{ ft}$$

$$= 109.9\text{ ft } (33.50\text{ m})$$

7.2.9 Wells near Circular Constant Head Boundaries

Examine the solution of Eq. 7.32 shown in Figure 7.14. Aside from the symmetry of the constant head along the bisecting line, there is another interesting and useful aspect of the geometry. All constant head contours form circles with the exception of the straight constant head contour that runs along the bisecting line. This means that Eq. 7.32 can also be used to simulate cases involving wells located near a circular or arc-shaped boundary. The real well and real domain can be located inside or outside the circle.

If the real domain is inside the circle, the image well is located outside the circle. If the real domain is outside the circle, the image well is located inside the circle. To create the constant head condition on the circle, the image well has the opposite discharge of the real well. The location of the two wells relative to the circle is illustrated in Figure 7.22.

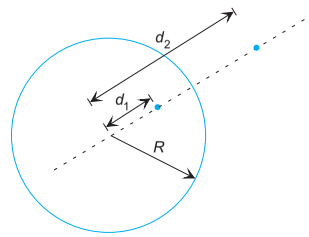


Figure 7.22 Location of a real well and an image well with respect to a circular constant head boundary.

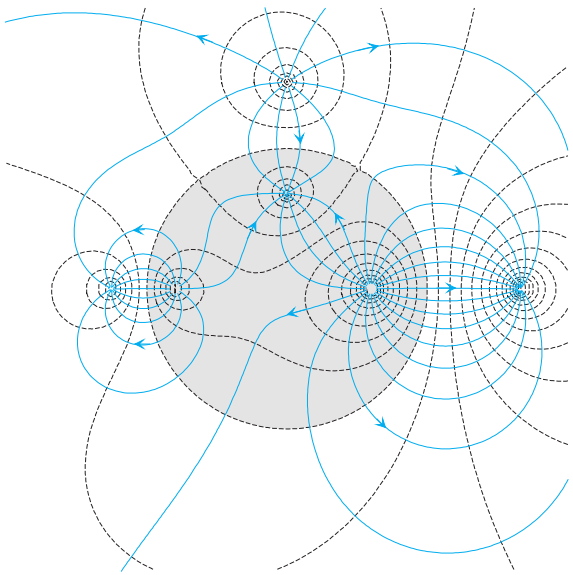


Figure 7.23 Three wells and their images near a circular constant head boundary.

If the radius of the circle is R, the real and image wells must be located on the same radial line at radial distances d_1 and d_2 from the circle center, where the distances are related as follows (Strack, 1989):

$$d_1 d_2 = R^2 \tag{7.42}$$

As one well approaches the center of the island, the other must approach an infinite distance from the circle. If the well is at the center of the circle, no image well is needed to produce the constant head boundary on the circle. Any number of wells can be imaged about the circle, as long as Eq. 7.42 is met for each real/image well pair. Figure 7.23 shows a model with three wells and their images near a circular constant head boundary. The solution of Eq. 7.35 would apply in this case, with each well and its image located according to the geometry shown in Figure 7.22. This could be the solution for the shaded domain inside the circle (e.g., an island) or it could be for the domain outside the circle (e.g., around a lake).

An AnAqSimEDU model similar to the model in Figure 7.23 is available on the book website as file MultiImageCircle.anaq. You can open, solve, and plot this model, and review its input to see how the image wells are arranged with respect to the circle of radius 100 (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

Example 7.6 A well is located on the inside bend of a river as shown in Figure 7.24. The river level is 162.0 m above sea level. The well and the river penetrate an unconfined aquifer that has an estimated transmissivity of $T = 70$ to $200\,\mathrm{m^2/day}$. The well is a dug well with a diameter of 1.8 m. The pump is placed in the well such that the head in the well cannot be drawn below elevation 157.0 m (the pump intake is at that elevation). Estimate the maximum discharge that can be sustained over a long time from this well.

The river constant head boundary can be approximated as the arc of a circle with its center 350 m from the river's edge. An image well will be placed so that it creates a constant head boundary on this circle. The distance of the image well from the center of the circle is found using Eq. 7.42:

$$\begin{aligned} d_2 &= R^2/d_1 \\ &= (350\,\mathrm{m})^2/250\,\mathrm{m} \\ &= 490\,\mathrm{m} \end{aligned}$$

Use the analytic solution for a well and its image with opposite discharge, Eq. 7.32. At the river at point A, the head according to this solution is

$$h_A = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln\frac{r_{1(A)}}{r_{2(A)}} + C$$

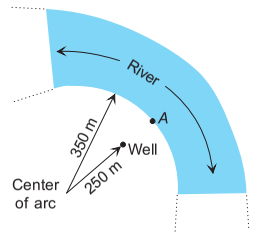


Figure 7.24 Well near a river for Example 7.6.

where $r_{1(A)}$ is the radial distance from the pumping well to point A and $r_{2(A)}$ is the radial distance from the image well to point A. We could have chosen any point on the river, but point A lies on the line from the center of the circle through the well and its image, making our calculations of radial distances easier. Likewise, the head at the outside radius of the pumping well is given as

$$h_w = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln\frac{r_{1(w)}}{r_{2(w)}} + C$$

where $r_{1(w)}$ is the radial distance from the centerline of the pumping well to its own outer wall (0.9 m) and $r_{2(w)}$ is the radial distance from the image well to the pumping well ($d_2 - d_1 = 240$ m). If we set the head at the well to the limiting value $h_w = 157.0$ m, then the two previous equations have only two unknowns, C and Q. By subtracting the two equations, we can isolate Q, which is the maximum possible discharge Q_{max}:

$$h_A - h_w = \frac{Q_{max}}{2\pi T}\left(\ln\frac{r_{1(A)}}{r_{2(A)}} - \ln\frac{r_{1(w)}}{r_{2(w)}}\right)$$

Solving for Q_{max} and inserting values gives

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{max} &= 2\pi T(h_A - h_w) \Big/ \ln\frac{r_{1(A)}r_{2(w)}}{r_{2(A)}r_{1(w)}} \\ &= 2\pi(70 \text{ to } 200\,\text{m}^2/\text{day})(162 - 157\text{ m}) \Big/ \ln\frac{(100)(240)}{(140)(0.9)} \\ &= 420 \text{ to } 1200\,\text{m}^3/\text{day} \end{aligned}$$

7.2.10 Analyzing the Long-Term Drawdown of Wells

The solutions described in the previous sections can be used to estimate the amount that heads will be drawn down (**drawdown**) due to the long-term pumping of wells. The amount of drawdown is essentially a function of the aquifer transmissivity and the configuration of boundary conditions in the vicinity of the well(s).

For this type of analysis, consider two states in the aquifer. The initial state is a steady flow condition without the well(s) pumping, and the final state is also steady but with the well pumping. Assume that there is some mathematical model of the initial condition $h_i = \ldots$ that is a solution of either the Laplace or Poisson equation. An appropriate model of the final condition would be

$$h_f = h_i + h_d \tag{7.43}$$

where h_d is a solution that includes the influence of the well(s) and meets the following conditions:

$$h_d = 0 \quad \text{(on constant head boundaries)} \tag{7.44}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial h_d}{\partial n} = 0 \quad \text{(on specified flux or no-flow boundaries)} \tag{7.45}$$

With h_d bound by these conditions, the solution h_f will meet the same boundary conditions that h_i meets. The drawdown produced by the well(s) is merely h_d. With this approach you can predict drawdown without ever having to define the initial model h_i or the final model h_f.

Example 7.7 Consider the case of a confined aquifer near a lake as illustrated in Figure 7.25. The aquifer is estimated to have transmissivity $T = 20\,\text{m}^2/\text{day}$. It is proposed to put in a 0.6 m diameter water supply well 90 m from the shoreline. Estimate the discharge this well could produce with a drawdown of 15 m.

Since the initial flow field h_0 does not need to be determined, the analysis can focus on h_d, which needs to model the radial flow to the well and maintain $h_d = 0$ on the lake. Since the shore is relatively straight, the image well solution for a long, straight constant head boundary would be appropriate (Eq. 7.32). The constant C in Eq. 7.32 needs to

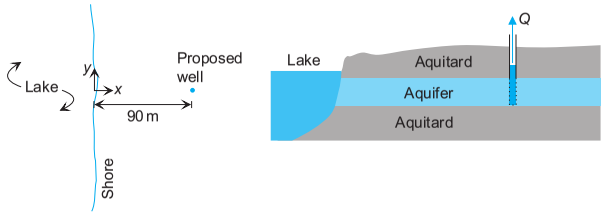


Figure 7.25 Well in a confined aquifer near a lake for Example 7.7. Plan view (left) and vertical cross-section along x axis (right).

be zero, in order that $h_d = 0$ on the constant head boundary of the shore:

$$h_d = \frac{Q}{2\pi T} \ln \frac{r_1}{r_2}$$

where r_1 is the radial distance from the real well to the point where h_d is evaluated and r_2 is the radial distance from the image well to the point where h_d is evaluated. The above equation can be solved for Q and evaluated at a point on the radius of the pumping well with a drawdown $h_d = -15$ m:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \frac{2\pi T h_d}{\ln(r_1/r_2)} \\ &= \frac{2\pi(20\,\mathrm{m}^2/\mathrm{day})(-15\,\mathrm{m})}{\ln(0.3/180)} \\ &= 295\,\mathrm{m}^3/\mathrm{day} \end{aligned}$$

Note that in the above equation, the discharge is directly proportional to T and to h_d at the well. In an aquifer with fixed T, this would be the case regardless of the geometry of the situation.

7.3 Vertical Plane Flow

There are cases where it is reasonable to assume that the flow is two-dimensional in the vertical plane. This is particularly common in the analysis of seepage through and under long engineered structures such as dams. In the case of flow through and under a long dam, it is often valid to assume that there is no flow parallel to the axis of the dam and that the components of flow are constrained to a vertical plane perpendicular to the axis of the dam.

The analysis is usually made of flow in a vertical slice in the x,z plane, which is one unit thick in the y direction. This vertical slice behaves just like a confined aquifer of unit thickness turned on its side. The "transmissivity" of this unit-thick aquifer on its side is $T = Kb = K(1) = K$. Following this analogy, Laplace's equation is the general equation for steady two-dimensional flow in a vertical plane:

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} = \nabla^2 h = 0 \tag{7.46}$$

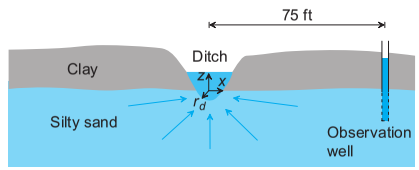


Figure 7.26 Ditch at the top of a confined aquifer with radial flow in the x,z plane (Example 7.8).

where the x axis is horizontal, the z axis is vertical, and the y axis is horizontal and normal to the plane of flow ($q_y = 0$). The solutions described for a confined aquifer apply directly to flow in the vertical plane.

Uniform flow is represented by the following equation:

$$h = Ax + Bz + C \tag{7.47}$$

where A, B, and C are constants. The constants A and B are the hydraulic gradients in the x and z directions, respectively.

A solution for radial flow can be used to represent a long, horizontal drain parallel to the y direction (see Figure 7.26, for example). This solution is similar to the radial flow solution for an aquifer with constant T, except that T is replaced by K:

$$h = \frac{Q}{2\pi K} \ln r + C, \quad r = \sqrt{(x - x_1)^2 + (z - z_1)^2} \tag{7.48}$$

where Q is the discharge per unit length of the drain in the y direction, the coordinates of the center of the drain are (x_1, z_1), and the point where h is evaluated is (x,z).

Example 7.8 There is a long ditch dug through a confining clay layer into the top of a thick silty sand aquifer as sketched in Figure 7.26. The water level in an observation well 75 ft (22.9 m) from the ditch is $h_o = 124.5$ ft (37.95 m), and the water level in the ditch is $h_d = 121.2$ ft (36.94 m). The seepage up into the ditch is 20 gallons/day (75.7 L/day) per foot (0.305 m) of ditch in the y direction. The ditch bottom is in direct contact with the silty sand, and the part that penetrates the silty sand can be approximated as a half-cylinder with radius $r_d = 2.0$ ft (0.61 m). Determine a mathematical model of flow for the silty sand layer, and estimate the K of the silty sand aquifer. Assume that the sand is isotropic and that the flow is radially symmetric about the centerline of the ditch ($x = z = 0$; see Figure 7.26).

The flow in the aquifer is approximately radial towards the semicircular base of the ditch. We can use the radial flow solution, Eq. 7.48, with the center of the drain located at the origin of coordinates at the centerline of the ditch even with the top of the sand. This solution will simulate radial flow towards the ditch and preserve the no-flow boundary at the top of the silty sand. The two unknowns in this solution are K and C, which can be determined by using known heads at the ditch and at the observation well:

$$h_d = \frac{Q}{2\pi K}\ln r_d + C$$

$$h_o = \frac{Q}{2\pi K}\ln r_o + C$$

where r_d is the radial distance from the origin to the ditch bottom and r_o is the radial distance from the origin to the observation well. Subtracting the head at the ditch h_d from the head at the observation well h_o eliminates the variable C:

$$h_o - h_d = \frac{Q}{2\pi K}\ln\frac{r_o}{r_d}$$

Solving for K and substituting $Q = 20$ gallons/day $= 2.67\ \text{ft}^3/\text{day}$ and other known values gives

$$K = \frac{Q}{2\pi(h_o - h_d)}\ln\frac{r_o}{r_d}$$

$$= \frac{2.67\ \text{ft}^3/\text{day}}{2\pi(124.5 - 121.2\ \text{ft})}\ln\frac{75}{2}$$

$$= 0.47\ \text{ft/day}\ (0.14\ \text{m/day})$$

The solutions of Eqs. 7.47 and 7.48 can be applied to a fairly limited set of situations involving vertical plane flow. Vertical plane flow problems often arise with long engineered structures like dams and dikes, which have complicated geometry and often zones of differing K. The complexity of flow in these situations generally precludes analysis with these simple analytic solutions. However, in many instances, vertical plane flow problems may be solved quickly using a graphical technique known as a flow net, which is the subject of the next section.

7.4 Flow Net Graphical Solutions

A **flow net** is a simple, flexible graphical technique for estimating the distribution of heads, discharges, and the streamlines in steady two-dimensional flow. Without much equipment (pencil, paper, brains, and patience) you can analyze many complicated flow problems.

An example flow net is illustrated in Figure 7.27. There are two sets of curves in a flow net: curves along lines of constant head and curves along streamlines. These two sets of curves are related in interesting ways. They are mutually perpendicular where they intersect, and they form boxes that are roughly square. These geometric properties make it possible for an experienced artist/scientist to draw reasonably accurate flow nets by hand, and then use the result to analyze the distribution of heads, pressures, discharges, and flow paths. This section introduces the basics of flow net theory and use. The reader is referred to Cedergren (1989), which is a classic reference about flow nets and their construction.

The general rules for flow net construction are listed below.

1. Flow nets apply only to two-dimensional steady flow in a homogeneous domain where the Laplace equation governs. Flow nets are generally used for vertical plane flow, or for flow in a regional confined aquifer with zero net recharge/leakage.

2. The conductivity K is assumed to be isotropic. However, there is a technique for constructing flow nets for anisotropic aquifers that involves a coordinate transformation to an equivalent isotropic domain (more on that in Section 7.4.4).

3. Streamlines are perpendicular to lines of constant head.

4. Streamlines and constant head lines intersect to form approximate squares. Although the boxes in a flow net are not perfect squares, they are

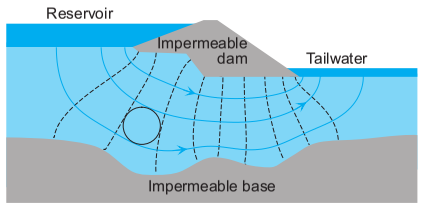


Figure 7.27 Flow net for flow under an impermeable dam, with an irregular impermeable aquifer base. Lines of constant head are dashed; streamlines are blue. A circle is inscribed in one box to demonstrate proper "squareness."

approximately square. A circle inscribed into one box of a flow net should just graze all four sides (Figure 7.27).

5. The discharge [L^3/T] through each stream tube (a channel bounded by two adjacent streamlines) is the same throughout the flow net.

6. The head difference between adjacent constant head lines is the same throughout the flow net.

The mathematical basis for flow nets lies in the unique properties of solutions to the Laplace equation. Solutions of the Laplace equation are called *harmonic functions*. For each harmonic function $h(x,y)$, there is a corresponding function $\psi(x,y)$, known as the conjugate harmonic function of h. $\psi(x,y)$ is also a solution of Laplace's equation. For groundwater flow nets, ψ is typically called the stream function. A harmonic function and its conjugate harmonic function are related in a unique way: the gradients of h and ψ are normal to each other and of the same magnitude. Hence a proper flow net forms approximate squares. For more detail on harmonic functions, consult a complex variables text such as the one by Mathews and Howell (1996).

7.4.1 Boundary Conditions

The two most basic types of boundary conditions in flow nets are constant head boundaries and no-flow boundaries. Constant head boundaries occur along the boundary of water bodies like lakes or reservoirs. The reservoir and tailwater boundaries in Figure 7.27 are both constant head boundaries. In a flow net, a constant head boundary has a line of constant head along it and streamlines are perpendicular to it. No-flow boundaries occur at the interface between the aquifer and materials with markedly lower K. A no-flow boundary is a streamline and constant head lines are perpendicular to it. In Figure 7.27, the base of the dam and the base of the aquifer both are no-flow boundaries.

For flow nets in the vertical x,z plane, two additional types of boundaries are common: water tables and seepage faces. Water table and seepage face boundary conditions are illustrated in Figure 7.28. A seepage face is where groundwater exits directly at the ground surface. At both the water table and a seepage face, the pressure is atmospheric ($P=0$) so the head equals the elevation:

$$h = z \quad \text{(water table or seepage face)} \tag{7.49}$$

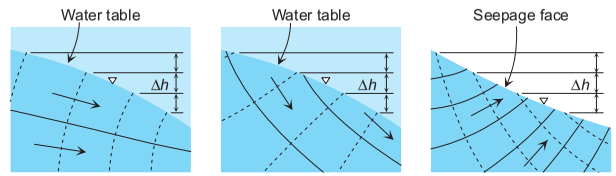


Figure 7.28 Vertical cross-sections illustrating the boundary conditions at the water table and at a seepage face. Lines of constant head are dotted and streamlines are solid. The water table is a streamline if there is no recharge (left), but it is not a streamline when there is recharge (middle). A seepage face (right) is not a streamline, nor is it a line of constant head.

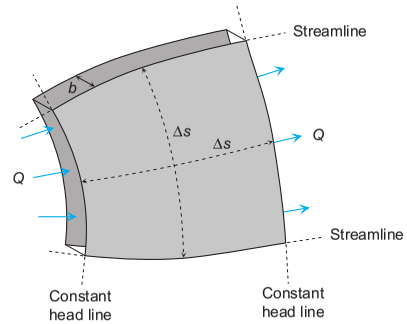


Figure 7.29 Flow through one square of a flow net.

If there is no recharge at the water table, it is also a streamline. If there is recharge, there is flux across the water table and it is not a streamline. Where groundwater seeps to the ground surface at a seepage face, the pressure is atmospheric and the head equals the elevation, just like at the water table. There is flux across a seepage face, so it is not a streamline.

7.4.2 Discharges

Consider the rate of flow through one square of a flow net, where the square has approximate dimensions $\Delta s \times \Delta s$ as shown in Figure 7.29. The magnitude of discharge through this square is given by Darcy's law as

$$|\Delta Q| = Kb\Delta s \frac{|\Delta h_s|}{\Delta s}$$

$$|\Delta Q| = Kb|\Delta h_s| \tag{7.50}$$

where b is the saturated thickness normal to the plane of the flow net, $b\Delta s$ is the cross-sectional area that the flow Q goes through, and $|\Delta h_s|$ is the magnitude of head difference between adjacent constant head lines in the flow net. For a vertical plane flow net such as would be used to estimate seepage through a long dam, b equals the length of the dam. Sometimes b is set equal to one, and the discharge Q represents the flow through a slice of the dam that is one unit thick in the y direction (the discharge per unit length of dam). For a flow net in the horizontal plane of an aquifer, b represents the saturated thickness and $Kb = T$ is the transmissivity.

The magnitude of the head difference across one square is

$$|\Delta h_s| = \frac{|\Delta h_t|}{n_h} \tag{7.51}$$

where $|\Delta h_t|$ is the total change in head across the flow net and n_h is the number of head drops between constant head lines across the flow net. For example, the flow net of Figure 7.27 has 10 head drops ($n_h = 10$) from the reservoir to the tailwater. Substituting Eq. 7.51 into Eq. 7.50 gives

$$|\Delta Q| = Kb\frac{|\Delta h_t|}{n_h} \tag{7.52}$$

For a given flow net, the discharge through each whole stream tube is the same, regardless of location within the flow net. Therefore, small squares in a flow net are areas of high velocities and specific discharges and large squares are areas of low velocities and specific discharges. The magnitude of the total discharge in a flow net is the sum of the discharges of all the stream tubes and is given by

$$\begin{aligned} |Q| &= |\Delta Q| n_s \\ &= Kb|\Delta h_t|\frac{n_s}{n_h} \end{aligned} \tag{7.53}$$

where n_s is the number of stream tubes in the flow net. For example, in the flow net of Figure 7.27, there are about 3.5 stream tubes ($n_s = 3.5$). The lowest stream tube that flows along the base of the aquifer is approximately half of a stream tube, since the aspect ratio of all the boxes in that stream tube is about 1/2.

7.4.3 How to Draw Flow Nets

Drawing flow nets quickly and reasonably accurately takes some experience. Even the experienced flow net artist creates one with a process involving many iterations. The steps outlined below, in my experience, help minimize the amount of time it takes to draw a reasonably good flow net.

1. Always draw in pencil. Erasing is part of the process.
2. Have a scaled drawing of the flow domain so the whole domain fits on a regular sheet of paper.
3. Examine the problem and assign boundary conditions.
4. Sketch in a few streamlines or head drops, only enough so that the total number of boxes in the flow net will be about 10. Finer subdivision at this point will only lead to more wear on your eraser.
5. Starting at one corner of the flow net, create constant head lines and streamlines that will form approximate squares. As you draw a new box, check that it is approximately square by inscribing a circle in it; the circle should just graze all sides of the box. Continue drawing lines and boxes, sweeping across the flow net from your first box.
6. As you work though the previous step, you will find that several trials are required to keep the boxes approximately square and meeting boundary conditions. Keep erasing and redrawing the lines until the flow net obeys the rules throughout.
7. Once you have a flow net that looks proper with only about 10 boxes, you can refine the flow net by subdividing each box. Draw bisecting lines through each box, quadrupling the number of boxes. Adjust the lines as necessary to make the new smaller boxes obey the rules.
8. The last row of boxes that is drawn will not necessarily be square. Instead of forming approximate squares, this row may form approximate rectangles, but all boxes in this row should be of equal aspect ratio. For example, in the flow net of Figure 7.27, the lowest stream tube is formed of boxes that have an aspect ratio of about 1/2, and $n_s = 3.5$. Depending on how you draw the flow net it may contain a partial stream tube (n_s is noninteger) or a partial head drop (n_h is noninteger).

There is a point of diminishing returns when refining a flow net. You could spend two hours trying to make a "perfect" flow net, and in the last hour and

half of that two hours you might have improved the accuracy of the result by a mere few percent. Even a fairly crude flow net will give estimates of n_s/n_h that are within 10–20% of the exact result. It is not usually necessary to subdivide the flow net into more than 10–20 boxes total to get a result that will provide reasonable estimates of discharges. The uncertainty in the K or T value used in the discharge calculation is usually greater than the uncertainty in the value of n_s/n_h that results from a flow net.

7.4.4 Anisotropic Systems

The flow net is a valid analysis only when the general equation of flow is the two-dimensional Laplace equation. When the hydraulic conductivity is homogeneous but anisotropic, the steady-state distribution of head is not governed by the Laplace equation but is instead governed by this partial differential equation (see Eq. 6.48):

$$K_x \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + K_z \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{7.54}$$

This was written for two-dimensional flow in the vertical x, z plane, but it could also have been written for flow in the horizontal x, y plane.

With the appropriate coordinate transformation, an anisotropic problem can be made into one that is governed by the Laplace equation and amenable to the flow net technique. The transformed X, Z coordinate system is related to the real x, z coordinates by

$$X = x$$
$$Z = z\sqrt{\frac{K_x}{K_z}} \tag{7.55}$$

With these definitions, the spatial partial derivatives are related as

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial X} \tag{7.56}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial z} = \sqrt{\frac{K_x}{K_z}} \frac{\partial}{\partial Z} \tag{7.57}$$

Substituting the above relations into Eq. 7.54 gives the general flow equation in terms of the transformed coordinates,

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial X^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial Z^2} = \nabla^2 h = 0 \tag{7.58}$$

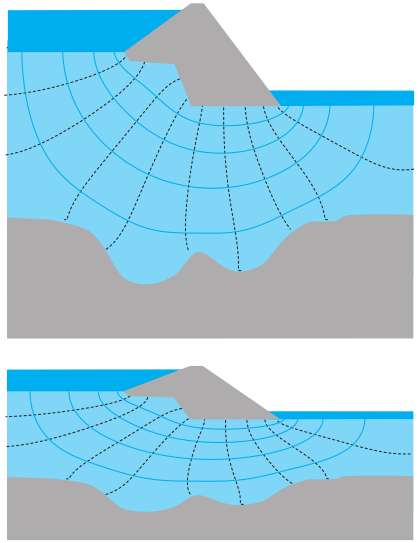


Figure 7.30 Flow net for the situation of Figure 7.27, but with $K_x = 4K_z$. The flow net is drawn in the stretched coordinates of the X, Z domain, where $Z = z\sqrt{K_x/K_z} = z(2)$ (top). When the flow net is transformed back to the real x, z coordinates (bottom), the boxes are not square and the intersections are not right angles.

which is Laplace's equation. The domain, when plotted in the X, Z coordinates, is an equivalent isotropic domain that can be analyzed with the flow net technique. Figure 7.30 illustrates the development of a flow net for an anisotropic system. The flow net is drawn in the transformed X, Z section, where the standard rules for flow nets apply. The resulting flow net can then be rescaled into the real x, z coordinates as shown. In the x, z plane, the flow net no longer looks like a proper flow net: streamlines and constant head lines may intersect at non-right angles and the boxes are stretched in the higher K direction.

The book website has two AnAqSimEDU models of the sub-dam problems illustrated in this section: file DamFlowNet.anaq is the isotropic situation shown in Figure 7.27, and DamFlowNetAniso.anaq is the anisotropic situation shown in Figure 7.30. It is interesting to open, solve, and plot these models and to examine the distibution of velocities. Velocities are highest just under the dam at convex corners, and lowest away from the dam and near the base of the aquifer (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

For calculations of discharge, the equivalent isotropic hydraulic conductivity $K_X = K_Z$ must be chosen so that discharges in the X, Z domain are equivalent to those in the real x, z domain. To do this, consider a square of

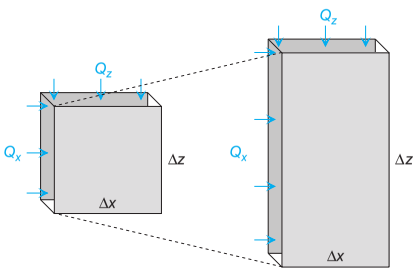


Figure 7.31 A square in the real x, y domain (left) is transformed to a rectangle in the X, Y domain. The equivalent isotropic conductivity of the transformed domain is chosen so that $Q_x = Q_X$ and $Q_z = Q_Z$.

dimensions $dx = dz$ in the real domain and the transformed box of dimensions $dX \times dZ$ in the transformed domain (Figure 7.31). The discharge through the real box in the x direction is given by Darcy's law as

$$Q_x = -K_x b \Delta z \frac{\Delta h}{\Delta x} \tag{7.59}$$

where b is the thickness of the box in the y direction normal to the plane of flow. Likewise, the X-direction discharge through the transformed box is

$$Q_X = -K_X b \Delta Z \frac{\Delta h}{\Delta X} \tag{7.60}$$

Setting the two previous equations equal and solving for K_X results in

$$K_X = K_x \frac{\Delta z}{\Delta Z} = \sqrt{K_x K_z} \tag{7.61}$$

Looking at the z- and Z-direction discharges with Darcy's law results in

$$Q_z = -K_z b \Delta x \frac{\Delta h}{\Delta z} \tag{7.62}$$

and

$$Q_Z = -K_Z b \Delta X \frac{\Delta h}{\Delta Z} \tag{7.63}$$

Setting these two equations equal and solving for K_Z results in

$$K_Z = K_z \frac{\Delta Z}{\Delta z} = \sqrt{K_x K_z} \tag{7.64}$$

Analysis of discharges in both directions leads to the same definition of the equivalent isotropic conductivity, as it should:

$$K_X = K_Z = \sqrt{K_x K_z} \tag{7.65}$$

Analysis of horizontal flow with anisotropy is the same as for vertical plane flow, except that the scaling of the X, Y coordinate system is based on transmissivities instead of conductivities:

$$X = x$$
$$Y = y\sqrt{\frac{T_x}{T_y}} \tag{7.66}$$

and the equivalent isotropic transmissivity is

$$T_X = T_Y = \sqrt{T_x T_y} \tag{7.67}$$

To summarize, the steps for using flow nets to analyze anisotropic domains are listed below.

1. Draw the flow domain in the transformed X, Z or X, Y coordinate system.
2. Draw the flow net.
3. Calculate discharges using n_s and n_h from the flow net and the equivalent isotropic K or T.
4. If desired, transform the flow net plot back to the x, z or x, y coordinate system.

Example 7.9 Refer to Figure 7.30 for this problem. The hydraulic conductivities of the layer under the dam are $K_x = 0.032$ m/day and $K_z = 0.008$ m/day. The dam is 620 m long, and the head drop from reservoir to tailwater is 25 m. Estimate the rate of leakage under the dam.

First, calculate the equivalent isotropic conductivity to use with the flow net in the X, Z coordinate system:

$$K_X = K_Z = \sqrt{K_x K_z}$$
$$= 0.016 \text{ m/day}$$

In the flow net of Figure 7.30 there are $n_s \simeq 4.6$ stream tubes and $n_h = 10$ head drops. The total discharge through the flow net, based on Eq. 7.53, is

$$|Q| = Kb|\Delta h_t|\frac{n_s}{n_h}$$
$$= (0.016\ \text{m/day})(620\ \text{m})(25\ \text{m})\frac{4.6}{10}$$
$$= 114\ \text{m}^3/\text{day}$$

7.4.5 Deciding Whether to Use a One-, Two-, or Three-Dimensional Model

In flow modeling, it is often reasonable to neglect the resistance to flow in one or two directions, reducing the dimensions of the problem from three to two or one. The coordinate transformation we used to create an anisotropic flow net can also be used to help decide if reducing the problem dimensions is reasonable.

To see how this works, consider the situation illustrated in Figure 7.32. There is a sandstone aquifer that is tapped by a water supply well, screened only in the lower portion of the aquifer. It is near a river boundary, as illustrated. If you had to make a flow model of this situation, you would have to decide whether to use a three-dimensional model or a two-dimensional model that makes the Dupuit–Forchheimer approximation, neglecting the resistance to vertical flow.

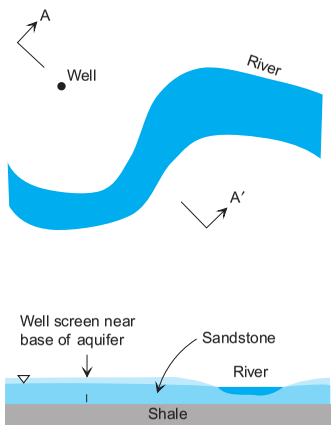


Figure 7.32 Map view (top) and vertical cross-section view (bottom) of a well near a river. The cross-section is drawn true to scale, with the same scale in the vertical and horizontal directions.

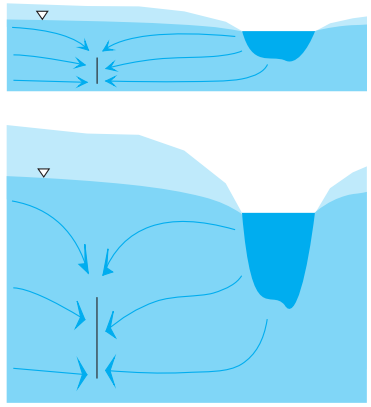


Figure 7.33 Transformed vertical cross-sections of the sandstone aquifer for $K_x/K_z = 10$ (top) and $K_x/K_z = 100$ (bottom).

The true-scale vertical cross-section shown in Figure 7.32 shows that between the well and the river, most of the flow paths would be horizontal. Therefore, we can reasonably neglect the resistance to vertical flow, right? Not necessarily. If there is substantial anisotropy, as is the case in most sedimentary aquifers, we need to look at flow paths in a vertical cross-section that is transformed to an equivalent isotropic X, Z coordinate system, as discussed in Section 7.4.4.

Figure 7.33 shows how the vertical cross-section would look in equivalent isotropic X, Z coordinates, for $K_x/K_z = 10$ and $K_x/K_z = 100$. In both sections, the Z coordinate is scaled by $\sqrt{K_x/K_z}$ in accordance with Eq. 7.55. You can see that the resistance to vertical flow becomes more important as K_x/K_z increases. If the anisotropy of the aquifer is $K_x/K_z = 100$, a two-dimensional model neglects a significant fraction of the total resistance along a flow path from the river to the well; a three-dimensional model that accounts for the resistance to vertical flow would give more realistic results.

Looking at pathlines in a transformed section like those shown in Figure 7.33 gives a qualitative assessment of the impact of the Dupuit–Forchheimer approximation. The only way to quantify the impact is to compare the results of models done with and without the approximation (for example, a two-dimensional vs. a three-dimensional model).

7.5 Unconfined Aquifers with a Horizontal Base

In unconfined aquifers, the transmissivity T varies due to variations in saturated thickness and horizontal K. Some unconfined aquifers have approximately constant T despite an irregular base or irregular saturated thickness; in such cases, the solutions of the previous section may be used to model horizontal flow.

As an alternative to the constant T approximation, you can approximate the aquifer as having a horizontal base and a homogeneous horizontal K over the saturated thickness of the aquifer. With these assumptions, the general equations for steady unconfined aquifer flow are Eqs. 6.72 and 6.73. These two equations are the Poisson and Laplace equations, respectively. Both are written in terms of the variable h^2, where h is measured from the base of the aquifer. This approach is particularly useful for analyzing flow where the saturated thickness changes greatly but the base of the aquifer is approximately horizontal. These circumstances often occur near discharging features like streams or pumping wells, for example. Some of the simplest of these solutions are presented in the following sections.

7.5.1 Solutions for Uniform Flow, Radial Flow, and Uniform Recharge

The solutions presented here are given without derivation, since their development is directly analogous to the solutions for aquifers with uniform T, which have been presented in detail in previous sections. A solution of Eq. 6.73 representing uniform flow is

$$h^2 = Ax + By + C \tag{7.68}$$

where A, B, and C are constants.

Using the chain rule to differentiate with respect to x yields the component of the hydraulic gradient in the x direction,

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial h}{\partial (h^2)} \frac{\partial (h^2)}{\partial x} = \frac{A}{2h} \tag{7.69}$$

Similarly, the y component of the hydraulic gradient for this solution is

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial y} = \frac{B}{2h} \tag{7.70}$$

The uniform flow solution creates a head surface that is parabolic. As the head and saturated thickness get small, the gradient must get large in order to conduct the uniform flow.

Example 7.10 Consider the unconfined aquifer located near a lakeshore, as shown in Figure 7.34. The head at the lake is $h_l = 10.0$ ft (3.05 m) and the head at the observation well is $h_w = 20.0$ ft (6.10 m). Assuming that recharge is negligible and that flow is parallel to the x direction, define a mathematical model of $h(x)$ and find h at $x = 250$ ft (76.2 m), halfway from the shore to the well.

The flow is parallel to the x axis, so head will be independent of y and the uniform flow model will be

$$h^2 = Ax + C$$

The two unknown constants A and C can be found using the known heads at the lake and the observation well. At the lake, $x = 0$ and the model becomes

$$h_l^2 = C$$

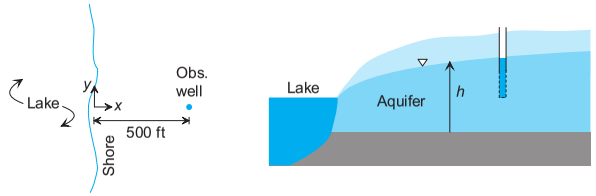


Figure 7.34 Unconfined aquifer near a lakeshore with an observation well (Example 7.10).

Therefore $C = 10^2 = 100\ \text{ft}^2$. At the observation well,

$$h_w^2 = Ax_w + C$$

which can be rearranged to solve for A:

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \frac{h_w^2 - C}{x_w} \\ &= \frac{20^2 - 100\ \text{ft}^2}{500\ \text{ft}} \\ &= 0.6\ \text{ft} \end{aligned}$$

With A and C known, the solution can be applied to find h^2 at $x = 250$:

$$\begin{aligned} h^2 &= 0.6(250) + 100 \\ &= 250\ \text{ft}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Taking the square root gives $h = 15.8$ ft (4.82 m).

The solution for radial flow to a well in an unconfined aquifer is derived in an analogous manner to the derivation of the radial flow solution for constant T aquifers, Eq. 7.6. The resulting radially symmetric solution is

$$h^2 = \frac{Q}{\pi K} \ln r + C \tag{7.71}$$

where Q is the well discharge, C is a constant, and r is the radial distance from the center of the well to the point where h^2 is evaluated. The discharge Q is positive for wells that extract water from the aquifer and negative for wells that inject water. Equation 7.71 is a solution of Laplace's equation, Eq. 6.73.

A general solution of Poisson's equation for constant recharge/leakage N over the entire x, y plane is

$$h^2 = -\frac{N}{K}(Dx^2 + (1 - D)y^2) + C \tag{7.72}$$

where D and C are constants, with the restriction that $0 \le D \le 1$. The recharge/leakage N is positive for flux into the aquifer. If you perform the differentiations on this solution, you can prove that it is a solution of Poisson's equation, Eq. 6.72. If $D = 1$, the recharge flows in the x direction only, away from a central ridge on the y axis. If $D = 0$, the recharge flows only in the y direction, with a central ridge on the x axis. When $D = \frac{1}{2}$, there is radial symmetry and recharge flows off to infinity in all directions from a circular mound at the origin. The solution in this case is written as a function of $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$:

$$h^2 = -\frac{N}{2K} r^2 + C \tag{7.73}$$

When $D \neq 0$ and $D \neq 1$, the recharge flows off to infinity in a way that produces an elliptical mound centered at the origin. The ratio of the axes of the ellipse $(\Delta y / \Delta x)$ is given by $\sqrt{D/(1-D)}$. The shape of the head surface for these solutions is similar to the contour plots shown in Figure 7.6.

Example 7.11 There is a long strip of land between two parallel irrigation canals, as shown in Figure 7.35. The head in both canals is 5.0 m above the aquifer base. The head in the aquifer midway between the canals is 12.3 m above the base. The estimated recharge rate to this aquifer is 0.35 m/yr = 0.0010 m/day. Estimate the horizontal K of the aquifer.

With this problem, assume that there is a long ridge in the water table that runs parallel to the canals. If we put the y axis midway between the canals and parallel to the canals, the canals will be at $x = \pm 400$ m and the highest part of the ridge will be midway between the canals at $x = 0$. Setting $D = 1$ in Eq. 7.72, the solution for this situation is

$$h^2 = -\frac{N}{K} x^2 + C$$

The unknowns are K and C in this equation, and we will use the heads at the canals and at the midpoint to solve for K. Midway between the canals, $x = 0$ and $h = 12.3$ m, and the solution there is

$$h^2 = (12.3\ \text{m})^2 = C$$

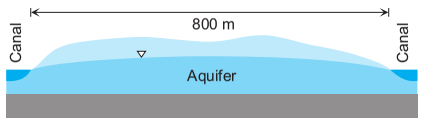


Figure 7.35 Unconfined aquifer between two parallel canals (Example 7.11).

At the canals, $x_c = \pm 400$ m, and $h_c = 5.0$ m, so the solution there is

$$h_c^2 = -\frac{N}{K} x_c^2 + C$$

Solving this equation for K gives

$$\begin{aligned} K &= -\frac{N}{h_c^2 - C} x_c^2 \\ &= -\frac{0.001 \text{ m/day}}{(5 \text{ m})^2 - (12.3 \text{ m})^2} (400 \text{ m})^2 \\ &= 1.3 \text{ m/day} \end{aligned}$$

7.5.2 Superposition and Imaging

The general equations 6.72 and 6.73 for h^2 are linear, so solutions of these equations may be superposed, so long as the solutions that are summed are written in terms of $h^2 = f(x, y)$. For example, the solution for two wells in a uniform flow field would be

$$h^2 = \frac{Q_1}{\pi K} \ln r_1 + \frac{Q_2}{\pi K} \ln r_2 + Ax + By + C \tag{7.74}$$

where Q_1 and Q_2 are the discharges of the wells and r_1 and r_2 are the radial distances from the wells to the point where h^2 is evaluated.

The concept of using image wells to model long, straight boundaries or circular boundaries works with these solutions for unconfined aquifers in just the same way as it worked with the solutions for aquifers with constant T. For example, a well near a no-flow boundary could be modeled with

$$h^2 = \frac{Q}{\pi K} \ln(r_1 r_2) + C \tag{7.75}$$

where the problem geometry is as described by Figure 7.20.

Example 7.12 Consider a roughly circular island in a lake (Figure 7.36). The island has a radius of $R = 110$ m. The island is underlain by an unconfined sand aquifer with an impermeable base at about elevation 285.0 m. The average lake level is $h_l = 289.0$ m. The average recharge rate is estimated to be $N = 0.0016$ m/day, and the hydraulic conductivity of the sand is estimated to be $K = 1.0$ m/day. Define a mathematical model for flow on the island, assuming a well at the center of the island pumps a quarter of the recharge that falls on the island. Using the model, predict head at the following radial distances from the well: $r = 5$, 10, 30, 50, 70, 90, and 110 m. Use the model to predict the radius inside of which the recharge flows to the well and outside of which the recharge flows to the lakeshore. Use the model to estimate the minimum diameter of the well, assuming that the head at the well radius is 1 m above the base of the aquifer.

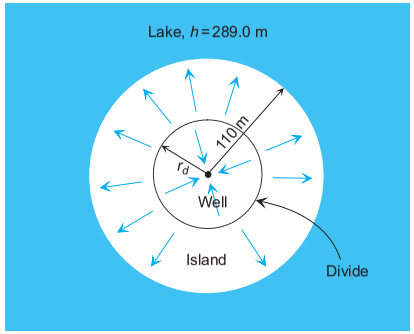


Figure 7.36 Plan view of a circular island in a lake, with a well at the center of the island (Example 7.12). Inside of radial distance r_d, all recharge flows to the well. Outside r_d, all recharge flows to the lake.

This problem has approximate radial symmetry, and the solution needs to account for recharge and the flow to the well. An appropriate mathematical model would superpose the radial flow solution and the constant recharge solution with radial symmetry:

$$h^2 = -\frac{N}{2K} r^2 + \frac{Q}{\pi K} \ln r + C$$

where $r = 0$ at the center of the island where the well is. The recharge over the entire island is $\pi R^2 N = 60.8 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$. The well pumps a quarter of this, so $Q = 15.2 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$. The constant C in the solution is unknown, but it can be determined by applying the known head boundary condition at the lakeshore:

$$h_l^2 = -\frac{N}{2K} R^2 + \frac{Q}{\pi K} \ln R + C$$

Table 7.1 Head vs. Radial Distance

r	5	10	30	50	70	90	110
h^2	10.7	14.0	18.7	19.9	19.6	18.2	16.0
h	3.3	3.7	4.3	4.5	4.4	4.3	4.0

Solving this for C gives

$$\begin{aligned} C &= h_l^2 + \frac{N}{2K}R^2 - \frac{Q}{\pi K}\ln R \\ &= (4\text{ m})^2 + \frac{0.0016\text{ m/day}}{2(1\text{ m/day})}(110\text{ m})^2 - \frac{15.2\text{ m}^3/\text{day}}{\pi(1\text{ m/day})}\ln(110\text{ m}) \\ &= 2.94\text{ m}^2 \end{aligned}$$

With this value of C, the model predicts the values of h shown in Table 7.1.

Note that the h values in this model are all relative to a local datum at the base of the aquifer. To convert to the regional datum, add the elevation of the base of the aquifer (285.0 m).

At the dividing radial distance r_d, the gradient in the r direction will be zero: $d(h^2)/dr = 0$. Differentiate the solution to solve for r_d:

$$\frac{d}{dr}(h^2) = -\frac{N}{K}r + \frac{Q}{\pi K}\frac{1}{r}$$

Setting this equation equal to zero at $r = r_d$ yields

$$\begin{aligned} r_d &= \sqrt{\frac{Q}{\pi N}} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{15.6\text{ m}^3/\text{day}}{\pi(0.0016\text{ m/day})}} \\ &= 55\text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

The answer can also be achieved through a simple water balance. The well discharge is 1/4 of the total recharge on the island, and 1/4 of the area of the island (and thus 1/4 of the recharge) lies inside of $r = 55$ m.

To estimate the well radius, iteratively insert various r values into the solution to determine what r results in $h^2 = 1$ (a spreadsheet makes quick work of this). The radial distance where $h = 1$ m is approximately $r = 0.67$ m. A well much smaller than this would dry up if it were pumped at this rate.

7.6 Problems

Answers are given at the back of the book for starred (*) problems.

1. *A well pumps at a steady rate of 600 m^3/day in a confined aquifer. It is installed with a gravel pack in a hole that is 30 cm in diameter. The head in the pumping well is 427.9 m. The head in an observation well located 8 m away is 430.2 m. Calculate the transmissivity of the aquifer, assuming steady, radial flow.

2. A well is pumping at an unknown, steady rate in a confined aquifer. Near the pumping well are two observation wells; observation well A is located 8 m from the pumping well and B is located 24 m from the pumping well. The heads in these wells are $h_A = 134.20$ and $h_B = 134.28$ m. You know from prior pumping tests of the well that the well and the observation wells are screened in a confined aquifer with transmissivity $T = 1200\text{ m}^2/\text{day}$. Assuming that without the well pumping there would be no hydraulic gradient at all, what is the pumping rate of the well?

3. *Figure 7.37 illustrates a cross-section through an unconfined aquifer with two parallel irrigation ditches that have the same water level. There is some recharge in the top and some leakage out the base of the aquifer, and the flow is steady state. Assume that the ditches are long and parallel and that the aquifer has an average transmissivity of $T = 35\text{ ft}^2/\text{day}$ (3.25 m^2/day). Given that the ditches are 250 ft (76.2 m) apart and the head in the middle is 1.4 ft (0.427 m) lower than the head at each ditch, estimate the net rate of vertical recharge/leakage assuming it is constant over this area.

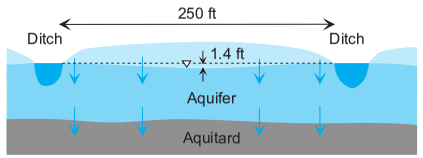


Figure 7.37 Vertical section through unconfined aquifer with two irrigation ditches (Problem 3).

9

Computer-Assisted Flow Modeling

Key Terms

finite difference method	361	analytic element	384
discretized	361	parameterization	404
basis function	379	Calibration	404
analytic element method	384	objective function	408

Contents

9.1	Introduction	359
9.2	Finite Difference Method	360
9.3	Finite Element Method	374
9.4	Analytic Element Method	384
9.5	Strengths and Limitations of These Methods	400
9.6	Modeling Process	403
9.7	Problems	413

9.1 Introduction

As discussed in Section 6.10, the modeling process begins with developing a conceptual model that is simpler than reality, and then a mathematical model is constructed to simulate the conceptual model. If the conceptual model is simple enough, the corresponding mathematical model may be solved using hand calculations like those introduced in the preceding chapters. With more complex conceptual systems, more complex mathematical models are required. For such problems, the only practical approach is to use a computer program to do the computations for you.

Before computers were commonplace and inexpensive, complex groundwater flow problems were modeled using physical models or analogs. The physical model would be a miniature scaled model of the flow domain in a tank. The most common analog method uses the flow of electricity through a network of wires and resistors, where voltage is analogous to head, resistance is analogous to $1/K$ or $1/T$, current is analogous to discharge, and capacitance is analogous to storage. Computer simulation methods have essentially replaced physical and analog modeling, so these methods are not discussed in any further detail. The interested reader will find more detailed coverage of analog methods in Walton (1970) and other textbooks of that vintage.

Groundwater Science, Second Edition. DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-384705-8.00009-1
© 2013, 2002 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

At present, most computer programs for groundwater flow modeling are based on one of three methods: finite differences, finite elements, or analytic elements. A fourth less common method, the boundary equation method (BEM), shares much with the analytic element method, but it is not discussed here. Interested readers are referred to Beer et al. (2008) and Liggett and Liu (1983) for more on the BEM. Each method has its particular strengths and weaknesses and no one method is the right tool for every problem. The following sections outline the essentials of each method.

The book website has video content showing three-dimensional animations of a variety of groundwater simulation results. These include advection of water particles toward a well, flow pathlines colored by velocity converging on a well, capture zones of several wells in a well field traced by pathlines, solute transport through heterogeneous aquifers with channels, and the fresh water lens in a coastal unconfined aquifer. The website also gives you access to the free aquifer modeling software AnAqSimEDU (analytic aquifer simulator, educational version). AnAqSimEDU allows modeling of steady flow in confined and unconfined aquifers, with anisotropy, heterogeneity, wells, line boundaries, and recharge. Some examples and end-of-chapter problems make use of AnAqSimEDU (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

9.2 Finite Difference Method

The finite difference method (FDM) is a numerical method that is quite versatile, relatively simple, and currently the most widely used method for groundwater flow modeling. The current standard FDM program is MODFLOW, a FORTRAN program developed by the U.S. Geological Survey for three-dimensional flow modeling. It was first released in the 1980s (McDonald and Harbaugh, 1988) and has been continually updated and added to since. At this writing, the current version is MODFLOW-2005 (Harbaugh, 2005).

MODFLOW gained broad acceptance because it is versatile, well tested, well documented, and in the public domain. The formatted text input and output files associated with MODFLOW are cumbersome, but a host of graphical user interface programs are available to shield the user from these details and makes using MODFLOW fairly user-friendly.

MODFLOW was programmed in a modular way, so that additional capabilities could be added over time. Each module is called a *package* and MODFLOW-2005 includes a great number of packages. The most commonly used packages are for simulating pumping wells, recharge, evapotranspiration,

drains, seepage through riverbeds, barriers to flow, coupled stream flows, coupled lake levels, and land subsidence. The modeled domain can be three-dimensional, heterogeneous, and anisotropic. Boundaries of the modeled domain can be head-specified, discharge-specified, or a third type of boundary condition where the discharge is head-dependent. MODFLOW can be coupled with several other programs, including MODPATH for tracing pathlines (Pollock, 1994). For thorough documentation about MODFLOW and its numerous packages, see the U.S. Geological Survey web pages; a search for *MODFLOW* and *USGS* will point you to them.

The following discussion of the finite difference method is only introductory. More detailed coverage of the method may be found in the MODFLOW-2005 manual (Harbaugh, 2005) or texts by Anderson and Woessner (1992), Bear and Verruijt (1987), and Wang and Anderson (1982).

Instead of using analytic solutions to the general flow equations, the **finite difference method** uses a series of algebraic equations that are based on conservation of mass and Darcy's law. These algebraic equations are solved for unknown heads at discrete nodes located within an orthogonal network of nodes. One FDM scheme places nodes at the center of each block and another places them at the corners. MODFLOW uses block-centered nodes, so that is the scheme described here.

The modeled domain is subdivided or **discretized** into a grid of rectangular blocks or cells as shown in Figure 9.1. Within each block, the physical properties of the domain (K_x, K_y, K_z, n, and S) are assumed to be homogeneous. The domain can be made heterogeneous by assigning different properties to different blocks. It is assumed that the principal directions of hydraulic conductivity (see Section 3.2.2) line up with the orthogonal directions of the grid.

The dimensions of blocks vary, with smaller blocks in areas where more accuracy is required. The spacing of the grid boundaries in the x and y directions is fixed throughout the grid so that there are bands of narrower blocks that traverse the whole grid as shown in Figure 9.1. The horizontal boundaries that form the tops and bottoms of blocks can be staggered to form irregular surfaces so that model layers correspond to stratigraphic layers, as shown in Figure 9.2.

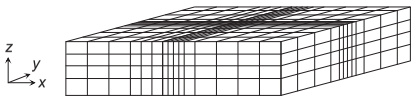


Figure 9.1 Finite difference discretization of the domain.

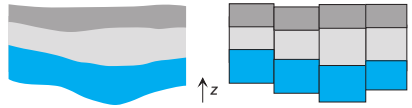


Figure 9.2 Conceptual model with irregular surfaces bounding stratigraphic units (left). Corresponding model grid with irregular block elevations (right).

In transient FDM models, time is also discretized. Time is assumed to proceed in discrete steps, with an approximate solution determined at each time step. Continuity of flow at each node at each time step is based on storage changes from one time step to the next. The nuts and bolts of the FDM computations are summarized in the next section.

9.2.1 Finite Difference Equations

For each node in a finite difference grid, there is one algebraic equation that relates the head at the node to the head at its neighboring nodes and, in transient simulations, to the head at the node at the previous time step. The equation is generated by requiring conservation of water volume for a grid block. Assuming that the groundwater is of constant density, conservation of volume is the same as conservation of mass.

Conservation of mass requires that the net flux of water into or out of a grid block equals the rate of change in water stored within the block. Figure 9.3 shows one grid block with dimensions Δx, Δy, and Δz. Also shown are the nodes at the centers of the six adjacent blocks in the grid, denoted $x-$, $x+$, $y-$, $y+$, $z-$, and $z+$. The discharges through the faces of the block are presumed positive for flow toward the central node and are labeled $Q_{(x-)}$, $Q_{(x+)}$, $Q_{(y-)}$, $Q_{(y+)}$, $Q_{(z-)}$, and $Q_{(z+)}$ [L^3/T].

There may also be sources or sinks of water within the block. These would include features such as pumping wells, drains, or recharge. These internal sources/sinks are lumped together and represented by a source term Q_s [L^3/T], which is positive when sources add water to the block.

Conservation of discharges into the block results in the following equation:

$$Q_{(x-)} + Q_{(x+)} + Q_{(y-)} + Q_{(y+)} + Q_{(z-)} + Q_{(z+)} + Q_s = S\Delta x\Delta y\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \qquad (9.1)$$

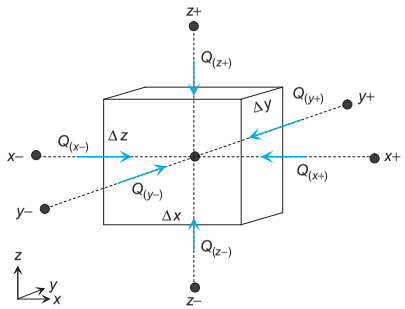


Figure 9.3 One grid block, a node at its center, and the discharges from neighboring nodes.

where h is the head at the central node and S is the storativity of the central block. The term on the right side of this equation is the rate of increase in the amount of water stored in the block [L^3/T]. If the block is fully saturated $S = S_s \Delta z$, but if the block contains the water table $S = S_y$ (see Section 6.8 for definition of these storage parameters).

In the FDM, the partial derivative $\partial h/\partial t$ in Eq. 9.1 is approximated by a finite difference term, so Eq. 9.1 becomes

$$Q_{(x-)} + Q_{(x+)} + Q_{(y-)} + Q_{(y+)} + Q_{(z-)} + Q_{(z+)} + Q_s = S\Delta x \Delta y \frac{h(t) - h(t - \Delta t)}{\Delta t} \tag{9.2}$$

where t is the current time, $t - \Delta t$ is the time at the previous time step, and h is the head at the central node. Approximating $\partial h/\partial t$ using the finite difference fraction on the right side of Eq. 9.2 is known as a *backward difference* approach, since $\Delta h/\Delta t$ is estimated over the time interval from the previous time step to the present one. This is the scheme employed in MODFLOW. Note that all of the Q terms in the above are discharges at the current time step (t).

Now consider a typical flux from an adjacent node, say $Q_{(x+)}$. This flux is proportional to the difference in head between the central node and the $x+$ node:

$$Q_{(x+)} = C_{(x+)}(h_{(x+)} - h) \tag{9.3}$$

where $h_{(x+)}$ is the head at the $x+$ node, h is the head at the central node, and $C_{(x+)}$ [L^2/T] is a constant conductance factor that depends on the dimensions

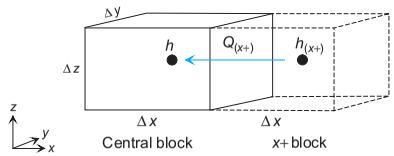


Figure 9.4 The discharge $Q_{(x+)}$ between the $x+$ block and the central block.

and K_x values in the central block and $x+$ block (Figure 9.4). We will discuss how conductance factors are determined later, but for now, know that they are constant and can be defined. Fluxes from other directions are defined similarly:

$$\begin{aligned}
Q_{(x-)} &= C_{(x-)}(h_{(x-)} - h) \\
Q_{(y+)} &= C_{(y+)}(h_{(y+)} - h) \\
Q_{(y-)} &= C_{(y-)}(h_{(y-)} - h) \\
Q_{(z+)} &= C_{(z+)}(h_{(z+)} - h) \\
Q_{(z-)} &= C_{(z-)}(h_{(z-)} - h)
\end{aligned} \tag{9.4}$$

where $C_{(x-)}, C_{(y+)}, \ldots$ are other conductance factors, and $h_{(x-)}, h_{(y+)}, \ldots$ are heads at other neighboring nodes. Substituting Eqs. 9.3 and 9.4 into Eq. 9.2 gives the general finite difference equation for one node:

$$\begin{aligned}
&C_{(x+)}(h_{(x+)} - h) + C_{(x-)}(h_{(x-)} - h) \\
&\quad + C_{(y+)}(h_{(y+)} - h) + C_{(y-)}(h_{(y-)} - h) \\
&\quad + C_{(z+)}(h_{(z+)} - h) + C_{(z-)}(h_{(z-)} - h) \\
&\quad + Q_s = S\Delta x \Delta y \frac{h(t) - h(t - \Delta t)}{\Delta t}
\end{aligned} \tag{9.5}$$

This equation may be generalized as

$$D_1 h + D_2 h_{(x+)} + D_3 h_{(x-)} + D_4 h_{(y+)} + D_5 h_{(y-)} + D_6 h_{(z+)} + D_7 h_{(z-)} = D_8 \tag{9.6}$$

where $D_1 - D_8$ are constants defined in terms of the following known quantities:

- The physical properties of the central grid block and its six immediate neighbors
- The internal source term Q_s for the central grid block

- The head at the previous time step at the central node $h(t - \Delta t)$
- The size of the previous time step Δt

With steady-state models, $h(t) - h(t - \Delta t) = 0$ and the storage terms in each nodal equation are eliminated.

Now examine the conductance factors in Eq. 9.5. We will just look at the specific constant $C_{(x+)}$, but understand that the results are similar for the other conductance factors. We will assume that the central and $x+$ blocks share the same dimensions in all three directions; both blocks have dimensions $\Delta x \times \Delta y \times \Delta z$ (Figure 9.4). Most FDM programs like MODFLOW allow these dimensions to vary from block to block, and the Δz dimension to vary with head when the water table occurs in a block, but such complexity is not covered here, nor is it necessary to understand the basics of the FDM.

The calculation of the flux $Q_{(x+)}$ uses Darcy's law, assuming one-dimensional flow in the x direction:

$$Q_{(x+)} = K_{x(\to x+)} \frac{h_{(x+)} - h}{\Delta x} \Delta y \Delta z \tag{9.7}$$

where $K_{x(\to x+)}$ is the representative hydraulic conductivity between the central and $x+$ blocks. Comparing this equation with Eq. 9.3, it is clear that in this case, the conductance factor is

$$C_{(x+)} = \frac{K_{x(\to x+)} \Delta y \Delta z}{\Delta x} \tag{9.8}$$

When the central and $x+$ blocks share the same value of K_x, the representative conductivity between the central node and the $x+$ node is simply $K_{x(\to x+)} = K_x = K_{x(x+)}$. Things get a bit more complex when the x-direction conductivity of the central block (K_x) doesn't equal that of the $x+$ block ($K_{x(x+)}$). In this case, we must compute an effective conductivity value $K_{x(\to x+)}$ that applies between the central and $x+$ node. The proper conductivity is given by Eq. 3.22 for flow normal to layers, which gives the following when applied to this situation:

$$K_{x(\to x+)} = \frac{2}{(1/K_x) + (1/K_{x(x+)})} \tag{9.9}$$

Example 9.1 Consider two adjacent finite difference grid blocks as shown in Figure 9.4. The dimensions, hydraulic conductivities, and heads of the two blocks are listed in Table 9.1. Calculate the finite difference discharge between the nodes of these two blocks, $Q_{(x+)}$.

Table 9.1 Data for Example

Block	Δx (m)	Δy (m)	Δz (m)	K_x (m/day)	h (m)
Central (left)	65	50	15	20	14.60
$x+$ (right)	65	50	15	80	14.94

The x-direction conductivities are not the same for these two blocks, so we need to calculate an effective $K_{x(\to x+)}$ using Eq. 9.9:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{x(\to x+)} &= \frac{2}{(1/K_x) + (1/K_{x(x+)})} \\ &= \frac{2}{(1/20) + (1/80)} \\ &= 32\,\text{m/day} \end{aligned}$$

With $K_{x(\to x+)}$, we can compute the conductance factor between the two nodes with Eq. 9.8:

$$\begin{aligned} C_{(x+)} &= \frac{K_{x(\to x+)} \Delta y \Delta z}{\Delta x} \\ &= \frac{(32\,\text{m/day})(50\,\text{m})(15\,\text{m})}{65\,\text{m}} \\ &= 369.2\,\text{m}^2/\text{day} \end{aligned}$$

Now the discharge can be calculated with Eq. 9.3:

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{(x+)} &= C_{(x+)}(h_{(x+)} - h) \\ &= (369.2\,\text{m}^2/\text{day})(14.94\,\text{m} - 14.60\,\text{m}) \\ &= 125.5\,\text{m}^3/\text{day} \end{aligned}$$

If you think that was tedious, try doing the same for all six directions at each of several thousand nodes. Thankfully, it's all in a day's work for a computer.

The conductance factors and effective conductivities for the other directions are directly analogous to Eqs. 9.8 and 9.9, and are given without derivation:

$$C_{(x-)} = \frac{K_{x(\to x-)} \Delta y \Delta z}{\Delta x}$$

$$C_{(y+)} = \frac{K_{y(\to y+)} \Delta x \Delta z}{\Delta y}$$

$$C_{(y-)} = \frac{K_{y(\to y-)}\,\Delta x \Delta z}{\Delta y}$$

$$C_{(z+)} = \frac{K_{z(\to z+)}\,\Delta x \Delta y}{\Delta z}$$

$$C_{(z-)} = \frac{K_{z(\to z-)}\,\Delta x \Delta y}{\Delta z} \tag{9.10}$$

and

$$K_{x(\to x-)} = \frac{2}{(1/K_x) + (1/K_{x(x-)})}$$

$$K_{y(\to y+)} = \frac{2}{(1/K_y) + (1/K_{y(y+)})}$$

$$K_{y(\to y-)} = \frac{2}{(1/K_y) + (1/K_{y(y-)})}$$

$$K_{y(\to z+)} = \frac{2}{(1/K_z) + (1/K_{z(z+)})}$$

$$K_{y(\to z-)} = \frac{2}{(1/K_z) + (1/K_{z(z-)})} \tag{9.11}$$

Example 9.2 Determine the simplest possible form of the finite difference node equation (Eq. 9.5) for a model under the following conditions:

- Steady-state horizontal flow in the x, y plane
- Uniform grid spacing in the horizontal plane ($\Delta x = \Delta y =$ constant in all cells)
- Uniform vertical thickness of the grid ($\Delta z =$ constant in all cells)
- Uniform horizontal hydraulic conductivity, $K = K_x = K_y$ in all cells
- No internal sources/sinks ($Q_s = 0$)

Start by determining the conductance factors, as defined by Eqs. 9.8 and 9.10. With uniform grid spacing and uniform conductivity, these expressions reduce to

$$C_{(x+)} = C_{(x-)} = C_{(y+)} = C_{(y-)} = K\Delta z$$

Combining this result with Eq. 9.5 for steady-state two-dimensional flow gives

$$K\Delta z\left[(h_{(x+)} - h) + (h_{(x-)} - h) + (h_{(y+)} - h) + (h_{(y-)} - h)\right] = 0$$

Dividing both sides by $K\Delta z$ and collecting the h terms gives the remarkably simple result that the head at one node equals the average of the heads at its four neighboring nodes:

$$h = \frac{1}{4}\left[h_{(x+)} + h_{(x-)} + h_{(y+)} + h_{(y-)}\right]$$

This can be thought of as the finite difference approximation of the mean value theorem, which states that for solutions of Laplace's equation (which governs under these conditions), the value at a point equals the mean of values on a small circle centered on that point.

At each time step in an FDM simulation, each node in the grid generates an equation like Eq. 9.6, with the result that there are N equations for the N unknown nodal heads. For example, an FDM model with a grid consisting of $50 \times 50 \times 5 = 12{,}500$ grid blocks would generate 12,500 such equations. Since each equation involves only seven unknown nodal heads, the matrix containing coefficients like $D_1 - D_8$ (Eq. 9.6) is quite sparse, and only $12{,}500 \times 8$ coefficients need to be assembled and processed.

The unknown nodal heads are solved for using iterative matrix solution methods, where an updated estimate of the nodal heads is made at each iteration. Iteration stops when a specified level of accuracy for each nodal equation is met. For example, the specified accuracy may be set such that the left and right side of each nodal equation differ by less than 0.1%. Another scheme halts iteration when the change in node head from one iteration to the next is less than a specified value at all nodes.

The finite difference approximation of the time derivative means that $\partial h/\partial t$ is assumed to be constant for the duration of each time step. This is reasonably accurate if time steps are small enough. In a typical transient simulation, there is some change to the system, such as a well turning on or a change in recharge rate. The system responds to the change, evolving towards a new and different steady state. Following a change to the system, heads change rapidly at first and less rapidly as time wears on, as illustrated in Figure 9.5.

A proper simulation uses small time steps immediately after changes to the flow system followed by longer time steps, to keep the approximation of

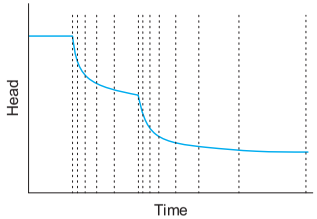


Figure 9.5 Head vs. time near a pumping well that turns on and then steps up its discharge rate. Appropriate time steps for a transient FDM simulation are shown as dashed lines.

constant $\partial h/\partial t$ reasonable. MODFLOW allows the user to input a series of time steps where each step is longer than its predecessor by a factor called the time step multiplier. To determine if the time steps are small enough, experiment with the size of the steps to make sure that shortening the time steps has no significant impact on the results.

A set of initial nodal heads must be supplied for the start of the first time step. These initial heads are typically a set of heads from a prior steady-state simulation.

9.2.2 Boundary Conditions

All of the typical boundary conditions in flow models, including no-flow boundaries, specified head boundaries, specified flux boundaries, and leakage boundaries are implemented easily in FDM models.

In MODFLOW, the entire external boundary of the grid is by default assumed to be a no-flow (impermeable) boundary. For a block at the edge of the grid, the no-flow condition is accomplished simply by omitting the flux term that is in the direction of the boundary. For example, the node equation for a block at the negative x edge of the grid would have $Q_{x-} = 0$.

Blocks internal to the grid may be made impermeable also. Where an impermeable (*inactive* in MODFLOW jargon) block abuts an active block, the nodal equation for the active block omits the flux term coming from the inactive block. Whole regions of blocks may be made inactive to simulate an irregularly shaped no-flow boundary. No nodal equation is generated by an inactive block.

At a specified head boundary, the head at the node is known while the internal discharge of the block Q_s is unknown. The model will determine the Q_s needed to maintain the specified head. The model will report Q_s as output after solving the finite difference equations. There is no limit to the magnitude of Q_s, so a constant head boundary represents a boundary with unlimited capacity to supply or remove water. This may be appropriate for large surface water bodies and for boundaries with very transmissive aquifers, but it can lead to unrealistic discharges for boundaries representing smaller features. For example, it is possible to have a tiny stream drawing a huge baseflow, much larger than is physically possible. It is important to check the output Q_s values to see if the discharge is consistent with the real situation.

With a specified flux boundary condition, the internal discharge term Q_s is specified, as opposed to the default of $Q_s = 0$. Pumping wells, recharge, and evapotranspiration are typically represented using specified flux boundaries. An extraction well of discharge magnitude Q contributes $-Q$ to Q_s and an injection well contributes $+Q$ to Q_s. When representing recharge at a rate N [L/T], a discharge equal to $N\Delta x\Delta y$ is added to Q_s in the uppermost saturated block of a model. Evapotranspiration discharges are defined in the same way as recharge, but the contribution to Q_s is negative. In MODFLOW, evapotranspiration discharges occur only when the simulated water table rises above a specified threshold level.

Leakage boundaries are used to represent discharges from a resistant riverbed to an underlying aquifer, discharge from resistant drains, and other similar features not in direct contact with the aquifer. The leakage is represented by a discharge Q that is added to Q_s. The magnitude of Q is proportional to a leakage factor L and the difference between the head at node h and a specified reference head h_r:

$$Q = L(h_r - h) \tag{9.12}$$

In MODFLOW, a discharge based on Eq. 9.12 is used in the river module, the drain module, and the general head boundary package. In the case of a riverbed, h_r represents the head in the river, and L represents the leakage factor of the portion of river bottom that occurs within the area of the block. The leakage factor is defined by Darcy's law for vertical flow through the riverbed as

$$L = \frac{K_z^* A}{b^*} \tag{9.13}$$

where K_z^* is the vertical hydraulic conductivity of the resisting riverbed material, b^* is the vertical thickness of this material, and A is the area of riverbed within the limits of the block. When the entire surface area of a block underlies the river, $A = \Delta x\Delta y$.

9.2.3 Example Model

The USGS developed a complex three-dimensional finite difference flow model of western Cape Cod, Massachusetts, to aid in studies of contamination migration from the Massachusetts Military Reservation (MMR) and potential impacts on nearby surface waters and production wells. The geology and hydrogeology of the area is described in Section 5.3.3 of this text and by Walter and LeBlanc (2007). Their report focuses on various versions of MODFLOW models, but also has an overview of the MMR site and local hydrogeology. An earlier report by Walter and Whealan (2005) provides details of the model configuration. The Walter and LeBlanc (2007) report, complete with full color figures, is recommended for readers of this section and is available on the book website (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

Western Cape Cod is underlain by an assortment of glacial deposits including coarse sandy till in moraines, outwash plain sands and gravels, and proglacial lake sands and silts. At the base of these sandy, permeable deposits is low-K basal till over low-K bedrock. The sandy deposits tend to be coarser and more permeable nearer the surface and in the central and northwest parts farther from Nantucket and Vineyard Sounds. The general hydrogeology of the area is depicted in Figures 5.32, 5.33, and 5.34 and in Figure 3 of Walter and LeBlanc (2007). The water table forms a mound cresting 65–70 feet above sea level, with groundwater flowing outward towards the ocean in all directions. This area has numerous plumes of contaminated groundwater spreading from sources on the MMR as well as many water supply wells, as shown in Figure 5.34 and Figure 2 of Walter and LeBlanc (2007).

The model in plan view and cross-section is shown in Figure 9.6. The model had 20 layers, the deeper of which were mostly horizontal. Shallower layers varied in elevation, conforming to the water table surface in the top layer. In the horizontal direction the grid spacing was a uniform 400 ft, with 246 rows and 365 columns. The entire model contained about 850,000 active grid cells (Walter and Whealan, 2005).

Boundary conditions included general head boundary (GHB package in MODFLOW) cells at the ocean shore, drain (DRN package) cells at estuaries, and stream (STR package) cells along stream reaches. Lakes in the model were modeled as active cells with extremely high K so that head was essentially constant within a lake. The natural recharge rate over most of the upland areas in the model was 27.1 in./year, based on hydrologic data and previous analyses of recharge in this area. A reduced rate of 16 in./year was applied to ponds, consistent with precipitation and evaporation data. A slightly higher recharge rate

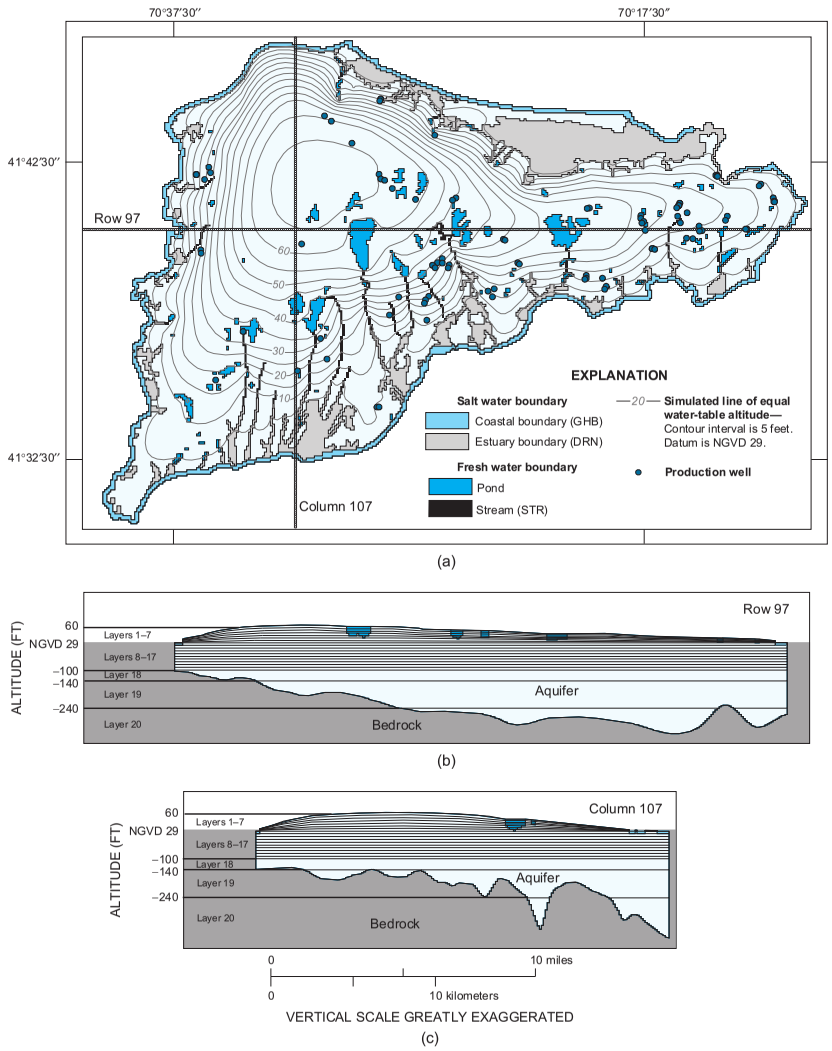


Figure 9.6 Plan view of the MODFLOW model grid showing boundary conditions and the simulated water table (a). East-west and north-south vertical profiles through the model showing vertical grid discretization in the automated calibration models (b, c). From U.S. Geological Survey (Walter and LeBlanc, 2007).

was applied to residential areas without sewer systems to account for septic system discharges. Discharges at dozens of production wells were modeled (WEL package) and represented a total production of about 17×10^6 gal/day in western Cape Cod. The discharges of large municipal and MMR wastewater leaching fields were also factored into the model.

Observed horizontal hydraulic conductivities in the unconsolidated materials in western Cape Cod ranged from as high as 350 ft/d in coarse sand and gravel to as low as 10 ft/d for silty and clayey deposits (Walter and Whealan, 2005). The model was developed as a steady-state model because its intended use was to examine long-term contaminant migration and well field flow patterns. Several slightly different model concepts with different assumptions about hydraulic conductivity zonation were calibrated. Calibration is the process of adjusting model inputs so the model closely matches observed conditions (see Section 9.6 for discussion of calibration and calibration of these Cape Cod models in particular).

One model was calibrated manually by trial and error, and several other models were calibrated using automated parameter estimation. In the trial-and-error model, layers above sea level were horizontal, and there were many cells that ended up dry and above the water table. This drying of cells is a nonlinear process that makes solving the system of equations and automated calibration difficult, so the automated calibration models used curved layers above sea level as shown in Figure 9.6, which kept all cells below the water table.

The distribution of aquifer properties was simplified by defining a limited number of regions based on geologic logs and hydraulic testing, with each region assigned uniform properties as shown in Figure 9.7. This is a typical approach that makes estimating model input parameters more constrained and tractable than allowing parameters to vary in each cell or in hundreds of different regions. One boundary leakance (vertical K divided by thickness) was applied in ocean coasts ("COAST1" in the figure) and another boundary leakance was applied in inland estuaries ("COAST2"). A single leakance was applied for all stream reaches in the model. Automated calibration to determine the parameters in these regions was done by comparing modeled and observed heads at over 100 locations, observed stream discharges at 19 locations, and in some models the size and shape of contaminant plumes (Figure 9.8). Calibration of these models is discussed more in Section 9.6.3.

The calibrated models were used to locate likely contaminant impact areas downgradient of contamination plumes using forward flow paths, and to locate likely source areas upgradient of contaminated wells using reverse flow paths. Using statistical analysis of the sensitivity of simulated flow paths to

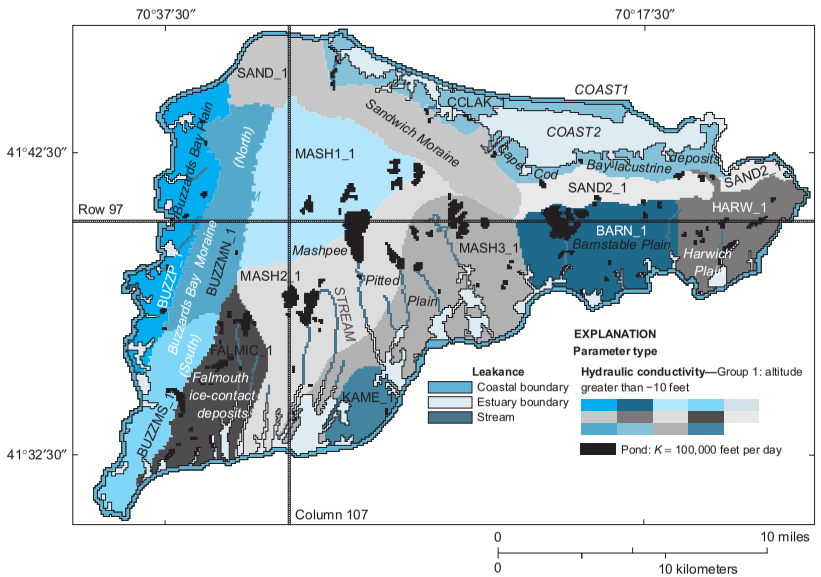


Figure 9.7 Plan view of the distribution of horizontal hydraulic conductivity regions in the automated calibration models at elevations above −10 feet. From U.S. Geological Survey (Walter and LeBlanc, 2007).

parameters, Walter and LeBlanc (2007) were able to make probabilistic predictions of these locations. Figure 9.9 shows predicted forward flow paths from a source area within the MMR. Figure 9.10 shows predicted reverse flow paths going upstream from contaminated wells, each flow path terminating at the water table, which is inferred as the likely source area. The areas shown in these figures are given various confidence intervals (e.g., there is an estimated 95% chance that the likely source is within the 95% confidence interval area).

9.3 Finite Element Method

Like the finite difference method, the flow domain in the finite element method (FEM) is subdivided into discrete elements and nodes. The FEM uses element shapes that are a bit more flexible than the rectangles or boxes of

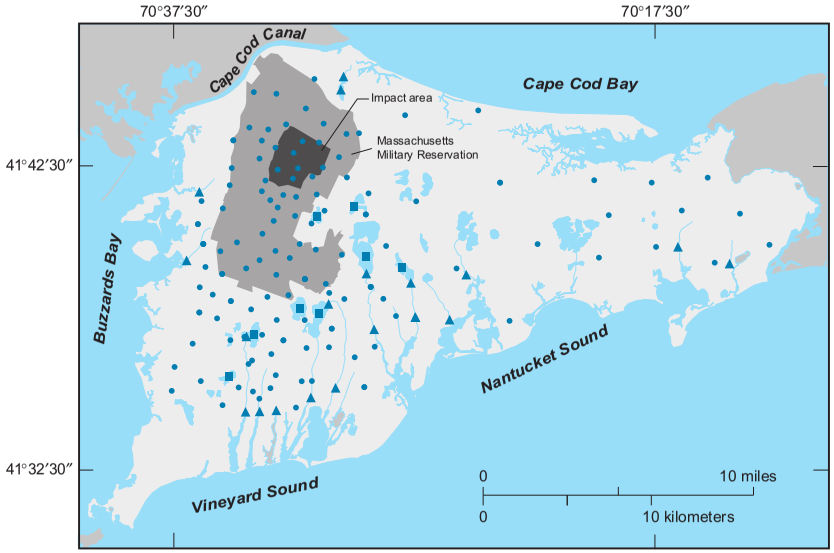


Figure 9.8 Locations of head and stream discharge observations used to calibrate models. Circles are observation wells, triangles are stream gages, and squares are ponds. From U.S. Geological Survey (Walter and LeBlanc, 2007).

the FDM. The most common shapes for finite elements are triangles and trapezoids for two-dimensional flow, and triangular and trapezoidal prisms for three-dimensional flow.

A mesh of triangular finite elements for a two-dimensional flow domain is illustrated in Figure 9.11. In an FEM model, the head is assumed to vary across an element in some simplified and restricted manner. A linear variation is commonly used, although some more sophisticated formulations use higher-order distributions. The discussion here is limited to linear, triangular elements in two-dimensional models, because that is a common formulation and it is a good introduction to the method.

An example of a linear FEM head distribution across several adjacent triangular elements is shown in Figure 9.12. The head surface has a constant slope within an element (linear h distribution), but the slope changes abruptly across an element boundary. A patchwork of linear panels obviously is not a perfect

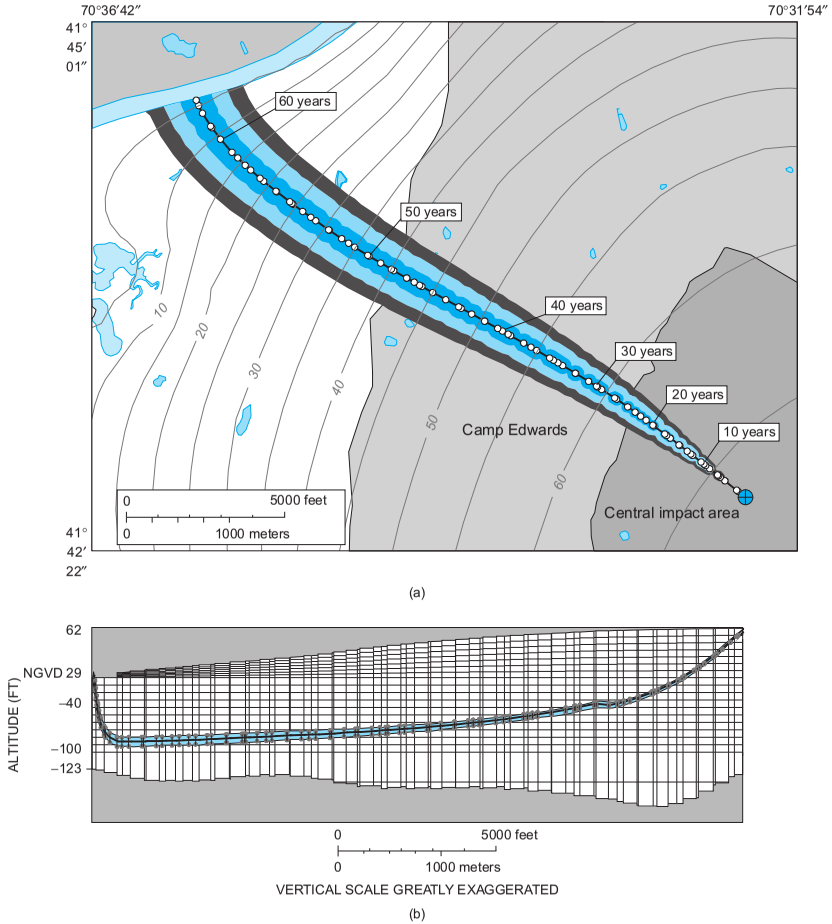


Figure 9.9 Simulated forward flow paths from a source spot in the northwestern MMR, in plan view (a) and vertical profile (b). The plan view shows the 68% (dark blue), 95% (light blue), and 99% (gray) confidence intervals associated with the predicted path. The vertical profile shows just the 95% confidence interval. From U.S. Geological Survey (Walter and LeBlanc, 2007).

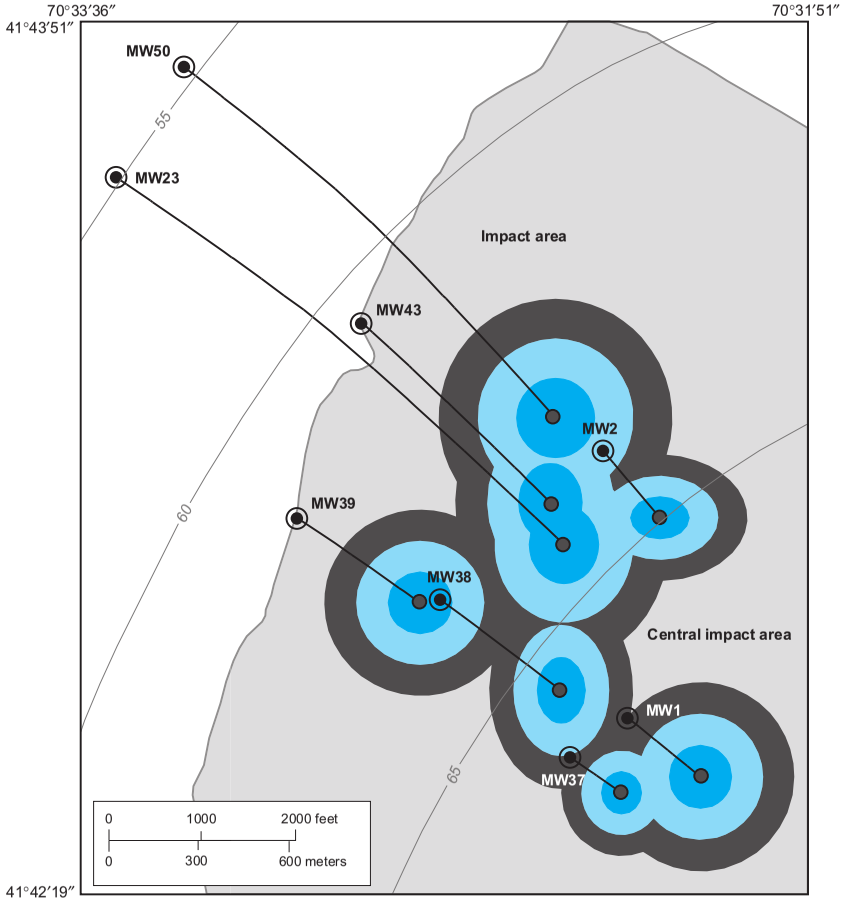


Figure 9.10 Simulated reverse flow paths from the screens of contaminated wells in the northwestern MMR. The inferred source areas at the water table are shown with 68% (dark blue), 95% (light blue), and 99% (gray) confidence intervals. From U.S. Geological Survey (Walter and LeBlanc, 2007).

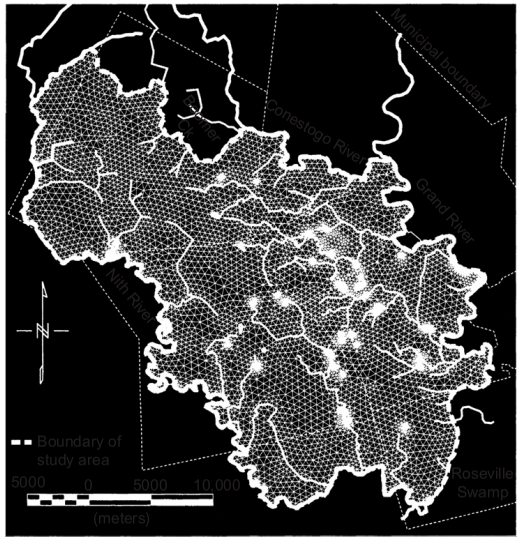


Figure 9.11 Plan view of a mesh of triangular finite elements for a regional groundwater flow model in the vicinity of Waterloo, Ontario, Canada. Smaller elements are concentrated where there are pumping wells. From Martin, P. J. and E. O. Frind, 1998, Modeling a complex multi-aquifer system: The Waterloo moraine, *Ground Water*, 36(4), 679–690. Reprinted from *Ground Water* with permission of the National Ground Water Association. Copyright 1998.

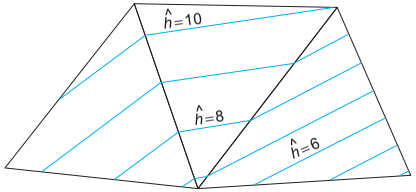


Figure 9.12 Contours of $\hat{h}$ across three elements in a finite element model, with a uniform contour interval $\Delta\hat{h} = 1$. The gradient of $\hat{h}$ is constant within an element. The right-hand element has lower K and a steeper gradient than the other two elements.

model of an actual smooth head distribution, but often it is a very acceptable approximation.

The finite element problem boils down to determining the best approximate solution for the restricted type of head distribution allowed on the elements (in this case, linear). There are several different methods for homing

in on the best approximate solution. The most popular and general is the Galerkin method. It determines a solution by minimizing a parameter called the residual, which measures how much the approximate solution deviates from the general equations. The Galerkin method can be applied to all types of groundwater flow equations.

The variational method is a second way of finding the best approximate solution. With this method there must be some physical property that, from physical principles, is known to be at a minimum in the system. For groundwater flow, this quantity is the rate of mechanical energy dissipation due to friction involved with flow. A function is defined that integrates the rate of mechanical energy dissipation over the whole model domain. The best approximate solution is the one that minimizes this function.

The variational principle leads ultimately to the same set of algebraic equations and the same approximate solution as the Galerkin method does (Wang and Anderson, 1982). The Galerkin method is briefly explained in the following section, following the presentation of Wang and Anderson (1982). Books by Istok (1989), Bear and Verruijt (1987), and Huyakorn and Pinder (1983) are also good references on the FEM.

9.3.1 Finite Element Equations

For the purpose of explaining finite element equations, we will keep things as simple as possible. We will use linear triangular elements and look only at two-dimensional steady-state flow in a homogeneous aquifer, governed by Laplace's equation.

Start by defining the variable $\hat{h}(x,y)$ as the approximate FEM solution. With linear triangular elements, the head distribution in the whole model domain is defined if the heads at all of the nodes (corners) of the triangles are known. The mathematical expression for $\hat{h}$ can be written as the sum of contributions associated with each node:

$$\hat{h} = \sum_{n=1}^{nnode} \hat{h}_n f_n \tag{9.14}$$

where *nnode* is the number of nodes in the model, $\hat{h}_n$ is the modeled head at node n, and f_n is called the **basis function** for node n.

A basis function for one node is shown graphically in Figure 9.13. It varies linearly from $f_n = 1$ at the node to $f_n = 0$ at the opposite edge of any triangle that shares node n. In all other triangles, $f_n = 0$. The basis function is only a function of x, y, and the geometry of the grid. At any point (x,y), Eq. 9.14

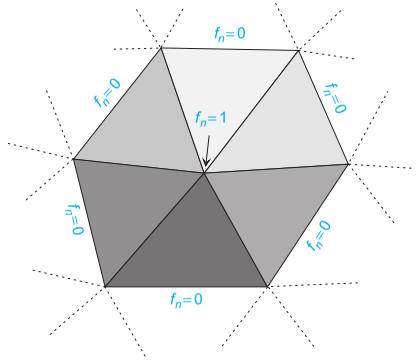


Figure 9.13 Basis function f_n for node n, the central node. Imagine that there is a light source coming from the top of the page to visualize the six-sided pyramid shape of the f_n surface. $f_n = 0$ beyond the six triangular elements that share node n.

contains only three nonzero terms: those associated with the three nodes of the triangular element containing (x,y):

$$\hat{h} = \hat{h}_i f_i + \hat{h}_j f_j + \hat{h}_k f_k \tag{9.15}$$

where i, j, and k are the three nodes of the triangle containing (x,y), and $\hat{h}_i$, $\hat{h}_j$, and $\hat{h}_k$ are the heads at these three nodes.

In the entire solution (Eq. 9.14), there are *nnode* unknowns, namely the heads h_n at each of the nodes. To determine these unknowns, we need *nnode* equations. In the Galerkin method for the two-dimensional Laplace equation (Eq. 6.66), the equation generated for each node is written as follows, where the subscript n refers to the nth node:

$$\iint_{\mathcal{D}} \left(\frac{\partial^2 \hat{h}}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \hat{h}}{\partial y^2} \right) f_n dx dy = 0 \tag{9.16}$$

The area of integration is the whole model domain $\mathcal{D}$, but since f_n is nonzero only near node n, the integration is only needed over the patch of elements that surround node n. If $\hat{h}$ were an exact solution of Laplace's equation, the quantity in parentheses would be zero everywhere in $\mathcal{D}$. But the FEM solution $\hat{h}$ is approximate, and the quantity in parentheses is finite. This quantity is known as the residual. In each nodal equation the residual, integrated over the domain and weighted by the basis function of node n, is set equal to zero. Galerkin's method determines a set of nodal heads $\hat{h}$ so that *nnode* equations like Eq. 9.16 are satisfied.

The second derivatives in Eq. 9.16 can be reduced to first derivatives using integration by parts, resulting in (see Wang and Anderson, 1982, for the details)

$$-\iint_{\mathcal{D}}\left(\frac{\partial\hat{h}}{\partial x}\frac{\partial f_n}{\partial x}+\frac{\partial\hat{h}}{\partial y}\frac{\partial f_n}{\partial y}\right)dxdy+\int_{\mathcal{B}}\frac{\partial\hat{h}}{\partial b}f_n ds=0 \tag{9.17}$$

where $\mathcal{B}$ is the boundary of the domain $\mathcal{D}$, b is the direction outward and normal to boundary $\mathcal{B}$, and s is a variable that increases going counterclockwise around $\mathcal{B}$.

First, the area integral in Eq. 9.17 can be replaced by a summation, recognizing that the derivatives involved are constant over each triangular element:

$$\iint_{\mathcal{D}}\left(\frac{\partial\hat{h}}{\partial x}\frac{\partial f_n}{\partial x}+\frac{\partial\hat{h}}{\partial y}\frac{\partial f_n}{\partial y}\right)dxdy=\sum_{m=1}^{nelem}A_m\left(\left[\frac{\partial\hat{h}}{\partial x}\right]_m\left[\frac{\partial f_n}{\partial x}\right]_m+\left[\frac{\partial\hat{h}}{\partial y}\right]_m\left[\frac{\partial f_n}{\partial y}\right]_m\right) \tag{9.18}$$

where the summation is over the *nelem* elements that contain node n and A_m is the area of the mth element. Only the elements that share node n are involved in this equation, because outside these elements, $f_n=0$ and its derivatives vanish. The derivatives involving the basis functions f_n are independent of the solution $\hat{h}$, and can be determined just from the element mesh geometry. The derivatives involving $\hat{h}$, in turn, are linear functions of the three nodal heads for the corners of the element and derivatives of basis functions, as can be seen by differentiating Eq. 9.15.

Therefore, the area integral in Eq. 9.17 ends up being a linear equation involving nodal heads in the immediate vicinity of node n:

$$\iint_{\mathcal{D}}\left(\frac{\partial\hat{h}}{\partial x}\frac{\partial f_n}{\partial x}+\frac{\partial\hat{h}}{\partial y}\frac{\partial f_n}{\partial y}\right)dxdy=\sum_{p=1}^{nneigh}G_p\hat{h}_p \tag{9.19}$$

where G_p are constants and $\hat{h}_p$ are the heads at node n and its immediate neighbors. The constants G_p depend only on the basis functions of node n and its neighboring nodes. The number of neighbor nodes *nneigh* includes node n and all of the nodes that form elements in common with node n. For example, node n in Figure 9.13 is part of six elements whose neighboring nodes total $nneigh=7$.

Now examine the boundary integral in Eq. 9.17. For all interior nodes, $f_n=0$ along the entire boundary, and the boundary integral is zero:

$$\int_{\mathcal{B}}\frac{\partial\hat{h}}{\partial b}f_n ds=0 \qquad \text{(node } n \text{ interior)} \tag{9.20}$$

For nodes on the boundary, $f_n\neq 0$ just on the two adjoining boundary segments, as shown in Figure 9.14. The boundary integral reduces to a simple expression because $\partial\hat{h}/\partial b$ is constant for each of the two elements involved, and the basis function increases linearly from $f_n=0$ at the adjacent boundary nodes to $f_n=1$ at node n:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_{\mathcal{B}}\frac{\partial\hat{h}}{\partial b}f_n ds&=\frac{\partial\hat{h}_1}{\partial b_1}\int_{n-1}^{n}f_n ds+\frac{\partial\hat{h}_2}{\partial b_2}\int_{n}^{n+1}f_n ds\\&=\frac{\partial\hat{h}_1}{\partial b_1}\frac{L_1}{2}+\frac{\partial\hat{h}_2}{\partial b_2}\frac{L_2}{2}\qquad\text{(node } n \text{ on boundary)}\end{aligned} \tag{9.21}$$

where $\hat{h}_1$ and $\hat{h}_2$ are the modeled heads on elements 1 and 2, and L_1 and L_2 are the lengths of the boundary segments of elements 1 and 2 (Figure 9.14).

We will see in the next section that the boundary integral in Eq. 9.21 turns out to be a constant for most common types of boundary conditions. Knowing that, and inserting Eq. 9.19 into the general finite element equation for node n (Eq. 9.17) gives the result that each nodal equation is a linear equation in

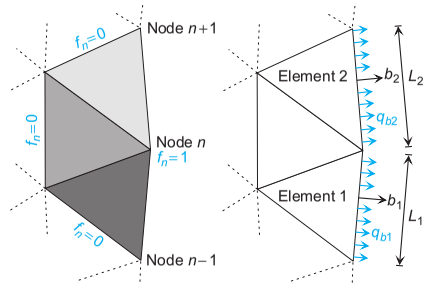


Figure 9.14 Basis function f_n for boundary node n (left). Definition of parameters in the boundary integral equation for node n (right).

terms of the heads at node n and its neighboring nodes:

$$\sum_{p=1}^{nneigh} G_p \hat{h}_p + H = 0 \tag{9.22}$$

where H is a constant contributed by Eq. 9.21 when n is a boundary node. At each node in an FEM model where the head is unknown, an equation like Eq. 9.22 is generated, so that there is one equation for each unknown nodal head.

Because each nodal equation involves only the central node and its immediate neighbors, each equation contains only a limited number of terms. If the element mesh is designed efficiently, the resulting system of linear equations will form a narrowly banded matrix of coefficients. It is possible to have a model with 5000 nodes, and have the equations generate a matrix containing 5000×7 nonzero coefficients. The system of equations that results is usually solved by iterative methods, giving the nodal heads $\hat{h}_n$ ($n = 1 \rightarrow nnode$) as output. With $\hat{h}_n$ known, heads and discharges can be calculated throughout the domain.

9.3.2 Boundary Conditions

Like the finite difference method, the finite element method can handle all manner of boundary conditions, including no-flow boundaries, specified head boundaries, specified flux boundaries, and leakage boundaries. The following discussion covers how each of these basic boundary conditions is implemented in the FEM.

Where the boundary is a no-flow boundary, there is no flux through it and the hydraulic gradient normal to $\mathcal{B}$ is zero ($\partial\hat{h}_1/\partial b_1 = 0$ and $\partial\hat{h}_2/\partial b_2 = 0$). So for a node in a stretch of a no-flow boundary, the boundary integral is zero:

$$\int_{\mathcal{B}} \frac{\partial \hat{h}}{\partial b} f_n ds = 0 \qquad (n \text{ on no-flow portion of } \mathcal{B}) \tag{9.23}$$

A boundary node that is part of a head-specified boundary generates no nodal equation because $\hat{h}_n$ is known. After the heads at nearby interior nodes are determined, the fluxes across the boundary can be calculated as output.

When the flux normal to the boundary is specified, the head at the boundary node is unknown, so a nodal equation is generated. The boundary integral portion of the nodal equation is given by Eq. 9.21. The hydraulic gradients in the boundary elements, $\partial\hat{h}_1/\partial b_1$ and $\partial\hat{h}_2/\partial b_2$, can be calculated using Darcy's law as follows:

$$\frac{\partial \hat{h}_1}{\partial b_1} = -\frac{q_{b1}}{K_{b1}} \tag{9.24}$$

where b_1 is the outward normal to the boundary in element 1, q_{b1} is the specified boundary specific discharge in the b_1 direction, and K_{b1} is the hydraulic conductivity in element 1 in the b_1 direction. Substituting expressions like this into Eq. 9.21 gives

$$\int_{\mathcal{B}} \frac{\partial \hat{h}}{\partial b} f_n ds = -\frac{q_{b1}}{K_{b1}}\frac{L_1}{2} - \frac{q_{b2}}{K_{b2}}\frac{L_2}{2} \qquad \text{(specified flux boundary)} \tag{9.25}$$

The right-hand side of the above equation is a constant that depends only on input parameters and element geometry.

9.4 Analytic Element Method

The **analytic element method** (AEM) is essentially a fancier version of the superposition techniques discussed in the two previous chapters. Instead of superposing just a few functions by hand, a computer superposes great numbers of functions. The concept of superposition with analytic solutions is an old one, but using computers to superpose large numbers of solutions in groundwater flow models was an idea pioneered by Otto Strack. Readers interested in more thorough coverage of the AEM will find it in textbooks by Strack (1989) and Haitjema (1995).

An **analytic element** is a mathematical function that is associated with a particular boundary condition within the flow domain. One kind of element represents flow to a pumping well, a second kind represents discharge to a stream segment, a third kind represents an area of recharge, and so on. The mathematical functions of all elements in a model are superposed (summed) to create a single equation that may have hundreds of terms. This equation allows prediction of heads and discharges as a function of location and time: $h(x, y, t)$, for example.

The AEM may be applied to one-, two-, or three-dimensional flows. Several analytic elements for three-dimensional steady flow have been developed and applied, such as elements for wells, ellipsoids, and infinite planar discontinuities (see Haitjema, 1985; Fitts, 1989, 1991; Steward, 1998, 1999; Luther and

Haitjema, 1999; Janković and Barnes, 1999a). Truly three-dimensional analytic elements have seen limited use; most analytic element models are based on two-dimensional elements. Several available quasi-three-dimensional analytic element models stack two-dimensional models to represent layered aquifer systems with coupled leakage between adjacent layers (see Strack, 1999; Fitts, 2010; Bakker and Strack, 2003; Bakker, 2006). The following sections focus on the simplest two-dimensional analytic elements and an example application.

9.4.1 Equations for Two-Dimensional Aquifer Flow

A model is made two-dimensional by neglecting the resistance to flow in the third dimension. For horizontal aquifer flow, the resistance to vertical flow is neglected (the Dupuit–Forchheimer approximation), as discussed in Section 6.9.2. This is reasonable only when resistance to vertical flow is a small fraction of the total resistance encountered along flow paths (see Section 7.4.5).

The most general of general equations for two-dimensional aquifer flow is Eq. 6.61, which is reiterated below for the case of isotropic transmissivity T:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(T\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)+\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(T\frac{\partial h}{\partial y}\right)+N=S\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{9.26}$$

In the analytic element method, this and other flow equations are written in terms of an aquifer discharge potential Φ [L^3/T], a step that allows the method to model a variety of aquifer conditions (confined, unconfined, etc.) in an efficient manner. The discharge potential is defined in terms of aquifer parameters and head so that the following equations are true:

$$\frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial x}=T\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}, \qquad \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial y}=T\frac{\partial h}{\partial y} \tag{9.27}$$

In a moment, we will see how Φ must be defined in order to satisfy these relations, but for now substitute these relations into Eq. 9.26 to get

$$\nabla^2\Phi=-N+S\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{9.28}$$

Using Laplace transforms, it is possible to create semianalytic solutions to this transient general equation, but so far this approach works with a limited range of elements and only constant-T aquifers (Kuhlman and Neuman, 2009; Bakker and Kuhlman, 2011). Alternatively, the approach of Haitjema (1985), which is used in the AnAqSim software (Fitts, 2010, 2012), applies finite difference time steps to approximate the transient term:

$$\nabla^2\Phi=-N+S\frac{\Delta h}{\Delta t} \tag{9.29}$$

Solutions are defined at specific times and the storage term is computed based on the rate of head change over a finite time step ($\Delta h/\Delta t$). This enables use of the full range of analytic elements with any aquifer type.

If flow is steady state with leakage/recharge, the general equation is the Poisson equation, which is linear for Φ:

$$\nabla^2\Phi=-N \tag{9.30}$$

And if there is zero net leakage/recharge, the general equation is the Laplace equation, another linear equation:

$$\nabla^2\Phi=0 \tag{9.31}$$

Solutions to these linear equations can be superposed, which is the basis of the AEM. Equation 9.28 is also linear when an aquifer's transmissivity is homogeneous.

Derivation of the preceding general equations presumed that Φ obeys Eq. 9.27; in the following list, we examine definitions of Φ that comply with several different types of aquifers.

- **Aquifers with Uniform Transmissivity (Confined).** Assuming that the transmissivity of an aquifer is uniform (constant and independent of location), each relation in Eq. 9.27 can be integrated to give

$$\Phi=Th+C_c \qquad \text{(aquifer with uniform } T\text{)} \tag{9.32}$$

  where C_c is a constant. The constant C_c may be any value and often it is conveniently set to zero. This $\Phi(h)$ relationship is appropriate for most confined aquifers and can also be appropriate for unconfined aquifers where the saturated thickness varies only a little.

- **Unconfined Aquifers with a Horizontal Base.** For an unconfined aquifer with a horizontal base and uniform horizontal hydraulic conductivity (see Section 7.5), the transmissivity is given by $T=Kh$ where h is measured

from the aquifer base. The relations of Eq. 9.27 in this case are

$$\frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial x} = Kh\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \qquad \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial y} = Kh\frac{\partial h}{\partial y} \tag{9.33}$$

Integrating either of these expressions defines the discharge potential for this type of unconfined flow:

$$\Phi = \frac{1}{2}Kh^2 + C_u \qquad \text{(unconfined aquifer with horizontal base)} \tag{9.34}$$

where C_u is a constant that is often set to zero for simplicity.

- **Semiconfined Aquifers with Uniform Transmissivity.** Consider a leaky aquifer with uniform transmissivity T, as described by Strack (1989, Section 14) and shown in Figure 9.15. One of the aquitards bounding the aquifer is assumed to be impermeable and the other aquitard leaks water between the pumped aquifer and another very permeable aquifer or a surface water. It is assumed that the head on the opposite side of the aquitard is constant (h_0). The leaky aquitard is shown above the aquifer, but all the equations presented here work the same if it is below the aquifer. The leaky aquitard has thickness b' and vertical hydraulic conductivity K'_v.

  Since the aquifer has uniform T, Eq. 9.32 is the correct $\Phi(h)$ relationship. Equation 9.30 is the general equation that applies in this case with leakage. Using Darcy's law, the leakage rate N [L/T] is the specific discharge into the aquifer through the leaky aquitard:

$$N = K'_v\frac{h_0 - h}{b'} \tag{9.35}$$

If the constant in Eq. 9.32 is chosen as $C_c = -Th_0$, the discharge potential for semiconfined flow is

$$\Phi = T(h - h_0) \qquad \text{(semiconfined aquifer)} \tag{9.36}$$

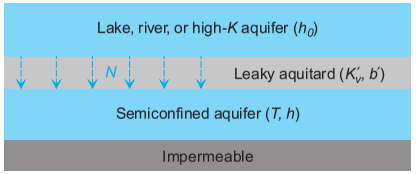


Figure 9.15 Vertical section through a semiconfined aquifer.

You can see that Φ is proportional to N and we can combine the two previous equations:

$$N = -\frac{\Phi}{Tb'/K'_v} \tag{9.37}$$

Substituting this definition of N into the general equation 9.30 results in a general equation specific to semiconfined flow:

$$\nabla^2\Phi = \frac{\Phi}{\lambda^2} \qquad \text{(semiconfined aquifer)} \tag{9.38}$$

where $\lambda = \sqrt{Tb'/K'_v}$ is a constant with units of length, commonly called the leakage factor. When λ is large, lateral flow in the aquifer tends to be large compared to leakage. When λ is small, leakage contributes to flow in a more significant way.

One equation like Eq. 9.32, 9.34, or 9.36 relates discharge potential to head $\Phi(h)$, and another equation relates discharge potential to location and time $\Phi(x, y, t)$. Think of Φ as an intermediate variable between h on one hand and x, y, t on the other. The $\Phi(h)$ relation depends only on the aquifer geometry and properties, while the $\Phi(x, y, t)$ relation depends on the spatial arrangement of discharges and boundary conditions in the aquifer.

To show how use of Φ leads to economy, consider the solution for steady radial flow to a well in an aquifer with constant T (Eq. 7.6):

$$h = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln r + C \tag{9.39}$$

where Q is the well discharge, r is the radial distance from the well to the point where h is predicted, and C is a constant. The corresponding solution for radial flow in an unconfined aquifer with a horizontal base is (Eq. 7.71):

$$h^2 = \frac{Q}{\pi K}\ln r + C \tag{9.40}$$

where K is horizontal hydraulic conductivity. The equivalent of these two solutions can be written as one discharge potential function for radial flow:

$$\Phi = \frac{Q}{2\pi}\ln r + D \tag{9.41}$$

where D is a constant and the $\Phi(h)$ relation is either Eq. 9.32 for a constant T aquifer, or Eq. 9.34 for an unconfined aquifer.

Several other types of aquifers can be modeled with the AEM. All that is required is a definition of the discharge potential–head relation $\Phi(h)$ that satisfies Eq. 9.27. Other $\Phi(h)$ definitions have been implemented in AEM models for aquifers with horizontal stratification and for aquifers with a sharp fresh-salt water interface defined by the Ghyben–Herzberg relation (Strack, 1989).

Example 9.3 Consider the situation of confined salt water interface flow shown in Figure 9.16. The aquifer is confined by an aquitard that has its base at sea level ($z = 0$). Assume that the depth to the interface is defined by the Ghyben–Herzberg relation, Eq. 3.46, repeated below:

$$z_s = \frac{\rho_f}{\rho_s - \rho_f} h$$

where ρ_f is the fresh water density and ρ_s is the salt water density. Define $\Phi(h)$ for an AEM model of horizontal aquifer flow in the fresh water portion of this coastal aquifer.

First we need to define T. Following that, we define $\Phi(h)$, so that Eq. 9.27 is satisfied. The transmissivity of the fresh water aquifer is K times the saturated thickness, which is z_s:

$$\begin{aligned} T &= K z_s \\ &= K \frac{\rho_f}{\rho_s - \rho_f} h \end{aligned}$$

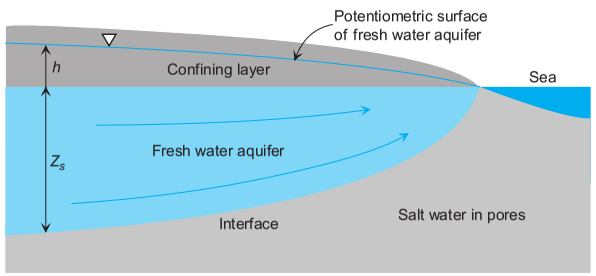


Figure 9.16 Vertical section through a confined coastal aquifer (Example 9.3).

If we insert this definition of T into the x component of Eq. 9.27, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial x} &= T \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \\ &= \left[K \frac{\rho_f}{\rho_s - \rho_f} \right] h \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \end{aligned}$$

Integrating both sides of the above with respect to x gives

$$\begin{aligned} \int \partial \Phi &= \left[K \frac{\rho_f}{\rho_s - \rho_f} \right] \int h \partial h \\ \Phi &= \left[K \frac{\rho_f}{\rho_s - \rho_f} \right] \frac{1}{2} h^2 + C_{ci} \end{aligned}$$

where C_{ci} is a constant of integration and the term in brackets is a constant. The last equation is our $\Phi(h)$ relation. We arrive at the same result if we analyze the y component of Eq. 9.27 instead of the x component.

Since the steady general equations and sometimes the transient general equations are linear, any number of solutions may be superposed. A particular problem is solved by constructing a discharge potential function $\Phi_t(x, y, t)$ that satisfies the general equation(s) and approximates the boundary conditions of the conceptual model. The total discharge potential Φ_t is a sum of discharge potential functions, each associated with particular elements representing aquifer boundary conditions:

$$\Phi_t(x, y, t) = \Phi_1(x, y, t) + \Phi_2(x, y, t) + \Phi_3(x, y, t) + \cdots + C \tag{9.42}$$

where Φ_1, Φ_2, etc., are analytic functions associated with specific elements and C is a constant.

If the general equation is Laplace's, $\Phi_1, \Phi_2, \ldots$ must all be solutions of Laplace's equation (Eq. 9.31). If the general equation includes transient or recharge terms (Eq. 9.28, 9.29, or 9.30), most of $\Phi_1, \Phi_2, \ldots$ can be solutions of the Laplace equation, but one or more of them must be solutions of the Poisson equation or the transient equation, so that Φ_t satisfies the general equation. As an example, consider a model of steady flow with a uniform recharge rate N. One of the solutions $\Phi_1, \Phi_2, \ldots$ would be a solution of Poisson's equation 9.30 and the rest would be solutions of Laplace's

equation to accommodate boundary conditions such as discharging wells and discharge along stream segments. This example could be stated mathematically as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{if} \quad & \nabla^2\Phi_1 = -N \\ \text{and} \quad & \nabla^2\Phi_2 = \nabla^2\Phi_3 = \nabla^2\Phi_{\ldots} = 0 \\ \text{then} \quad & \nabla^2\Phi_t = -N \end{aligned}$$

Some of the functions $\Phi_1, \Phi_2, \ldots$ contain no unknown parameters. For example, the function for a well of known discharge is completely defined at the outset. Other functions contain unknown parameters, which are determined by specifying boundary conditions at or near the element that the function represents. For example, consider a well element representing a well of unknown discharge but known head. The user specifies the head at the well screen radius. The unknown discharge is determined by writing an equation for the head at the location of the well screen.

Each specified boundary condition yields an equation, resulting in a system of linear equations that is solved by standard methods for the unknown parameters. If the number of unknowns U equals the number of equations E, the system of equations generates a square matrix that is solved by standard direct solution methods. If there are more equations than unknowns, $E > U$, the overspecified system of equations can be solved using least squares solution methods (Janković and Barnes, 1999b).

With any AEM model, head may be evaluated anywhere in the x, y domain by first evaluating the discharge potential $\Phi_t(x, y, t)$ and then determining the head from this discharge potential with the appropriate $\Phi(h)$ relation. Surface plots of head can be made by evaluating h at an array of points within an area of interest, and then contouring the results.

Analytic expressions for the gradient of the discharge potential may be derived by summing the derivatives of the discharge potential functions for each element:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial\Phi_t}{\partial x} &= \frac{\partial\Phi_1}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial\Phi_2}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial\Phi_3}{\partial x} + \cdots \\ \frac{\partial\Phi_t}{\partial y} &= \frac{\partial\Phi_1}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial\Phi_2}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial\Phi_3}{\partial y} + \cdots \end{aligned} \tag{9.43}$$

These analytic expressions are programmed into modeling software and are used when specifying certain boundary conditions and when tracing flow pathlines.

The most commonly used AEM two-dimensional elements and their associated discharge potential functions are summarized briefly in the following section. Functions for uniform cross-flow, point sinks (wells), line elements, and area sinks are discussed.

9.4.2 Common Elements

Each analytic element is a mathematical function $\Phi(x, y, t)$ that simulates the effects of a specific feature or boundary in an aquifer. Derivation of each solution presented in this section is beyond the scope of this book, and interested readers should see Strack (1989) or additional cited references for details. The aim here is to provide modelers with an overview of each type of element and how it is applied.

Uniform Flow. A simple solution that adds a steady uniform cross-flow to a model is

$$\Phi = -Q_{x0}x - Q_{y0}y \tag{9.44}$$

where Q_{x0} and Q_{y0} are constants equal to the x and y components of the aquifer discharge in the uniform flow. Equation 9.44 is a solution of the Laplace equation, and is a general form of the uniform flow equations 7.3 and 7.68 presented in Chapter 7.

Like all Laplace equation solutions, it can also be written as the real part of a complex function $\Omega(z) = \Phi + i\Psi, \quad z = x + iy$. The imaginary part of Ω is the stream function Ψ. It is constant along streamlines and its gradient is the same magnitude as the gradient of Φ, but orthogonal to it. Contours of Φ and Ψ for a uniform flow solution are shown in Figure 9.17.

When Φ and Ψ are contoured with the same contour interval, the resulting plot forms a flow net as described in Section 7.4. Any complex function $\Omega = \Phi + i\Psi$ has this property. With this formulation, the amount of discharge between adjacent stream function contours is equal to the contour interval $\Delta\Psi$.

Point Sink (Well). The solution for steady radial flow to a discharging well in terms of Φ is Eq. 9.41, where Q is the well discharge (positive for extraction, negative for injection) and r is the radial distance from the centerline of the well to the point where Φ is evaluated. Equation 9.41 is another solution of Laplace's equation and applies to confined and unconfined aquifers.

Contours of Φ and Ψ for this solution are shown in Figure 9.18. The stream function is discontinuous along what is known as a *branch cut*

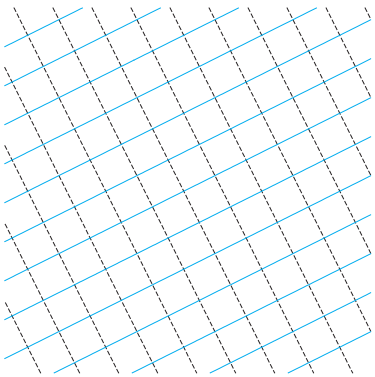


Figure 9.17 Contours of Φ (dashed) and Ψ (blue) for the uniform cross-flow solution with $Q_{x0} = 2Q_{y0}$.

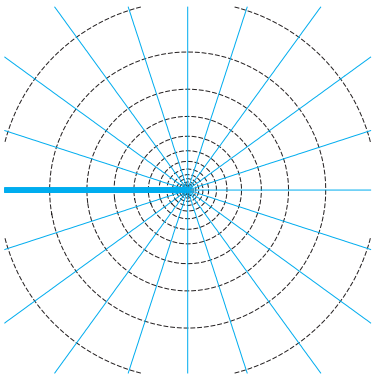


Figure 9.18 Contours of Φ (dashed) and Ψ (blue) for the point sink (well) solution.

emanating from the well in the negative x direction. On the contour plot, this discontinuity appears as a heavy blue line to the left of the well. In a physical sense, there must be a discontinuity in the stream function because the well extracts water from the flow domain. The magnitude of the discontinuity in the stream function across the branch cut equals the well discharge ($\Delta\Psi = Q$).

In the case of a semiconfined aquifer, the solution for a well is different, satisfies Eq. 9.38, and is given here without derivation:

$$\Phi = -\frac{Q\lambda}{2\pi r_w}\frac{K_0(r/\lambda)}{K_1(r_w/\lambda)} \tag{9.45}$$

where r_w is the well radius, and K_0 and K_1 are modified Bessel functions of the second kind, order zero and one, respectively. Interested readers should see Strack (1989, Section 14) for the derivation and details.

Line Elements. Several useful solutions of Laplace's equation have been derived for line elements. One of them is the line-sink, which represents extraction or injection of water along a line segment. The simplest type of line-sink is one with a constant extraction rate (discharge/length) along its length, the solution of which is shown in Figure 9.19. The line-sink potential Φ is continuous everywhere. Like the well solution, it has a branch cut discontinuity in Ψ. The magnitude of the discontinuity across the line-sink grows from $\Delta\Psi = 0$ at one end of the line-sink to $\Delta\Psi = Q$ at the other end, where Q is the total discharge of the line-sink. A discontinuity $\Delta\Psi = Q$ extends off to infinity from the line-sink.

Line-sinks are used to simulate discharges to/from linear features like streams, lakeshores, drains, and infiltration trenches. When a discharge-specified line-sink is used, Q is known and there are no unknowns to solve for. With a head-specified line-sink, the user specifies the head at some point(s)

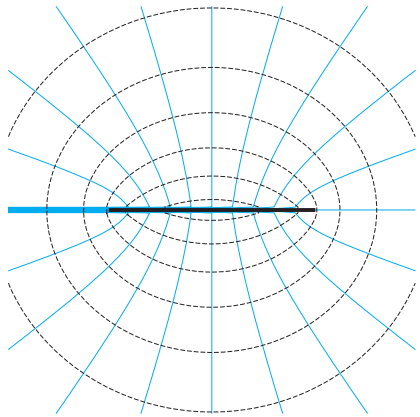


Figure 9.19 Contours of Φ (dashed) and Ψ (blue) for the line-sink solution. The heavy black line shows the line-sink location.

on the line-sink, and the unknown discharge parameters are determined so that the specified head condition(s) are met. Irregularly shaped constant head boundaries are created by placing a series of head-specified line-sinks end-to-end along the boundary.

Unlike line-sinks, line doublet elements have no net discharge, and serve to move discharge from one side of the element to the other while creating a discontinuity in Φ across the element. The stream function Ψ is continuous across a line doublet, so there is continuity of flow across the element. These elements are well suited to model impermeable or leaky barriers where there is a head (and Φ) difference across the barrier. A model with uniform flow and two barriers, one impermeable and the other leaky, is shown in Figure 9.20. The figure shows that Φ jumps across these boundaries while Ψ is continuous.

Line doublets are also used to simulate heterogeneity boundaries, because at the boundary there must be a jump in Φ to preserve continuity of h despite a jump in K, and continuity of flow is preserved across the boundary. Figure 9.21 shows a model with a polygonal heterogeneity in a uniform flow field. The polygon boundary is marked by a double set of contours where Φ is discontinuous along a string of line doublets. The stream function Ψ is continuous across the boundary. The head contour plot shows that the line doublet elements are capable of providing a close approximation of head continuity on the boundary.

Fitts (2010) uses a different approach to heterogeneity: separate models for separate subdomains. For example, the situation shown in Figure 9.21 would have two different models, one for the shaded area and another for the exterior of the shaded area. In this scheme, the inter-subdomain boundary is represented by line-sinks in each subdomain, and the strength of those line-sinks is determined with equations for head and discharge continuity across the boundary. This approach offers some computational efficiencies, and allows different subdomains to have different directions and ratios of anisotropy, using coordinate transformations like those seen in Section 7.4.4.

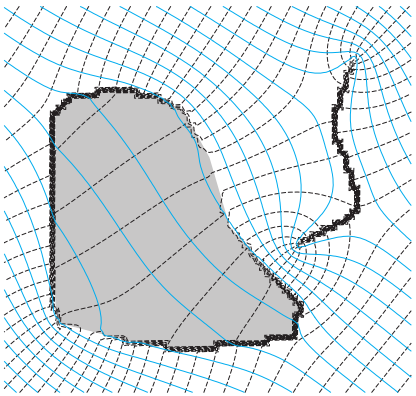


Figure 9.20 Contours of Φ and Ψ for an open-ended impermeable barrier and a closed leaky barrier in a uniform flow field. The interior of the closed barrier is shaded gray.

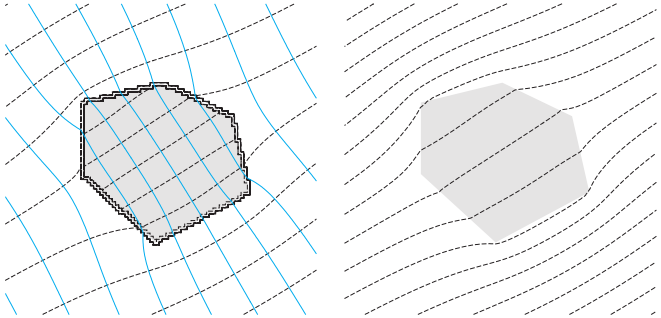


Figure 9.21 Contours of Φ (dashed) and Ψ (blue) (left) and contours of h (right) for a heterogeneity in a uniform flow. The heterogeneity, shaded, is three times as transmissive as the surrounding region.

Line dipole elements also have no net discharge. Instead of moving discharge from one side of the element to another like a line doublet, discharge is moved along the element. Flow is extracted along some of the element's length and injected elsewhere along the element's length. With line dipoles, Φ is continuous across the element while Ψ jumps. These elements are useful for modeling high conductivity linear features like drains or fractures (Figure 9.22).

Line elements can have a constant strength (one strength parameter per element), which is known as a zero-order element. For example, a zero-order line-sink has a constant extraction rate along the line segment. Alternatively, the element strength can vary along the element in a high-order line element (Janković and Barnes, 1999b). For a first-order line-sink the extraction rate varies linearly from one end to the other and there are two strength parameters per element. For a second-order line-sink, the extraction rate varies in a parabolic way from one end to the other and there are three strength parameters per element. It is possible to have elements with 10 or more strength parameters. More strength parameters are used to give a more accurate approximation of boundary conditions along an element.

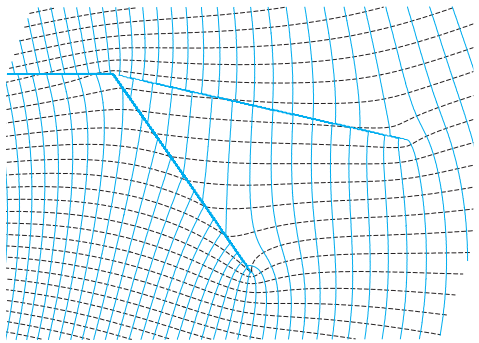


Figure 9.22 Contours of Φ (dashed) and Ψ (blue) for fracture/drain line dipole elements.

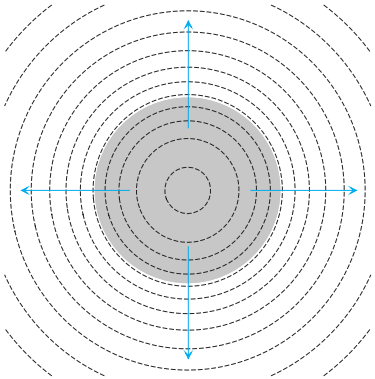


Figure 9.23 Contours of Φ (dotted lines) for a circular area source. The circular source area is shaded, and flow directions are shown in blue.

Area Sinks. Discharge potential functions have been derived for several different geometries of areal recharge/leakage, including circular areas and trapezoidal areas. The circular area source function shown in Figure 9.23 is relatively simple. Inside the circle, N is constant and the Poisson equation applies, while outside the circle, $N = 0$ and the Laplace equation applies. The solution for the inside of the circle is the same as the radially symmetric uniform recharge solutions presented in Chapter 7, Eqs. 7.14 and 7.73. Outside the circle, the solution is the same as the solution for a well with discharge equal to the amount of recharge inside the circle: $Q = \pi R^2 N$.

Strack and Janković (1999) presented area sink functions that allow a smooth, spatially variable distribution of N. These employ radial basis functions and basis points, where the value of N is specified or computed. The result is an irregular, smooth distribution of N that passes through specified or computed N values at each basis point. Basis points may be distributed irregularly. These spatially variable area sinks are useful for modeling irregular patterns of vertical leakage (Strack and Janković, 1999) and for modeling a combination of vertical leakage and transient storage fluxes (Fitts, 2010).

9.4.3 Example Model

The example is a hypothetical model demonstrated by Fitts (2010) created with the AnAqSim software (Fitts, 2012). This model has vertical leakage between multiple levels, anisotropy, and heterogeneity. The modeled domain is shown in Figure 9.24. There are seven different subdomains in the model. Subdomains 1, 6, and 7 represent single-layer portions of the model that are farther from the area of interest. Subdomains 2–5 are the multilevel area of interest near a stream, pond, and pumping well. This area has vertical leakage between the three layers and leakage between the surface waters and underlying aquifer. The properties of the seven subdomains are listed in Table 9.2. The subdomains that lack a top elevation are unconfined and the others are confined. There are pumping wells in subdomains 1, 5, and 7.

High-order line-sink elements represent all of the various line boundaries in the model, with three to six parameters per line element. Along the top edge of the model, the line boundary has a specified normal component of flux of $0.01\,\mathrm{m^3/day/m}$ into subdomains 1 and 7. At the bottom edge of the model, the line boundary has zero normal flux into subdomains 6 and 7. At the left edge of the model, a head of 15 m is specified in subdomains 1, 2, 4, 5, and 6. At the right edge of the model, a head of 20 m is specified in subdomain 7. The river line elements in subdomains 2 and 7 allow head-dependent flux in/out of the model.

Differing recharge rates, homogeneous within a subdomain, are specified at the top of subdomains 1, 2, 6, and 7. In subdomain 3 spatially variable area sinks simulate leakage through a resisting bed to an overlying pond with a head of 15.8 m. In subdomains 2–5, spatially variable area sinks simulate vertical leakage between layers.

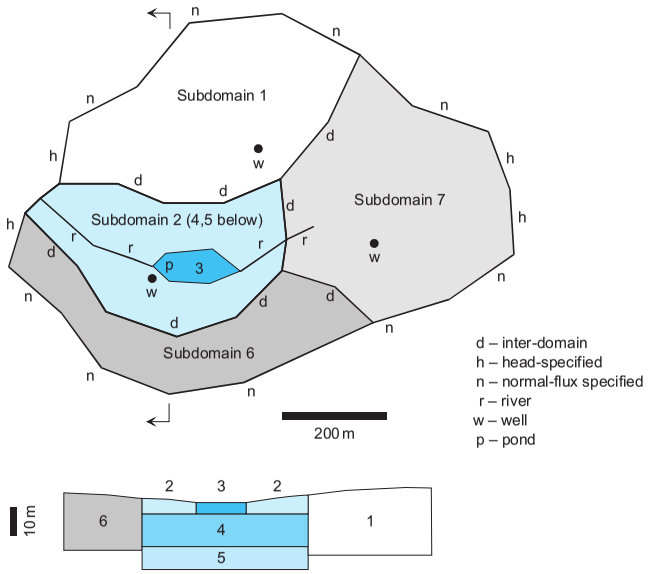


Figure 9.24 Analytic element model layout in plan view (top) and in cross-section (bottom).

Table 9.2 Properties of Analytic Element Example Model

Subdomain	Base el. (m)	Top el. (m)	Horizontal K_1, K_2 (m/day)	Angle K_1 to x axis (degrees)	Vertical K (m/day)	Storativity	Recharge (m/day)
1	−10		0.5, 0.25	90		0.10	0.0004
2	10		3.0, 1.5	0	0.3	0.10	0.0016
3	10	14	3.0, 1.5	0	0.3	0.003	
4	−2	10	1.0, 0.5	15	0.1	0.003	
5	−15	−2	5.0, 1.0	30	0.4	0.003	
6	−8		0.8, 0.2	−30		0.10	0.0006
7	−5		2.0, 2.0			0.10	0.0010

Model-simulated heads are shown in Figure 9.25. The pumping wells in subdomains 1 and 5 create asymmetric drawdown patterns due to anisotropic horizontal K. In the upper level, leakage to the pond creates a nearly flat area approaching the 15.8 m head in the pond. Figure 9.26 shows head profiles

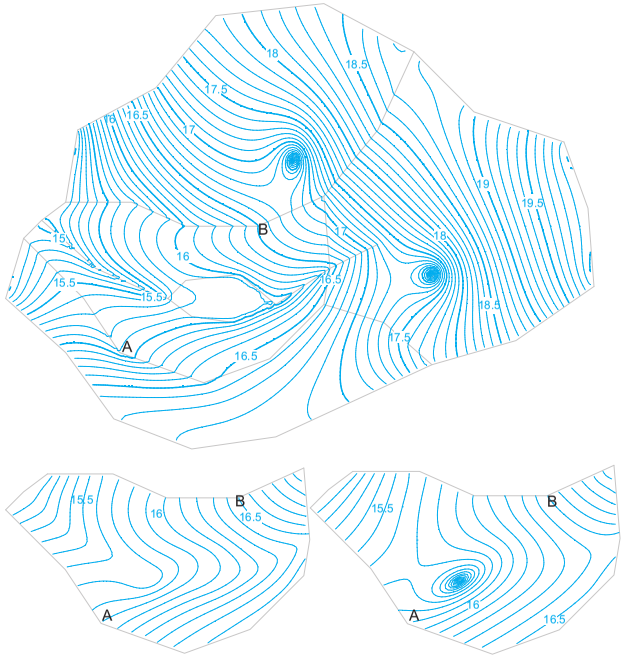


Figure 9.25 Model-simulated heads in the upper level (upper), middle level (lower left), and lower level (lower right) of the model. Contour interval is 0.1 m.

across the three-level area going through the pumping well in the lower level. The profiles show the area of flatter heads under the pond in the upper level and downward gradients and leakage caused by pumping at the well in the lower level.

9.5 Strengths and Limitations of These Methods

In general, the FDM and FEM have similar strengths and weaknesses, which are distinct from those of the AEM. The differences stem from the use of discretized domains in FDM and FEM models vs. nondiscretized domains in AEM models.

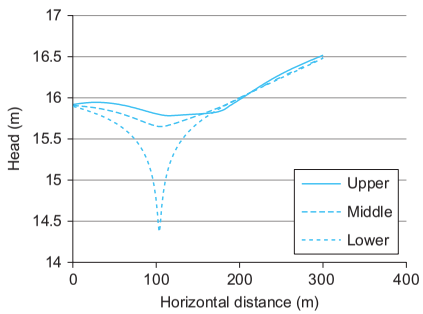


Figure 9.26 Model-simulated head profiles along line A–B shown in Figure 9.25.

In short, the AEM has higher accuracy and greater geometric flexibility, but is limited to systems with low to moderate complexity. The FDM and FEM have been adapted to a greater variety of flow conditions including unsaturated flow, multiphase flow, and variable density flow.

Most AEM solutions are exact solutions of the general equations, whereas the FDM and FEM use approximate solutions. The AEM generally provides more precise continuity of flow than the FDM or FEM. These accuracy issues are significant only in certain situations. If the discretization is fine enough, the FDM and FEM can usually provide sufficient accuracy. Near wells, drains, barriers, and other features that cause small-scale nonlinear head distributions, the accuracy of the AEM can be an important advantage. This high accuracy allows very fine detail even in a large-scale model. For example, it is possible to predict the head at a pumping well with reasonable accuracy in a model that spans tens or hundreds of kilometers. To do the same in an FDM or FEM model would require extremely fine domain discretization in the well vicinity and result in a very large system of equations.

The domain discretization of FDM models is limited to an orthogonal grid of rectangular blocks, which is less flexible than the triangular or quadrilateral elements of FEM models. Because of this difference, the approximation of boundary conditions can be more accurate in an FEM model than in an FDM model. The approximation of boundary conditions in an AEM model can be quite good since there is flexibility in the placement of analytic elements. An AEM model can easily grow in extent and complexity by simply adding more elements. However, enlarging the domain of an FDM or FEM model requires a lot of effort or possibly starting over.

The discretization and finite domains of the FDM and FEM methods mean that a larger amount of input is required than in a comparable AEM model. Each grid block or element requires input of hydraulic properties and elevations, and the entire external boundary of the modeled domain requires specified boundary conditions. Good user interface software has made generating even voluminous model input relatively easy for all methods.

In FDM and FEM models, the equations generated contain relatively few terms. For example, in a three-dimensional FDM model the equation for head at a node contains a total of seven unknown terms: the head at the node in question and the heads at the six neighboring nodes. FEM equations also only contain terms pertaining to the neighboring nodes, the number of which varies with the types of elements used. With both FDM and FEM, the system of equations generated has as many equations as there are nodes (often more than 10^5 equations), but each equation contains only a handful of nonzero terms. The system of these simultaneous equations generates a matrix that is sparse (mostly zeros), and these matrices can be solved efficiently with iterative solvers.

On the other hand, AEM models generate longer equations because each element is impacted by a large number of neighbor elements. With the AEM as described by Strack (1989) and Haitjema (1995), every element impacts every other element and the matrix that is generated is square and not at all sparse (no zeros). With the subdomain approach of Fitts (2010), the generated AEM matrix is somewhat sparse, but not nearly as sparse as FDM or FEM matrices. Solving a 10^5 equation FDM matrix with 7×10^5 nonzero terms may be comparable to solving a fully populated AEM matrix with 10^3 equations and 10^6 nonzero terms. As the amount of heterogeneity increases, the number of equations and complexity of the AEM solution increases. On the other hand, heterogeneity does little to alter the computation speed of FDM and FEM models. These differences in matrix structure and heterogeneity limit the AEM to problems with low to moderate complexity, while FDM and FEM models are better suited to simulate large complex systems. As computers evolve and improve, the complexity that is possible with all methods increases.

The mathematics underlying the methods differs greatly in its complexity. The FDM is based on relatively simple equations and concepts that are easily understood by a large percentage of model users. The FEM and the AEM are based on more complicated equations. The popularity of the FDM may in part be explained by its simplicity and the comfort that users have with the mathematics involved.

9.6 Modeling Process

We use groundwater flow models to assimilate the information we have and use it to help answer specific questions that stem from various construction, contamination, and water management issues. Often the questions we want to answer involve predictions of how the system would behave under some potential new conditions. For example, we may want to estimate the change in groundwater discharge to a stream and wetland if a nearby well field begins pumping at a proposed rate.

We typically have many bits of information about the groundwater system: head measurements, hydraulic conductivity tests, geologic maps, boring logs, geophysical surveys, stream discharge measurements, pumping records, precipitation records, and estimates of recharge. This *system information*, the evidence available for defining the groundwater system, is always scant. Even if we have dozens of borings and wells, there is a lot of territory between them where we have to make an educated guess about the materials, heads, discharges, and chemistry. We might have stream discharge data at one gage in the model area, but we don't have stream discharge data elsewhere and we aren't sure what fraction of the measured discharge is groundwater discharge. Despite the incomplete nature of this information, we want to use it wisely to answer our questions and have some notion of how uncertain the answers are.

Models require inputs and they generate outputs. Typical groundwater model inputs and outputs are listed in Table 9.3. Some of the inputs pertain to the concept of the model, such as the spatial distribution of materials and the location, type, and timing of model boundary conditions. Some examples of conceptual inputs are the elevations and horizontal distribution of an aquifer layer, the location of stream connections to an aquifer, and the type of the stream connection (e.g., specified head, head-dependent flux, or specified flux).

Other inputs, *parameters*, are a bit simpler and are represented by scalar values that can be easily adjusted in the modeling process. Common parameters include hydraulic conductivity, porosity, and specific storage. In some models, well discharges, boundary heads, and boundary discharges can be parameters, but it is also common for these to be fixed inputs. Parameters usually apply to specific zones that are defined by the model concept.

In a well-conceived groundwater model, both the inputs and outputs are in accord with the system information. Model-generated outputs (e.g., simulated heads and discharges) are compared to observed heads and discharges to assess the fit of the model to reality. During the modeling process inputs are adjusted, within reasonable limits based on the system information, to produce a model that generates outputs consistent with the system information. An outline of the modeling process is shown in Figure 9.27.

Table 9.3 Groundwater Model Inputs and Outputs

Conceptual Inputs
Processes modeled (e.g., variable water density vs. constant water density)
Spatial distribution of modeled region and material zones
Type and spatial/temporal distribution of boundary conditions
Spatial/temporal distribution of recharge zones
Location of pumping wells
Initial conditions for transient models
Spatial/temporal distribution of solute sources*
Parameter Inputs
Hydraulic conductivity of material zones
Porosity of material zones
Storage properties of material zones
Conductance of head-dependent flux boundaries**
Recharge rates
Well discharges
Head or flux at boundary conditions
Solute source magnitude*
Model Outputs
Simulated hydraulic heads
Simulated discharges to surface waters
Simulated solute concentrations*

* In solute transport models (see Chapter 11).
** For example, riverbed conductance, which is K_p/thickness.

The first steps in modeling involve assembling all the system information, and choosing the appropriate general equations (see Section 6.10) and modeling software. Then, the model concept and parameters are defined (**parameterization**). Variations of the model are run with different combinations of the input parameters and possibly variations on the concept, with the aim of constructing model(s) that represent the system information as closely as possible. **Calibration** is the process of adjusting inputs to match one or more sets of observed system data. Calibration is done prior to using a model in predictive mode to simulate future "what if" scenarios where we don't have the benefit of observations. The next sections give an overview of parameterization, calibration, and uncertainty, topics that are covered thoroughly in the textbook by Hill and Tiedeman (2007).

9.6.1 Conceptual Models, Parameters, and Complexity

In the simplest of models there may be just one zone and a few parameters to represent that zone and possibly a few more to represent some boundary

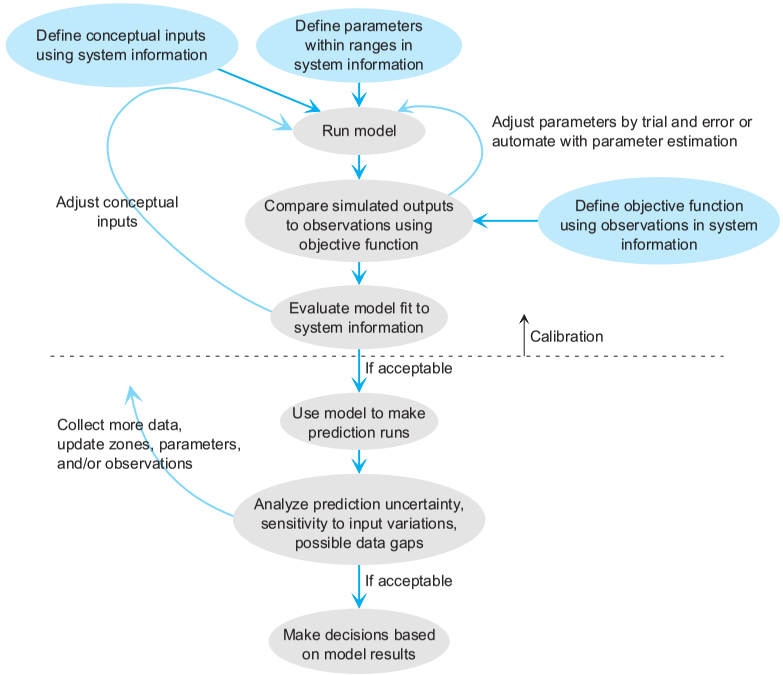


Figure 9.27 Schematic of the modeling process. System information enters into the process at the steps shown in blue.

conditions. At the other end of the spectrum are models with tens or hundreds of parameters. As the number of zones and parameters increases, so does the computation time and the time needed to process and analyze the results. A long-standing issue among groundwater modelers is determining the appropriate level of model complexity.

Ideally, a model will be as simple as possible, but possess enough complexity to reasonably (1) represent the system information, (2) reproduce observed system behaviors, and (3) represent features and processes key to the model's predictions (Hill, 2006). Treading this line of minimal, but functional complexity is known as *parsimony*, an idea that applies to mathematical modeling in all fields. Albert Einstein summed up this concept as "simple as possible but not simpler." Arriving at the right level of complexity is a matter of figuring out what simplifications can be made without omitting something critical to the observed system and predicted system behaviors.

To this end, carefully examine whether the system information supports the level of complexity in the model; avoid defining more zones and parameters than is warranted by the system information. For example, if all of your head and hydraulic conductivity measurements are made with wells that are screened over the full saturated thickness of the aquifer, and if boring logs reveal fairly uniform profiles, you lack information to justify creating various zones in the aquifer with differing vertical hydraulic conductivitites. Nothing in the system information will allow you to reasonably estimate different K_v values in multiple zones. One way to simplify and reduce the number of parameters is to define parameters that represent more than a single zone. An example would be a parameter that scales all recharge rates in the model, scaling them all up or down by the same factor.

In constructing a model, it is good to start simple and slowly add complexity if the system information supports it and if preliminary results indicate the need for it. At each step, it is important for you and others to be able to understand the model and easily test the impact of various conceptual and parameter assumptions. As complexity builds, these tasks become more daunting.

One simplification that can often be made is to represent nonlinear aquifer types (unconfined, salt water interface aquifers, for example) as linear (confined) aquifers. Here, nonlinear means that heads, discharges, and aquifer parameters like K are not linearly related in the form $h = AK + B$, where A and B are constants. In nonlinear aquifers, the saturated thickness and transmissivity depend on head, which makes relations like $h(K)$ nonlinear. Models with many nonlinear relations between parameters and outputs are more computationally demanding and are more prone to nonconvergence than models with mostly linear relations. Calling a nonlinear aquifer confined fixes its saturated thickness, which is often a minor compromise. A case in point would be an unconfined aquifer where the saturated thickness near a well field varies $\pm 10\%$, while the system information only constrains the aquifer K near the well field plus or minus a factor of two. In this case calibration will help home in on an appropriate K regardless of whether you call the aquifer confined or unconfined.

Often a modeling effort is focused on developing a single conceptual model, one with a fixed set of the conceptual inputs listed in Table 9.3. Although this approach is cheaper and simpler than developing multiple

conceptual models, it precludes the possibility of exploring the suitability of conceptual inputs and understanding the uncertainty in predictions that stem from conceptual inputs. Whenever possible, it is wise to develop an array of models with different conceptual inputs, calibrate them, and use them all to make predictions.

Stochastic approaches to groundwater modeling take this multiple conceptual model notion further. Instead of defining a few deterministic conceptual models, calibrating them, and making predictions with each, a large number of such models are run, with the input parameters for individual model runs determined based on a probability distribution of each parameter's value. In some cases, the conceptual model zonation of individual models is also varied, using probabilistic descriptions of the aquifer heterogeneity and structure. The aggregate probability of the resulting model is a function of the probabilities of the inputs. Gómez-Hernández (2006) makes the case for using this approach to quantify the uncertainty in model predictions.

9.6.2 Model Calibration and Parameter Estimation

Model calibration is the process of adjusting the parameters and possibly the conceptual model to achieve a close match to observed conditions in the real groundwater system. In Figure 9.27, model calibration involves steps in the upper part above the dotted line. In flow model calibration, simulated heads and discharges are typically compared to their observed counterparts. If a model is well calibrated, there will be some random deviations between simulated and observed data but not systematic deviations. If there are systematic deviations such as most simulated heads exceeding observed heads, the calibration is poor and adjustments should be made.

In thinking about how to adjust and calibrate a flow model, it helps to go back to the basics, Darcy's law:

$$q_x = -K_x \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \tag{9.46}$$

If the head gradients in a model are too large, the relations in Darcy's law indicate that the modeled discharges are too large and/or the modeled conductivities are too low.

Consider an example where the simulated heads in a regional flow model are systematically higher and head gradients are steeper than observed, as shown in Figure 9.28. The aquifer is unconfined, and water enters the aquifer as recharge and leaves as discharge to local streams. Assuming that the constant

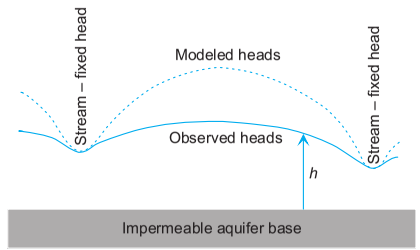


Figure 9.28 Vertical cross-section comparing modeled heads with observed heads.

heads assigned at the streams are correct, there are two kinds of adjustments that could be made to eliminate the systematic error in the heads:

1. Increase hydraulic conductivities in the aquifer, or
2. Decrease the rate of recharge applied.

If the discharges to streams and/or wells are known to be correct, then the hydraulic conductivities should be increased. Why this is so can be seen from Darcy's law; increasing K allows the same flux of water to be transmitted with smaller gradients. On the other hand, if the conductivities are known to be correct and the discharges to streams are too high, the recharge rate should be lowered.

In relatively simple models with few parameters, calibration adjustments can be done by repeated trials, comparing model outputs to observations and other system information. This process can be automated and quantified, which is particularly helpful in more complex models. One step in the automation is to define a numerical measure of the fit of outputs to observations, known as an **objective function**. Another automation step is to use linear regression methods to compute a set of parameters that optimizes the fit as measured by the objective function. Hill and Tiedeman (2007) provide a thorough text on implementing these parameter estimation methods. PEST (Doherty, 2010) and UCODE (Poeter et al., 2005) are widely used parameter estimation software packages that can link to groundwater modeling software.

A typical objective function O is defined as a weighted least-squares function that incorporates weighted observations of head and discharge as well as prior estimates of some parameters:

$$O = \sum_{i=1}^{N_h} w_i (h_i - \hat{h}_i)^2 + \sum_{j=1}^{N_q} w_j (q_j - \hat{q}_j)^2 + \sum_{k=1}^{N_p} w_k (p_k - \hat{p}_k)^2 \tag{9.47}$$

where N_h is the number of observed heads, h_i is the ith observed head, $\hat{h}_i$ is the modeled head corresponding to the ith observed head, w_i is the weight of the ith observed head, N_q is the number of observed discharges, q_j is the jth observed discharge, $\hat{q}_j$ is the modeled discharge corresponding to the jth observed discharge, w_j is the weight of the jth observed discharge, N_p is the number of prior estimates of parameters, p_k is the kth prior parameter estimate, $\hat{p}_k$ is the modeled parameter value corresponding to the kth prior parameter, and w_k is the weight of the kth prior parameter. A common type of observed discharge is an estimated baseflow discharge for a stream reach based on stream discharge measurements. An example prior parameter estimate is a measured K from a pumping test. The weights w_i, w_j, and w_k in the objective function can be adjusted to account for differing units in the observations and prior parameter estimates and for varying importance of and confidence in these values. If the model exactly matches the observations and prior parameter estimates ($h_i = \hat{h}_i$, $q_j = \hat{q}_j$, and $p_j = \hat{p}_j$ for all i, j, and k), $O = 0$. Of course, no model results in a perfect match, so O is finite. The smaller O is, the closer the match of the simulation to the observations and prior parameter estimates; O is a single number that measures the overall fit of the model.

Equation 9.47 is not the only possible definition of an objective function. Objective functions can include correlations between associated parameters and a variety of observation types besides heads and flows. For example, you could incorporate an observation of groundwater velocity from a tracer test or an observation of groundwater age from isotopic studies. See Hill and Tiedeman (2007) and Doherty (2010) for more details on objective function options. It is desirable to define an objective function that includes as many discharges as possible in addition to heads, and other kinds of observations if they are available.

Once an objective function is defined, multiple model runs are made to home in on the set of parameter values that produces a minimum value of O. This can be done by trial and error or it can be automated with parameter estimation software that uses linear regression. Automated parameter estimation can save a modeler time in the calibration process, but careful thinking is still required. The automated techniques can yield unreasonable results if insufficient constraints and observations are supplied. For example, if there are no discharge values in the system information and the objective function is only based on heads ($N_q = N_p = 0$), the information is insufficient to produce a unique parameter set that minimizes O. As long as the model's hydraulic conductivities and discharges are increased or decreased by the same proportion, the pattern of heads and O will remain the same. In this situation, calibration may result in a model with erroneous recharge rates and other key discharges.

9.6.3 Model Results, Predictions, and Uncertainty

When interpreting flow model results, it is important to bear in mind the huge simplifying assumptions that went into creating the model. Even complex well-calibrated models are, at best, a crude representation of the real flow system, since actual groundwater flow media are extremely complex and sparsely characterized. That is not to say that models are worthless. Models, with their simplifications and uncertainty, are usually our best basis for decision making. Since significant error and uncertainty are unavoidable, modelers should work to understand and quantify them to the extent possible.

Error and uncertainty in models can be due to errors in the model concept, errors in the model parameters, and errors in the observations the model was calibrated to. Of these, the observation errors are usually small compared to the concept/parameter errors. Errors in concept and parameters are linked—one begets the other. For example, if the model concept represents a key aquifer with too little saturated thickness, the calibration will compensate in order to create realistic heads and discharges, resulting in horizontal K and velocity that are too high for the aquifer. Calibration leads to parameter sets that can offset concept errors and make for a reasonable fit to observations.

It is possible to calibrate several different conceptual models so that they fit the observations to a similar degree, each with a unique parameter set that complements the particular conceptual model. When put into predictive mode, these different calibrated models will predict an array of different answers. The range of answers acquired in this way gives a sense of the uncertainty in the answer, if the suite of conceptual models broadly covers the likely range of possible concepts.

For this reason, a more thorough picture of model uncertainty and error is gained by developing multiple model concepts and calibrating each one separately (Bredehoeft, 2005; Refsgaard et al., 2006; Rojas et al., 2010), creating an array of concept/calibrated parameter sets. Several different conceptual models of western Cape Cod were calibrated, as discussed in Section 9.2.3. For ten different conceptual models that were calibrated, the fit to observations was good, yielding similar calibration statistics. The average magnitude of the difference between simulated and observed heads (mean of $|h_i - \hat{h}|$) was 1.41 to 2.13 ft for these ten models (Walter and Leblanc, 2007). Modeled and observed heads matched pretty closely, since heads in the modeled area varied over a

60 ft range. This demonstrates that it is possible to get a close calibration using various concept/parameter combinations.

In practice, multiple concepts are only pursued on larger projects since it is costly to do so. Recognize that all model conceptualizations are simple and inaccurate to some degree, and the only way to assess the uncertainty due to concept is to test multiple model concepts. If only one model concept is analyzed and predictive uncertainty is estimated based solely on parameter variations for the one concept, predictive uncertainty could be underestimated.

Often only a few parameters are critical to calibration or to a particular output of a predictive model. It is enlightening to examine which parameters are having the greatest impact. This is done by analyzing the **sensitivity** of the objective function or a predictive model output to input parameters. For each input parameter, a few runs are made to determine how much the objective function or predicted output (for example, the predicted travel time from a potential contamination source to a well) changes per change in the input parameter's value. Mathematically, the sensitivity is a partial derivative defined as

$$\frac{\partial O}{\partial P_i} \tag{9.48}$$

where O is the predicted output or objective function and P_i is the ith parameter. The larger $\partial O/\partial P_i$ is, the more sensitive O is to variations in P_i. Sensitivities are computed separately for each input parameter. Care must be taken when comparing sensitivities for different parameters, since the sensitivity contains the units of both O and P_i. For example, a K parameter that is approximately 30 m/day will tend to have a much smaller sensitivity than a storativity (S) parameter (dimensionless) that is about 0.0003. Comparing these two sensitivities would be like comparing apples to mustard seeds! To avoid this issue, sensitivities are often scaled by the magnitude of the parameter (Hill and Tiedeman, 2007).

Scaled sensitivities for one of the western Cape Cod MODFLOW models discussed in Section 9.2.3 are shown in Figure 9.29. The objective function and fit of the model were most sensitive to recharge, which stands to reason since recharge is the sole source of water to the aquifer and impacts heads and discharges directly. In this model, the recharge was treated as a known input, using a value based on numerous prior studies of this aquifer. The model was also sensitive to variations in the horizontal K of permeable shallow sands, but less sensitive to the horizontal K of less permeable intermediate and deep layers because most flow is transmitted in the shallow sands. Results were insensitive to the vertical K of all units.

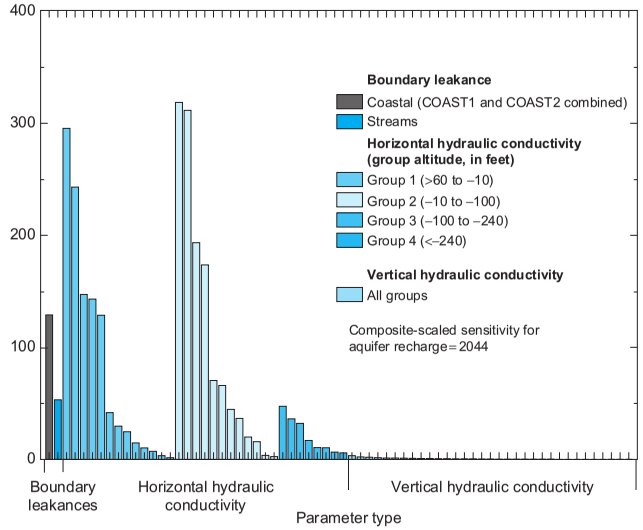


Figure 9.29 Scaled sensitivities of parameters in one of the MODFLOW models of western Cape Cod. From U.S. Geological Survey (Walter and LeBlanc, 2007).

If the objective function is insensitive to a parameter, that means that the objective function lacks information that can shed much light on that parameter. For example, in the Cape Cod model, the sensitivities of the objective function to vertical K values were small because heads are mostly a function of the resistance to horizontal flow, not vertical flow. This is so because flow paths cover great horizontal distances ($\sim 10^5$ m) compared to vertical distances ($\sim 10^2$ m). If the objective function had included some measured vertical hydraulic gradients, it would have been more sensitive to variations in vertical K.

Sensitivities can also be computed to assess how sensitive a predicted model result is to the input parameters. Such sensitivities can help steer additional investigations that will reduce prediction uncertainty. Consider a hypothetical model that aims to quantify the impact a proposed well field would have on groundwater discharges to a nearby wetland. A sensitivity analysis might reveal that the predicted change in discharge to the wetland is primarily a function of two parameters: (1) the horizontal K of the local aquifer, and (2) the vertical K of the sediment between the wetland and aquifer. The calibrated model objective function might be sensitive to the aquifer

horizontal K but not the vertical K of the sediment, because the system information is plentiful for the aquifer, but lacking for the wetland sediment. The wetland discharge predictions would be sensitive to the sediment vertical K, but the calibration objective function would be insensitive to it. To reduce uncertainty in the prediction requires additional system information to define the sediment vertical K. Perhaps vertical head gradients could be measured across the sediment layer, vertical K measurements could be made on sediment cores, or wetland discharge rates could be measured. Then these new measurements could be incorporated into the objective function to do a better job of calibrating the vertical K of the wetland sediment.

Analyzing sensitivities is a good way to find out what additional forms of system information ought to be collected. If there is a parameter that the current system information and objective function is insensitive to, but which a key prediction output is sensitive to, collect more system information that would allow the objective function to become sensitive to the parameter.

9.7 Problems

Answers are given at the back of the book for starred (*) problems.

1. What is a finite difference as compared to a derivative? Explain with an example graph of some nonlinear function y vs. x.
2. *Derive the simplest possible form of Eq. 9.5 (finite difference equation for one node), for the case of three-dimensional steady flow, homogeneous and isotropic conductivity ($K = K_x = K_y = K_z$), and uniform grid spacing ($\Delta x = \Delta y = \Delta z$). State in words what this equation means.
3. Derive the same finite difference equation that you ended up with in the previous problem by starting with the three-dimensional Laplace equation ($\nabla^2 h = 0$) and then replacing all partial derivatives in that equation with finite difference fractions. Assume a uniform grid spacing and homogeneous, isotropic conductivity. Under these conditions a second derivative in the x direction would be, for example,

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\Delta\,(\Delta h/\Delta x)}{\Delta x}$$
$$= \frac{((h_{x+} - h)/\Delta x) - ((h - h_{x-})/\Delta x)}{\Delta x}$$

11

Groundwater Contamination

Key Terms

point sources	500	Interfacial tension	519
nonpoint sources	500	capillary pressure	520
NAPL	500	residual NAPL saturation	524
septic tank	501	Advection	527
leaching field	501	tortuosity	530
Leachate	503	molecular diffusion coefficient	530
LNAPL	506	Colloids	535
DNAPL	506	macrodispersion	547
aromatic compounds	509	macrodispersion coefficient	547
aliphatic compounds	509	dispersivity	547
Functional groups	509	bailer	563
Isomers	511	Peristaltic pumps	563
solubility	512	Slurry walls	569
Raoult's law	514	sheet pilings	570
vapor pressure	515	Grout	570
VOC	515	soil vapor extraction	573
saturation	518	air sparging	575
wetting fluid	518	Bioremediation	577
nonwetting fluid(s)	518	mineralization	578
ganglia	518	bioventing	579

Contents

11.1	Introduction	499
11.2	Contamination Sources	500
11.3	Organic Contaminants	505
11.4	Nonaqueous-Phase Liquids	516
11.5	Solute Transport Processes	527
11.6	Case Studies of Solute Transport	537
11.7	Modeling Solute Transport	545
11.8	Investigating Contamination	561
11.9	Remediating Contamination	567
11.10	Problems	581

11.1 Introduction

Groundwater contamination follows nearly everything else in this book because you need most of what precedes it to understand the many interwoven processes involved. The fate of subsurface contamination depends on the local geology, groundwater flow patterns, pore-scale processes, and molecular-scale

Groundwater Science, Second Edition. DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-384705-8.00011-X
© 2013, 2002 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

processes. Contamination might spread rapidly within a high-conductivity sand lens, or it might diffuse at a snail's pace through a low-conductivity clay. Some contaminants adsorb onto the surface of aquifer solids, moving very little from their source, while others migrate freely with the flowing pore water, sometimes ending up many kilometers from their source. Chemical reactions along the way can cause a contaminant to disappear, or worse, appear from apparently nowhere.

When we speak of groundwater contamination, we mean solutes dissolved in the water that can render it unfit for our use or unfit for an ecosystem that the water enters. Most natural waters contain at least some amount of dissolved substances that we think of as contaminants. Each glass of water we drink contains some lead and arsenic, for example. But in most cases, these substances are present at very low concentrations that pose no risk for us. For a contaminant to be a true problem, it must be present at a concentration that poses some significant risk to human health or an ecosystem.

The most common contaminants and their important properties are introduced first. Then the processes that affect their movement in the subsurface are discussed, followed by a few case studies. Modeling methods and field methods are then introduced briefly. The chapter ends with an overview of tactics for remediating groundwater contamination.

11.2 Contamination Sources

Sources of groundwater contamination come in a great variety of sizes and shapes. It may be a leaking underground pipeline or tank, a wastewater lagoon, a septic system leaching field, a spill into a drain at a factory, or leaking barrels of waste chemicals. These examples are all relatively small and would be classified as **point sources**. On the other hand, **nonpoint sources** are larger, broadly distributed sources. Examples of nonpoint sources include polluted precipitation, pesticides applied to a cropland, and runoff from roadways and parking lots.

Sometimes contamination is introduced to the subsurface as an aqueous solution such as septic system effluent or landfill leachate. This is not always the case, though. The source of contamination can be a spilled separate liquid phase like gasoline or dry-cleaning solvent. These liquids, usually organic, are known by the acronym **NAPL**, for nonaqueous-phase liquid. NAPLs can persist in the subsurface and slowly dissolve into the water, acting as a continuous point source for years. Organic contamination and NAPLs are such a

large portion of groundwater contamination problems that they are discussed separately in subsequent sections.

11.2.1 Leaking Storage Tanks

Tanks are widely used to store fuels and chemicals, and many of these have leaked over the years. Underground tanks have caused the most contamination, because they can leak slowly for a long time without being discovered. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency estimated that by 1996 there had been 318,000 releases from underground storage tanks reported at the federal, state, and local levels in the U.S. (EPA, 1996). The most common tank sources are gas tanks at filling stations, and fuel and solvent storage tanks at industrial facilities. What leaks out of these are organic NAPLs.

Most tanks installed before the 1970s were bare steel tanks that tended to corrode. Many of these tanks and their associated piping eventually sprang leaks when corrosion went too far. Most of us have seen gas stations, temporarily closed, with gaping excavations made for removal of the old tanks and installation of the new.

Newer tank systems are most commonly made of fiberglass-reinforced plastic, coated and cathodically protected steel, or composites of these two materials. Cathodic protection greatly slows the rate of galvanic corrosion of buried steel tanks and piping. Hundreds of thousands of these new types of tanks have been in service in the U.S. for up to 30 years, with very few failures reported (EPA, 1988). New tanks sometimes have double wall layers with leak-detection devices between the walls. As of 1998, underground storage tanks in the U.S. have to meet certain requirements regarding leak detection, spill and overfill protection, and corrosion protection.

11.2.2 Septic Systems

Septic systems for subsurface disposal of human wastewater are the rule in more rural areas not served by sewers and sewage treatment systems. Most septic systems serve a single household, but some larger systems serve a cluster of homes and/or offices.

A typical septic system starts in the series of drainpipes in a home's plumbing system. These all connect and drain to one pipe that runs outside to a buried **septic tank**, where solids settle and are trapped. The tank needs to be pumped out periodically to remove accumulated solids. From the tank, wastewater flows to a **leaching field**, usually a network of porous distribution pipes set in a porous material in the unsaturated zone (Figure 11.1).

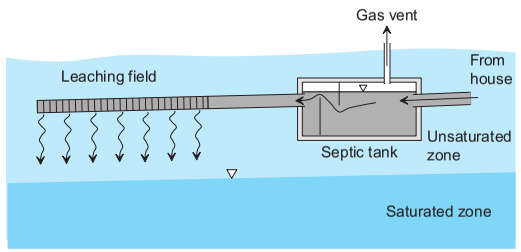


Figure 11.1 Typical household septic system. The septic tank has baffles to trap solids and a vent for gases.

Wastewater contains dissolved organic compounds that fuel redox reactions in microbes that live in the system. Redox reactions in the tank are usually anaerobic, including fermentation, methane generation, and sulfate reduction (Wilhelm et al., 1994). The water leaving the tank has high concentrations of organic compounds, CO_2, and ammonium (NH_4^+).

In the leaching field, oxygen is available and aerobic respiration and nitrification are the key processes (Table 10.13). The concentrations of organic compounds and NH_4^+ decrease, CO_2 is evolved, and the nitrate (NO_3^-) concentration increases. It is typical for effluent leaving the unsaturated zone of a properly functioning leaching field to have nitrate concentrations in the range of 20 to 70 mg/L (NO_3^-–N: mass of nitrogen in nitrate per volume), which exceeds the U.S. drinking water maximum contaminant level (MCL) of 10 mg/L (NO_3^-–N). In most septic systems, nitrate is a groundwater contaminant of concern. Some septic system designs include another anaerobic zone beyond the aerobic zone in the leaching field, where denitrification (Table 10.13) reduces nitrate concentrations in the effluent (Robertson and Cherry, 1995; Robertson et al., 2000).

It has recently come to light that wastewater effluent from commercial and household disposal systems can also contain a range of chemical compounds found in medications, food, personal care products, and household products (Kolpin et al., 2002; Standley et al., 2008). Chemicals in medications and food pass through humans and persist in the system effluent. For example, caffeine has been used as an indicator of septic system contamination (Seiler et al., 1999). Hormones are particularly troubling chemicals that persist long enough to migrate through the disposal system to groundwaters and surface waters, where they can harm aquatic life. In Cape Cod, Massachusetts, where over 85% of homes have septic systems, several ponds in the sand and gravel aquifer contained estrogenic hormones at concentrations approaching those known to induce physiological responses in fish (Standley et al., 2008).

Septic systems fail when the leaching field doesn't have enough access to oxygen to fully degrade the organic carbon with aerobic respiration. This can happen when the system is placed too close to the water table, in soils that are too fine grained, or in old systems that become clogged with a biological mat that remains saturated.

11.2.3 Landfills

The term *landfill* covers a broad range of facilities that harbor a range of different potential contaminants. Depending on the landfill, its contents may include municipal solid wastes (MSW), construction debris, or industrial wastes like incinerator ash and paper mill sludge. MSW landfills are the most common variety, handling household refuse.

Not many decades ago, we knew landfills as *dumps*, and they were nothing more than unlined pits filled with refuse. Dumps were usually placed on property of low value like an abandoned gravel pit or a swampy parcel. Unfortunately these were often places where water could move rapidly from the refuse to groundwater or surface water.

Infiltrating water moves down through the refuse, picking up dissolved constituents on its way. **Leachate** is water that percolates out of the base of the refuse. It usually has a high dissolved solids content, and it may also pick up dissolved organic contaminants, depending on what is in the refuse. Older dumps, numbering in the tens of thousands in the U.S., have generated many leachate plumes. In more permeable settings, these plumes have reached kilometers in length.

Modern landfills have low-permeability caps to limit infiltration, and liner and leachate collection systems to intercept and treat what leachate is generated (Figure 11.2). The low-permeability layers in the cap and/or liner may be made of remoulded clay or synthetic liner membranes. Synthetic membranes are now made of plastics with welded seams or of low-permeability clay interwoven with a synthetic fabric (geosynthetic clay liners). A modern landfill is operated one small, uncapped cell at a time, to minimize the area of refuse that is exposed to infiltration. This strategy minimizes the amount of leachate generated.

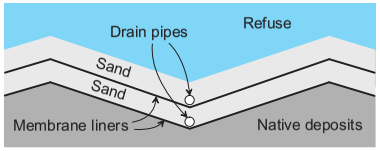


Figure 11.2 Vertical cross-section through a modern double-lined landfill liner system. The upper sand layer and drainpipe are the primary leachate collection system. Leachate collects in the pipes, which drain to a treatment plant. The lower leachate collection layer and the membrane are redundant systems, which would only be needed in case of a leak in the primary (upper) liner. The corrugated shape of the liner system base helps leachate drain effectively.

11.2.4 Others

There are too many potential contamination sources to list them all, but some of the other more common ones are listed below with a brief summary about each.

- *Injection wells.* Some kinds of liquid wastes are disposed of in injection wells. These operate like a pumping well in reverse, forcing fluids out of the well screen into the surrounding formation. The wells should be designed to inject into a formation that is isolated from any useful aquifers or surface water ecosystems. The types of wastes most commonly injected are brines and other waters recovered from oil fields, fluids from solution mining, and treated wastewaters.
- *Pesticides, herbicides, and fertilizers.* Modern farming includes several practices that can lead to groundwater contamination: pesticide, herbicide, and fertilizer application, irrigation, and animal waste storage. Pesticides and herbicides are usually organic compounds that are sprayed on fields in an aqueous solution. Many of these compounds biodegrade rapidly, but some are persistent and contaminate groundwaters over broad areas. Fertilizer application can result in high nitrate and phosphate concentrations in groundwater, and high nutrient loads in surface runoff.
- *Animal wastes.* Concentrated animal feed lots for cattle, pigs, and other meat animals generate large amounts of animal wastes that can contaminate recharge to underlying groundwater. Common contaminants in these settings include nitrate, veterinary pharmaceuticals (antibiotics, among others), and steroid hormones, (Bartelt-Hunt et al., 2011).
- *Irrigation.* When crops are irrigated, most of the applied water infiltrates, is transpired, or evaporates. Evaporation and transpiration of irrigated water leave the remaining water with higher solute concentrations. Especially in drier climates and where the water used for irrigation has high dissolved solids to begin with, irrigation can lead to the accumulation of

salts and other contaminants in the soils and in local surface waters. Some fertilizers are salts, and dissolution of them adds dissolved solids in soil moisture and runoff. Selenium is commonly concentrated to high levels in irrigation runoff in arid parts of the western United States with selenium-rich marine sedimentary rock. In a review of western U.S. surface water quality in irrigated regions, Seiler et al. (2003) found that selenium concentrations exceeded the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency standard for aquatic life in 40% of sampled waters. Selenium concentrations fluctuated greatly, with low levels during wet periods and high levels during dry periods with more irrigation.

- *Mining activities.* Mines are located where nature has concentrated elements in rocks with unusual chemistry. Water that percolates through the mine workings and through the tailings often has unusual chemistry as well. Sulfide mines, where most copper, lead, and zinc come from, yield very acidic leachate because of iron and sulfide oxidation reactions (Table 10.13). The acidic leachate, in turn, can mobilize various metals from surface complexes (Figure 10.12). Leachate from uranium mines can contain hazardous levels of radioisotopes.
- *Road salting.* In places that have ice and snow in winter, roads are deiced by spreading salt or sand–salt mixtures. The salts are dissolved into melting ice and ultimately increase the sodium and chloride concentrations of infiltration near the roadways.

11.3 Organic Contaminants

A large portion of all groundwater contamination problems involve organic contaminants. We use vast quantities of hydrocarbon fuels, solvents, and other organic liquids and it should come as no surprise that they are frequently spilled into the subsurface. Some releases were intentional, many of them perfectly legal because there used to be little or no regulation of waste disposal. Between the 1950s and the 1980s, environmental awareness and regulation increased dramatically, so now most releases are accidental or illegal. Until the last several decades, few people were aware that spilled organic liquids could move deep into the subsurface, dissolve into groundwater, and then migrate great distances. Organic contamination can migrate as a separate liquid phase, in the aqueous phase, and in the gas phase. Typical patterns of migration are discussed in the following section.

11.3.1 Overview of Migration Patterns

Most organic contaminants begin their trip to the subsurface as some form of organic liquid (NAPL). These liquids are immiscible with water, like oil and water in salad dressing. This doesn't mean that no mixing occurs, just that there is limited mixing. The molecules in the organic liquid dissolve into the water, usually at relatively low aqueous concentrations.

When an organic liquid is spilled, it tends to migrate downward in the unsaturated zone, usually following some irregular path of least resistance. Depending on how much NAPL is spilled, it may migrate only a short distance from the spill, or it may migrate far and deep (Figure 11.3). As NAPL migrates, it leaves behind a trail of small, immobile blobs of NAPL that are trapped in the bigger pore spaces. For NAPL to be mobile, there must be enough of it in a pore space to build pressure sufficient to push into other pores. The larger the spill, the farther the NAPL can migrate before it all becomes immobile. Immobile NAPL usually occupies a small percent of the pore space, sharing it with water and, in the unsaturated zone, air.

If enough NAPL is spilled so that it penetrates down to the top of the saturated zone, its fate then hinges on its density. If it is less dense than water, it tends to float and pool at the top of the saturated zone as shown on the right-hand side of Figure 11.3. When it is more dense than water, it can plunge down into the saturated zone as shown in Figures 11.4 and 11.5. An organic liquid that is less dense than water is an **LNAPL** (light nonaqueous-phase liquid) and a denser liquid is a **DNAPL** (dense nonaqueous-phase liquid).

The Hyde Park chemical landfill site in Niagara Falls, New York, is an example of deep DNAPL migration. An estimated 80,000 tons of liquid and solid

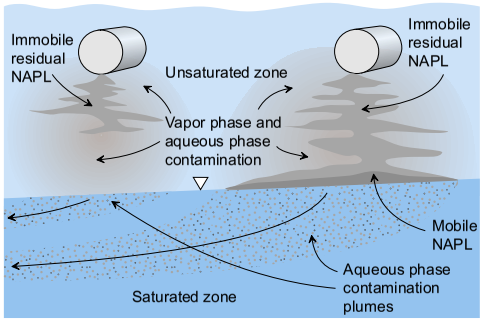


Figure 11.3 Subsurface migration of NAPL spilled from leaking tanks into a granular aquifer. The tank on the left spills a small amount, so that all NAPL is immobilized in the unsaturated zone. The tank on the right spills a large amount of LNAPL (less dense than water), which floats and pools at the top of the saturated zone. Groundwater flow is from right to left.

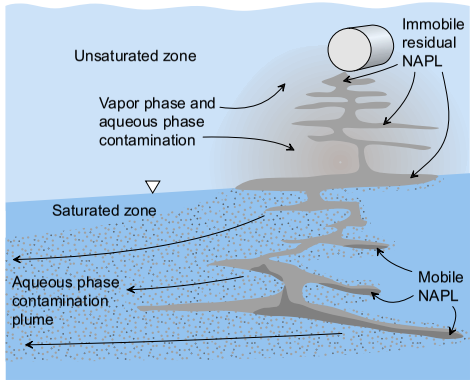


Figure 11.4 Subsurface migration of DNAPL (more dense than water) spilled from a leaking tank into a granular aquifer. The mobile DNAPL pools at the top of less permeable layers and runs down the dip of these layers, sometimes contrary to the groundwater flow direction. Groundwater flow is from right to left.

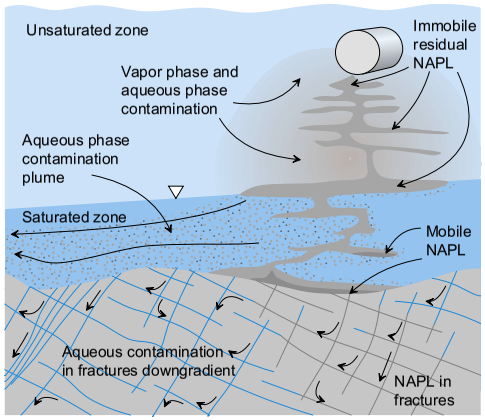


Figure 11.5 Subsurface migration of DNAPL where fractured rock lies below a granular aquifer. The DNAPL pools at the bedrock surface and runs downdip in fractures below the pool. Aqueous-phase contamination spreads in zones downgradient of the NAPL distribution. Groundwater flow is generally from right to left, but irregular within the fractures as the arrows illustrate.

chemical wastes were disposed at the site between 1953 and 1975 (Cohen and Mercer, 1993). The site is underlain by a fractured dolomite and it lies about 600 m east of the Niagara River gorge, downstream from Niagara Falls. DNAPLs at this site are known to have migrated to depths of at least 30 m into the fractures of the dolomite, and at least 450 m horizontally from the source areas (Cohen et al., 1987).

Water that percolates through NAPL-infested pores, whether in the unsaturated or saturated zones, will gain dissolved constituents from the NAPL. These zones of aqueous contamination are shown in Figures 11.3 and 11.4. NAPL will continue to dissolve into the passing water until the NAPL disappears entirely. For many sizable spills, there is enough NAPL to last for decades or centuries without dissolving away.

In addition to the mass transfers between NAPL and water, there can be mass transfer to the gas phase, in the pores of the unsaturated zone. Organic molecules evaporate directly from the NAPL phase and from the aqueous phase. These vapors can migrate under air pressure and density gradients in the unsaturated zone. Moving vapors can spread contamination to unsaturated zone pore waters along their path of flow.

Fortunately, there are a few mechanisms that naturally attenuate many organic groundwater contaminants. Some organic contaminant molecules such as polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) adsorb strongly onto aquifer solids, which limits the extent of solute migration. Organic contaminant molecules often turn out to be food for microbes that inhabit shallow groundwater environments. Biochemical redox reactions within these organisms can reduce or eliminate the mass of dissolved contaminant. Without natural microbial degradation, gasoline contamination plumes would be far more extensive and damaging than they actually are.

11.3.2 Structure and Occurrence of Common Contaminants

As discussed briefly in the previous chapter, organic molecules are compounds with a backbone of carbon atoms that are covalently bonded to themselves and to other elements, usually hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, and the halogens (fluorine, chlorine, bromine, and iodine). Most organic molecules originate, at least in part, in living tissues. Some man-made molecules are classified as organic because they are synthesized from natural organic molecules and their structure is similar to a natural molecule.

A huge number of different organic molecules have become groundwater contaminants at one site or another. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency currently has drinking water standards for 54 different organic compounds, and there are dozens more that can be significant pollutants in groundwaters.

We will focus on just a short list of compounds that includes some of the most common organic contaminants, and use these to illustrate important

properties and processes. The origin and uses of these compounds is summarized as follows, based on listings by Verschueren (1996) and Montgomery (2000).

- Benzene, ethylbenzene, toluene, xylenes: Occur naturally in petroleum. Constituents of petroleum-based fuels like gasoline and jet fuel.
- Benzo(a)pyrene: Occurs naturally in petroleum and coal. Constituent of gasoline, motor oil, creosote, and coal tar.
- Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs): Man-made. Insulating liquids in electrical capacitors and transformers; in lubricating and cutting oils; and in pesticides, adhesives, plastics, inks, paints, and sealants.
- 1,2-Dichloroethane (1,2-DCA), 1,1,1-trichloroethane (1,1,1-TCA), trichloroethylene (TCE), tetrachloroethylene (PCE): Man-made. Solvents for paints, dyes, food extractions, and dry cleaning; metal degreasing; and intermediate compounds in the synthesis of other chlorinated organic compounds.
- Dichloromethane (DCM, methylene chloride): Man-made. Paint stripper, degreasing solvent, and manufacture of aerosols, film, and foams.
- Methyl *tert*-butyl ether: Man-made. Added to gasoline as an oxygenate to boost octane, enhance combustion, and limit organic compounds in exhaust gases.

The carbon framework of most organic molecules consists of six-carbon rings (**aromatic compounds**) or straight/branched chains (**aliphatic compounds**). Figure 11.6 shows the structure of the aromatic compounds within our list, and Figure 11.7 shows the structure of the aliphatic compounds. In the following discussion of these structures, some basic organic chemistry nomenclature is introduced. The interested reader can find plenty more on this topic in an organic chemistry textbook (Solomons, 1992; Wade, 1999).

Functional groups are specific structures in the carbon framework or attached to the carbon framework that tend to govern how the molecule reacts chemically. For example, the CH_3 in toluene and xylenes is a methyl group, CH_2CH_3 in ethylbenzene is an ethyl group, and –O– in MTBE is an ether group. Where a functional group is bonded to a simple structure, the name of the functional group becomes a prefix to the chemical name. Ethylbenzene is a benzene ring with an ethyl group. The more conventional chemical name for toluene is *methylbenzene* because it is a benzene ring with a methyl group.

Aromatic molecules are all some variation on the same theme: six-carbon benzene rings with one or more functional groups attached. Benzo(a)pyrene is

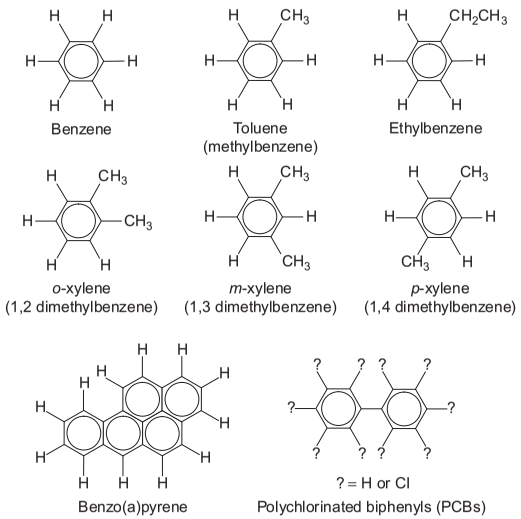


Figure 11.6 Structure of some common aromatic contaminants. Each ring structure has a carbon atom at each of its six corners. The covalent bonding is evenly distributed between the carbons in a ring and each carbon is capable of one additional bond outside of the ring.

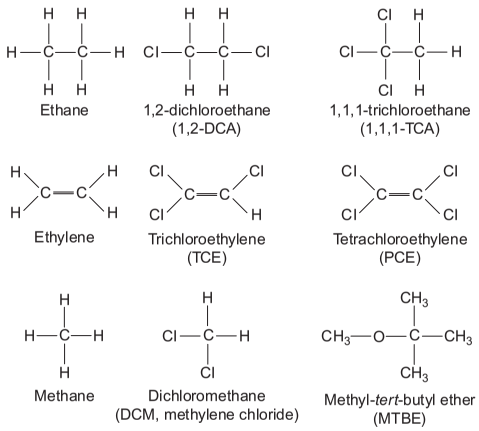


Figure 11.7 Structure of some common aliphatic contaminants, plus ethane, ethylene, and methane. Each line represents a shared electron pair in a covalent bond.

one of many compounds known as polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), which contain multiple rings bonded together.

PCBs have two C_6H_5 rings (phenyl groups) bound by a single bond. Any one PCB liquid contains a variety of biphenyl molecules that are chlorinated to varying degrees. These mixtures are classified based on the average chlorine content. PCB-1248 (Arochlor-1248) is so named because it has 12 carbons and about 48% of its mass is chlorine. In PCB-1248, about 2% of the molecules are $C_{12}H_8Cl_2$, about 18% are $C_{12}H_7Cl_3$, about 40% are $C_{12}H_6Cl_4$, about 36% are $C_{12}H_5Cl_5$, and about 4% are $C_{12}H_4Cl_6$ (Verschueren, 1996). Other PCBs such as PCB-1242 or PCB-1254 have different percentages of these compounds and different average chlorine contents.

There are three different isomers of xylene (Figure 11.6). **Isomers** have the same chemical formula as each other, but different structure. The only difference between the xylene isomers is the relative position of the two methyl groups. In *o*-xylene, the two methyls are on adjacent carbons, in *m*-xylene they are two carbons apart, and in *p*-xylene they are three carbons apart. The more conventional chemical names for the xylene isomers are given in parentheses in Figure 11.6. The numbers in the conventional names indicate which carbons the two methyl groups are bonded to.

The chlorinated ethane compounds 1,1,1-TCA and 1,2-DCA are structurally similar to ethane, as shown in Figure 11.7. 1,1,1-Trichloroethane (1,1,1-TCA) has three chlorine atoms where ethane has hydrogens and 1,2-dichloroethane (1,2-DCA) has two chlorine atoms where ethane has hydrogens. In 1,1,1-TCA all three chlorines are associated with one of the carbons. In 1,2-DCA one chlorine is associated with one carbon and the other chlorine is associated with the other carbon.

The chlorinated ethylene compounds trichloroethylene (TCE) and tetrachloroethylene (perchloroethylene or PCE) are structurally similar to ethylene (ethene). In TCE, there are three chlorines and one hydrogen, and in PCE there are four chlorines and no hydrogens. Numbers are not needed (for example, 1,1,2-TCE) because there is just one isomer, one unique way to arrange the chlorines in both TCE and PCE.

Most organic liquids are mixtures of many different molecules, but some are nearly pure. Solvents like TCE and PCE are nearly pure when new but after use they become contaminated with molecules from the oils, greases, or whatever the solvent is used to dissolve. Hydrocarbon fuels are always mixtures of great numbers of organic molecules.

Crude oil (petroleum) is distilled to produce various hydrocarbon products. During distillation, the hundreds of different kinds of organic molecules

Table 11.1 Fractions from Petroleum Refining

Fraction	Number of Carbon Atoms	Boiling Temp. (°C)	Uses
Gas	1–4	−162–30	Fuel gas, plastics manufacture
Petroleum ether	5–6	30–60	Solvents, gasoline additives (MTBE, others)
Gasoline	5–12	40–200	Gasoline fuels
Kerosene	11–16	175–275	Diesel fuel, jet fuel, heating oil
Residual fuel oil	15–18	275–375	Industrial heating
Lubricating oil	17–24	>350	Lubricants
Parrafin	>20	Solid residue	Candles, waxes, etc.
Asphalt	>30	Solid residue	Road pavement

Source: Radel and Navidi (1994).

in petroleum are separated into fractions according to their boiling points (Table 11.1). A given petroleum-based fuel consists of the molecules that boil off in a certain range of temperatures. Smaller molecules with fewer carbon atoms tend to boil at lower temperatures, in general. Of the fractions listed in Table 11.1, the largest of U.S. oil refinery outputs in 1995 were gasoline (44%), kerosene (31%), gas plus petroleum ether (9%), and residual fuel oil (5%) (American Petroleum Institute, 2000).

Unleaded gasoline contains dozens of different organic compounds, most of which make up less than a few percent of the liquid. The most toxic and persistent groundwater contaminants in gasoline and other light petroleum fuels are benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, and xylenes, known collectively by the acronym BTEX. Methyl *tert*-butyl ether (MTBE) was added to many gasolines in the 1980s and 1990s to increase octane and reduce air pollution from automobiles. MTBE turns out to be a widespread groundwater pollutant because it is so soluble and persistent in water.

11.3.3 Properties of Common Contaminants

The chemical properties of our suite of common contaminants are listed in Table 11.2. Most of these properties were defined in the previous chapter, but NAPL solubility, maximum contaminant level (MCL), and vapor pressure were not, so they will be defined presently.

The **solubility** of an NAPL is the equilibrium aqueous concentration of the substance in water that is in contact with the NAPL. Solubility is a function of temperature, usually with higher solubility at higher temperatures. Other than MTBE and DCM, these molecules have fairly low solubilities, in

Table 11.2 Properties of Organic Compounds That Are Common Groundwater Contaminants

Substance	Formula	Density (g/cm^3)	Solub. (mg/L)	MCL (mg/L)	$\text{Log}(K_{ow})$	K_H (M/atm)	Vapor Pr. (mm Hg)
Benzene	C_6H_6	0.88	1750	0.005	2.1	0.18	76
Toluene	C_7H_8	0.87	520	1.0	2.7	0.15	28
Ethylbenzene	C_8H_{10}	0.87	180	0.7	3.1	0.15	9
o-Xylene	C_8H_{10}	0.88	175	*	3.1	0.20	6
m-Xylene	C_8H_{10}	0.86	160	*	3.2	0.14	8
p-Xylene	C_8H_{10}	0.86	190	*	3.2	0.14	9
MTBE	$C_5H_{12}O$	0.74	45,000	**	1.2	1.7	350
Benzo(a)pyrene	$C_{20}H_{12}$	1.35	0.003	0.0002	6.0	2900	5×10^{-9}
PCB-1248	$C_{12}H_{10-n}Cl_n$	1.41	0.055	0.0005	6.1	0.25	4×10^{-4}
1,2-DCA	$C_2H_4Cl_2$	1.25	8400	0.005	1.5	0.91	85
1,1,1-TCA	$C_2H_3Cl_3$	1.35	1300	0.2	2.5	0.060	120
TCE	C_2HCl_3	1.46	1100	0.005	2.4	0.11	70
PCE	C_2Cl_4	1.62	150	0.005	2.4	0.060	19
DCM	CH_2Cl_2	1.33	14,000	0.005	1.3	0.40	440

Properties are representative average values for 20 to 25°C.
Density of the NAPL, except for benzo(a)pyrene, which is solid.
Solub. = aqueous solubility.
MCL = maximum contaminant level permissible in U.S. public water supplies.
K_{ow} = octanol–water partition coefficient (dimensionless; see Eq. 10.80).
K_H = Henry's law constant (dimensionless; see Eq. 10.31).
* MCL is 10 mg/L for total of all three xylene isomers.
** No MCL is yet defined. Health advisory based on taste and odor is 0.02 to 0.04 mg/L.
PCBs are a mixture of chlorinated biphenyls with formula as shown.
PCB-1248 contains 48% chlorine by weight, and $n = 2$ to 6.
Sources for properties: EPA (1994b); Montgomery (2000); Verschueren (1996).
Source for MCLs: EPA (2000).

the hundreds or thousands of parts per million. Recall that water is a polar solvent and organic molecules tend to be nonpolar. The solubility of larger organic molecules is generally lower than the solubility of smaller molecules. Some functional groups such as ether in MTBE are more polar and cause higher solubilities.

When an NAPL is a mixture rather than purely one chemical, each compound in the NAPL will dissolve into water at lower concentrations than their pure solubilities. For example, the equilibrium concentrations of gasoline constituents are substantially below their individual pure solubilities, as shown in Table 11.3. The large ranges in this table are mostly due to the large range of gasoline compositions. If both the NAPL mixture and the water solution have ideal behavior, the equilibrium aqueous concentration of an NAPL constituent will be given by

$$c_{aq} = XS \tag{11.1}$$

Table 11.3 Equilibrium Aqueous Concentrations of BTEX Gasoline Constituents

Compound	Weight % of Gasoline*	Equilibrium Aqueous Concentration with Gasoline NAPL (mg/L)*	Solubility of Pure NAPL (mg/L)
Benzene	0.7–3.8	12.3–130	1780
Ethylbenzene	0.7–2.8	1.3–5.7	180
Toluene	4.5–21.0	23–185	520
m-, *p*-Xylenes	3.7–14.5	2.6–22.9	160, 190
o-Xylene	1.1–3.7	2.6–9.7	175

*Range from 31 gasoline samples.
Source: Cline et al. (1991).

where c_{aq} is the constituent's aqueous-phase equilibrium concentration, X is the mole fraction of the constituent in the NAPL mixture (moles of constituent/moles of all molecules in mixture), and S is the pure NAPL solubility of the constituent. This relation is known as **Raoult's law**. It generally holds for organic mixtures where the molecules in the mixture have similar properties. Cline et al. (1991) found that Raoult's law was reasonably accurate for gasoline constituents.

Example 11.1 Assume that MTBE makes up 9% by weight of a gasoline that is spilled into the subsurface. Estimate the equilibrium concentration of MTBE in groundwater that contacts the gasoline. Assume that the average molecular weight of all gasoline constituents is 102 g/mol.

We will use Eq. 11.1, but first we must convert the weight percent of MTBE to its mole fraction in the gasoline. The weight percent of MTBE is the mass of MTBE/mass of gasoline. The mole fraction, X in Eq. 11.1, is the moles of MTBE/mole of gasoline molecules. To convert to mole fraction, we need the molecular weight of MTBE. The chemical formula of MTBE is $C_5H_{12}O$, so its molecular weight is

$$\begin{aligned} MW &= (12.01 \times 5) + (1.01 \times 12) + (16.00 \times 1) \\ &= 88.17 \text{ g/mol} \end{aligned}$$

The mole fraction of MTBE is

$$\begin{aligned} X &= \left(0.09 \frac{\text{g MTBE}}{\text{g gasoline}}\right)\left(\frac{102 \text{ g/mol gasoline}}{88.17 \text{ g/mol MTBE}}\right) \\ &= 0.104 \frac{\text{mol MTBE}}{\text{mol gasoline}} \end{aligned}$$

Now, using Eq. 11.1 we find the aqueous concentration of MTBE in water in equilibrium with this gasoline:

$$c_{aq} = \left(0.104 \frac{\text{mol MTBE}}{\text{mol gasoline}}\right)(45{,}000 \text{ mg/L})$$

$$= 4700 \text{ mg/L}$$

The chemistry of a spilled NAPL mixture will change with time, as some constituents dissolve from it more rapidly than others. Because the solubility of MTBE is about 25–250 times higher than the solubility of BTEX compounds, gasoline with MTBE will lose its MTBE to dissolution much more rapidly than it loses the BTEX compounds. So with time, the remaining gasoline NAPL will be depleted of MTBE and enriched in the less soluble compounds.

Maximum contaminant levels (MCLs) are regulations on public drinking water supplies set by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency to protect human health. A contaminant tends to be troublesome if it doesn't easily break down and its solubility exceeds its MCL by many orders of magnitude. Most of the chemicals listed in Table 11.2 fit this description.

The **vapor pressure** is the equilibrium pressure of the gas phase of a substance in contact with the pure liquid or solid state of the substance. Chemicals with a high vapor pressure tend to evaporate (volatilize). Generally, liquids have higher vapor pressures than solids; note the low vapor pressure of the solid benzo(a)pyrene compared to the other liquid chemicals. Smaller, lighter molecules tend to have higher vapor pressure than larger molecules; note the high vapor pressure of the smaller chlorinated ethanes and ethenes compared to the low vapor pressure of PCB-1248. **VOC** is an often-used acronym for volatile organic compounds.

The vapor pressure of a constituent of an NAPL mixture is less than the vapor pressure of the same chemical as a pure NAPL. In an ideal solution, the vapor pressure of a chemical above a mixture is directly proportional to its mole fraction of the mixture, another consequence of Raoult's law:

$$vp_{mix} = X vp_{pure} \tag{11.2}$$

where vp_{mix} is the equilibrium vapor pressure above an NAPL mixture, X is the mole fraction of the constituent, and vp_{pure} is the constituent's pure NAPL vapor pressure, as reported in Table 11.2.

Example 11.2 Thirty-five percent of an NAPL's molecules are 1,1,1-TCA. Calculate the vapor pressure and concentration of 1,1,1-TCA in air that is in equilibrium with this NAPL. Give your results in mm Hg, atm, and ppm.

First, according to Eq. 11.2, the vapor pressure of 1,1,1-TCA for the mixture is

$$vp_{mix} = 0.35 \times 120 \text{ mm Hg}$$

$$= 42 \text{ mm Hg}$$

Convert this vapor pressure to atmospheres using the correct conversion factor:

$$42 \text{ mm Hg}\left(\frac{1 \text{ atm}}{760 \text{ mm Hg}}\right) = 0.055 \text{ atm}$$

This means that 5.5% of the molecules in the gas are 1,1,1-TCA. This is equivalent to 55,000 molecules per million (ppm).

As discussed in the previous chapter, K_{ow} is the octanol–water partition coefficient (see Eq. 10.80 and the accompanying discussion). Compounds with high K_{ow} tend to adsorb strongly to organic matter in the aquifer solids. Strong partitioning to organic phases tends to be associated with low aqueous solubility, a trend that shows in the data of Table 11.2.

The Henry's law constant (K_H) describes the partitioning of a substance between the aqueous and gas states (see Eqs. 10.30 and 10.31). Vapor pressure, solubility, and Henry's law describe the three possible equilibrium partitioning relations for a system containing NAPL, water, and gas phases, as illustrated in Figure 11.8. The three constants are related as follows when proper unit conversions are made to resolve disparate units:

$$\text{solubility} = K_H \times \text{vapor pressure} \tag{11.3}$$

11.4 Nonaqueous-Phase Liquids

Since most organic contaminants have NAPLs as their source, an important aspect of contamination problems is the movement of NAPLs in the subsurface. NAPL migration in the subsurface is quite different than water movement, and it is governed by some new phenomena that merit investigation. These

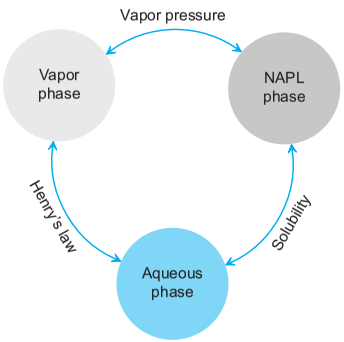


Figure 11.8 Schematic illustrating the equilibrium relations between vapor, NAPL, and aqueous phases.

Table 11.4 Density, Viscosity, and Interfacial Tension of Common NAPLs and Water at 20°C

Liquid	Density, ρ (g/cm^3)	Viscosity, μ (N · sec/m^2)	Interfacial Tension, σ (dynes/cm)	Source
LNAPLs:				
Unleaded gasoline	0.75–0.85	$< 8 \times 10^{-4}$		1
Leaded gasoline	0.73	5×10^{-4}	20	1
Jet fuel (A/A1)	0.82	2×10^{-3}	37	1
Home heating oil	0.86	1.7×10^{-3}	27	1
Kerosene	0.81	1×10^{-3}	23–32	1
Arabian medium crude oil	0.88	2.3×10^{-2}	23	1
DNAPLs:				
DCM	1.33	4.4×10^{-4}	28	2
1,2-DCA	1.26	8.4×10^{-4}	30	2
1,1,1-TCA	1.35	8.4×10^{-4}	45	2
TCE	1.46	5.7×10^{-4}	35	2
PCE	1.63	9.0×10^{-4}	44	2
Water:	1.00	1.0×10^{-3}		

Interfacial tension is for NAPL/water interfaces.
(1) Environmental Technology Center (2000).
(2) ρ, μ: Schwille (1988); σ: Cohen and Mercer (1993).

concepts also apply to multiphase flow of petroleum, which is a naturally occuring NAPL. Three books that go beyond the introduction given here are Pankow and Cherry (1996), Cohen and Mercer (1993), and Corey (1994).

Key physical properties of some common NAPLs are listed in Table 11.4. Whether the density is greater or less than that of water determines whether the NAPL will float and accumulate at the top of the saturated zone or be able to plunge deep into the saturated zone. LNAPLs are "floaters" and DNAPLs are "sinkers." Most hydrocarbon fuels are LNAPLs and most chlorinated hydrocarbons are DNAPLs. The greater the density of the NAPL compared to the air or water that surrounds it, the greater its tendency to drive deeper into the subsurface. The lower the viscosity or interfacial tension of an NAPL, the more mobile it tends to be in the subsurface (more on these properties later).

11.4.1 Saturation, and Wetting and Nonwetting Fluids

When NAPL is present in the unsaturated zone, there are three phases that can occupy the pores: air, water, and NAPL. In the saturated zone, two phases can be present: water and NAPL. Saturation is a parameter for describing the relative abundance of each phase. The **saturation** S_i is the fraction of the pore space that phase i occupies:

$$S_i = \frac{V_i}{V_v} \tag{11.4}$$

where V_i is the volume of phase i and V_v is the volume of voids in the material. The sum of the saturations of all phases present equals one. For example, in the unsaturated zone with air, water, and NAPL, the corresponding saturations total one: $S_a + S_w + S_n = 1$. In the saturated zone with only water and NAPL, $S_w + S_n = 1$.

When multiple immiscible fluids are present in the pores, the fluid with the strongest molecular attraction for the solid surfaces will coat the surfaces, while the other fluids occupy the central parts of pores, away from the solid surfaces. The fluid that wets the solid surfaces is called the **wetting fluid** and the other(s) are called the **nonwetting fluid(s)**. In most situations, both in the unsaturated and saturated zones, water will be the wetting fluid, while air and/or NAPL are nonwetting fluids. If the unsaturated zone is completely devoid of water, NAPL is the wetting fluid and air is the nonwetting fluid. Figure 11.9 shows some example distributions of phases in both the saturated and unsaturated zone pores.

At low NAPL saturations, NAPL exists as isolated blobs that are immobile. These blobs occupy the largest pores and approach spherical shapes. At higher NAPL saturations, the blobs merge into **ganglia** that are irregular and continuous blobs that connect through multiple pores. The ganglia, if large enough, are mobile and allow NAPL to push into new pore spaces.

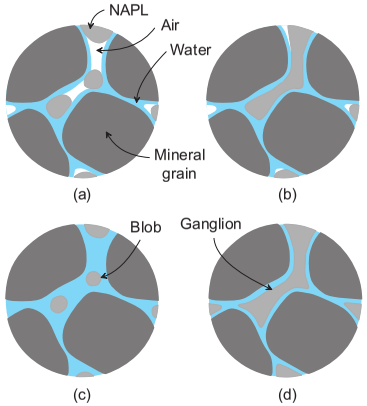


Figure 11.9 Distribution of phases in the unsaturated zone (a and b) and the saturated zone (c and d). Water is the wetting fluid in each case. NAPL saturation S_n increase from (a) to (b) and from (c) to (d).

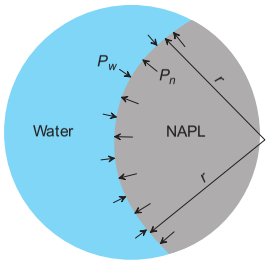


Figure 11.10 Close-up of an interface between NAPL (nonwetting fluid) and water (wetting fluid). There is a pressure discontinuity at the interface, with $P_w < P_n$.

11.4.2 Interfacial Tension and Capillary Pressure

Figure 11.10 shows an interface where NAPL and water contact each other. Molecules in the NAPL have a greater attraction for themselves than they do for water molecules, and water molecules are more attracted to themselves than to NAPL molecules. One fluid typically has greater self-attraction than the other. Molecules near the interface are drawn away from the interface towards the interior of the fluid by these molecular forces.

Interfacial tension is a property that measures the amount of imbalance in molecular attractions at an interface between two fluids. It has dimensions of energy/area, or equivalently, force/length. For most common NAPLs and water, the interfacial tension is in the range 20–50 dynes/cm (Table 11.4). Interfacial tension is so named because the interface looks as if there is some elastic membrane in tension stretched across the interface. The interface tends to contract around the nonwetting fluid, minimizing the surface area of the interface.

The imbalance of molecular forces at the interface is compensated for by a discontinuity in pressure. The nonwetting fluid (NAPL in Figure 11.10) is on the inside of the interface curvature, and has higher pressure than the wetting fluid (water in Figure 11.10) ($P_w < P_n$). The difference in pressure across the interface is called the **capillary pressure**, P_c:

$$P_c = P_n - P_w \tag{11.5}$$

where P_n is the pressure in the nonwetting fluid (typically NAPL) and P_w is the pressure in the wetting fluid (typically water). In the unsaturated zone with no NAPL, water is the wetting fluid, air is the nonwetting fluid, and the pore water pressure (gage pressure) equals $-P_c$.

Where an interface is shaped like a spherical cap of radius r, the capillary pressure is a simple function of interfacial tension σ and r (Corey, 1994):

$$P_c = 2\sigma/r \quad \text{(spherical interface)} \tag{11.6}$$

Where the interface is shaped like a long cylinder of radius r, then the capillary pressure is given by (Corey, 1994)

$$P_c = \sigma/r \quad \text{(cylindrical interface)} \tag{11.7}$$

Equation 11.6 is appropriate for roughly spherical pore openings like in granular media, and Eq. 11.7 is more applicable to fractures in rock. Although not all interfaces are shaped exactly like spheres or cylinders, capillary pressure is generally inversely proportional to the radius of curvature of the interface.

NAPL will invade a small pore only if the capillary pressure is high enough to bend the interface sharply enough to fit it through the entrance of the pore. An NAPL ganglion or blob that has high enough capillary pressures to be mobile will invade the largest pore it is surrounded by, but not the smaller ones. If the capillary pressure is not high enough to push the interface into any of the surrounding pores, the ganglion or blob is immobile. Within a single connected ganglion, the capillary pressure increases from top to bottom, so it is most likely that the interface will invade pores near the base of the ganglion. The taller the ganglion, the higher the capillary pressure and the more likely NAPL will move into new pores.

Example 11.3 Calculate the capillary pressure at the base of a dichloromethane (DCM) DNAPL ganglion in the saturated zone, if the ganglion is 0.8 m high. Assume that the capillary pressure at the top of the ganglion is 1500 N/m^2, and that the pressure distributions in both the water and NAPL phases is hydrostatic.

With a hydrostatic pressure distribution in the water phase, the water pressure at the base of the ganglion, $P_{w(b)}$, can be written as

$$P_{w(b)} = P_{w(t)} + \rho_w g b$$

where $P_{w(t)}$ is the water pressure at the top of the ganglion, $\rho_w g$ is the unit weight of water, and b is the height of the ganglion.

Likewise, the NAPL pressure at the base of the ganglion is

$$P_{n(b)} = P_{n(t)} + \rho_n g b$$

where $P_{n(t)}$ is the NAPL pressure at the top of the ganglion and $\rho_n g$ is the unit weight of NAPL.

The capillary pressure at the base of the ganglion is the difference between these two pressures:

$$\begin{aligned} P_{c(b)} &= P_{n(b)} - P_{w(b)} \\ &= P_{n(t)} - P_{w(t)} + (\rho_n - \rho_w) g b \\ &= P_{c(t)} + (\rho_n - \rho_w) g b \\ &= 1500 \text{ N/m}^2 + (1330 - 1000 \text{ kg/m}^3)(9.81 \text{ m/s}^2)(0.8 \text{ m}) \\ &= 4090 \text{ N/m}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Figure 11.11 shows a dyed DNAPL (PCE) invading water-saturated pores in a medium consisting of uniform glass beads. In the upper photo, the PCE is thin and immobile; P_c is not high enough to push the interface into any of the available pore openings. In the lower photo, more PCE has been added at the top, so now P_c is high enough to push the interface into the pores below. As the ganglia grow taller vertically, P_c at the base of the ganglia increases and the PCE has an even easier time invading new pores.

Heterogeneity plays a key role in the migration patterns of NAPL. It will always move into the largest pore spaces it contacts, so it will often migrate in unintuitive ways, following coarse lenses or wider fractures. Figure 11.12 shows the migration of dyed PCE through water-saturated glass beads, with a layer of finer beads under coarser beads. The downward-moving PCE accumulated at the top of the finer layer until its thickness and P_c grew large enough to

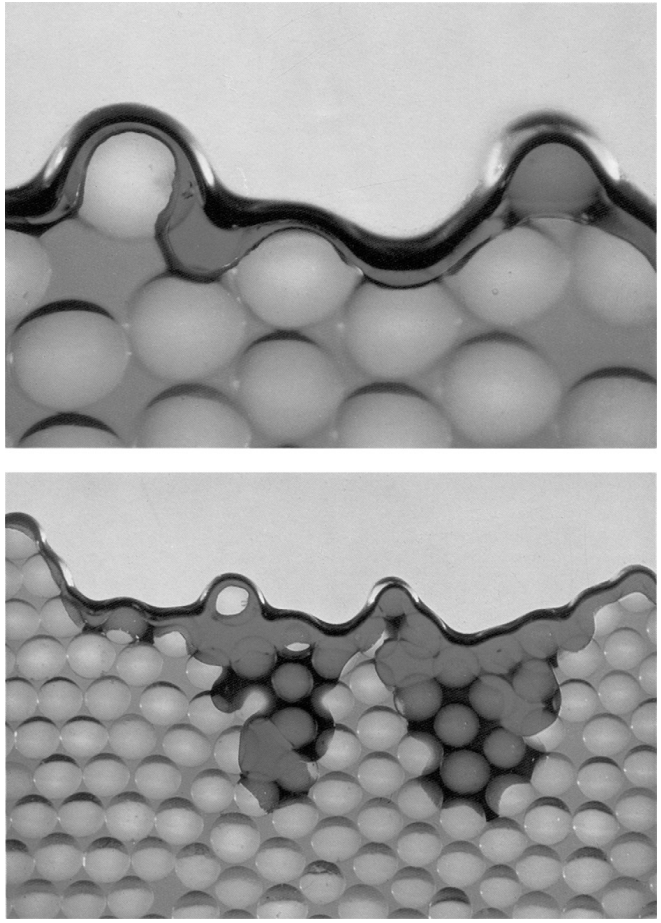


Figure 11.11 PCE DNAPL (dark) resting on water-saturated glass beads. In the upper photo, the PCE is thin and immobile. In the lower photo, greater DNAPL thickness allows it to invade the pores below. Adapted from Schwille (1988) with permission of CRC Press.

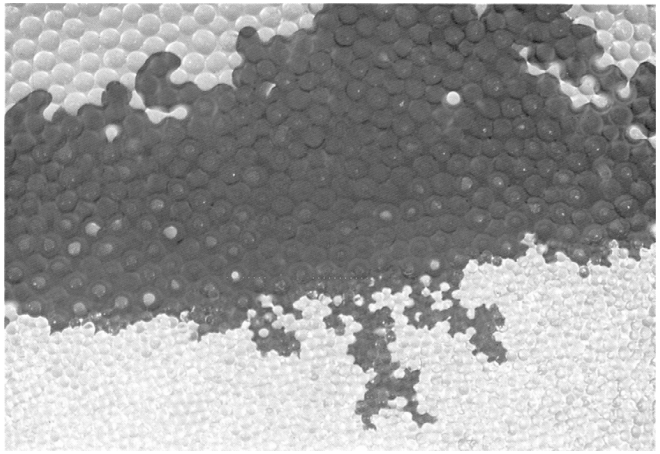


Figure 11.12 PCE DNAPL (dark) accumulating in a layer of coarse glass beads atop a layer of fine glass beads. The DNAPL is thick enough that it has begun invading the layer of finer beads. Adapted from Schwille (1988) with permission of CRC Press.

invade the pores of the finer beads. Sometimes NAPL doesn't get thick enough to invade a fine-grained lens as it did in Figure 11.12. Instead, NAPL just flows laterally across the top of the fine-grained lens, flowing down the dip of the lens, even if that may run counter to the local groundwater flow.

11.4.3 Capillary Pressure vs. Saturation and Residual Saturation

In a particular medium, the NAPL saturation S_n increases with increased capillary pressure. Higher capillary pressure allows the NAPL–water interface to push into smaller pores, with NAPL displacing water in the process. The capillary-pressure–saturation relationship can be measured in a laboratory, resulting in curves that look much like a characteristic curve for water/air saturation, as discussed in Section 3.10.1. Figure 11.13 shows several such curves for different sand samples and PCE DNAPL. The tests that led to these curves were drainage tests: they started with water-saturated sand and then slowly introduced DNAPL at higher and higher capillary pressure, displacing water throughout the test.

Like the characteristic curves for water and air in the unsaturated zone, the capillary-pressure–saturation relationship is hysteretic, or history-dependent.

Figure 11.13 Capillary-pressure–saturation curves for sand samples from Canadian Forces Base Borden (CFB Borden), Ontario. The NAPL in this case is PCE. The hydraulic conductivity is listed for each sample. From Kueper, B. H. and E. O. Frind, 1991, Two-phase flow in heterogeneous porous media, 2. Model application, *Water Resources Research*, 27(6), 1059–1070. Copyright (1991) American Geophysical Union. Modified by permission of American Geophysical Union.

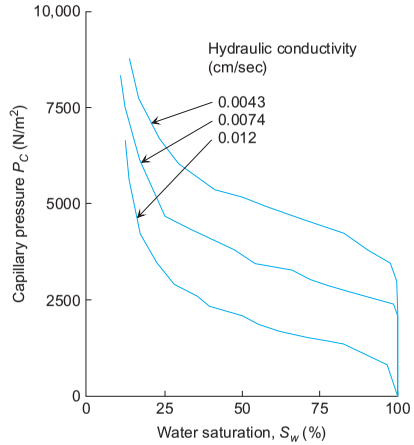


Figure 11.14 shows a typical cycle of saturation vs. capillary pressure for an NAPL spilled into the saturated zone. As NAPL saturation increases and water drains during NAPL invasion, it follows a drainage curve like the one labeled A in Figure 11.14. Eventually, the NAPL pulse moves through and NAPL saturations decrease as water reclaims some of the pore space taken up by NAPL (wetting curve B in Figure 11.14). The wetting curve is always displaced toward higher NAPL saturation compared to the drainage curve, at the same capillary pressure.

As the NAPL saturation decreases along the wetting curve, there is a transition from a thoroughly interconnected network of NAPL ganglia in the pore spaces to more isolated ganglia, and eventually to separate, unconnected blobs. The wetting curve stops at the point where the remaining NAPL blobs become immobile. The NAPL saturation at this point is called the **residual NAPL saturation**. Figure 11.15 shows residual NAPL saturation in an experiment with glass beads, water, and PCE. Residual NAPL saturations in the range of 0.01 to 0.15 have been reported for sands (Kueper et al., 1993; Schwille, 1988).

When NAPLs are spilled into the subsurface, they move downward in irregular paths, following a trail containing the largest available pores. If enough NAPL is spilled, it will accumulate at the top of the saturated zone (LNAPL) or on top of layers with small pores. These zones of accumulation will have

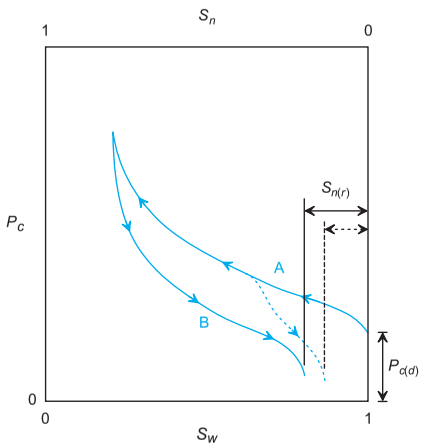


Figure 11.14 Capillary pressure P_c vs. water saturation S_w and NAPL saturation S_n. During drainage (curve A), NAPL displaces water. During wetting (curve B), water displaces NAPL. The displacement pressure $P_{c(d)}$ is the minimum capillary pressure needed for NAPL to begin invading the medium. The residual NAPL saturation $S_{n(r)}$ is the saturation at which the NAPL becomes immobile. The dashed wetting curve shows what would happen if wetting began after limited drainage. The final value of $S_{n(r)}$ depends on the saturation history.

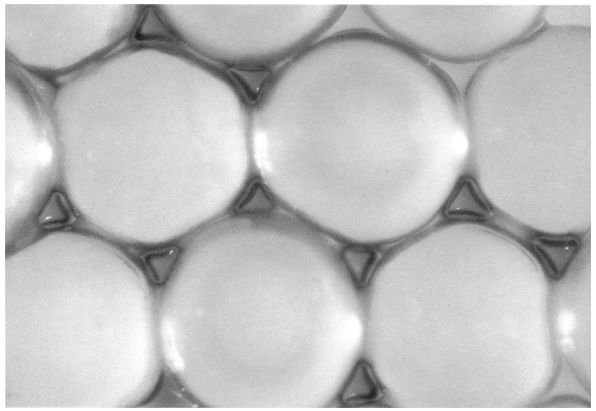


Figure 11.15 Residual saturation of PCE DNAPL in initially water-saturated glass beads. NAPL flowed in and then drained out from the pores. The NAPL now occupies only the largest pore openings as isolated blobs. Adapted from Schwille (1998) with permission of CRC Press.

relatively high NAPL saturations and the NAPL is capable of further movement (mobile NAPL in Figures 11.3 and 11.4).

Other than these zones of mobile NAPL, the trail followed by the NAPL will reduce to immobile residual NAPL saturation levels once the pulse of migrating NAPL has passed. Both the mobile and immobile NAPL zones serve as continuous sources, dissolving slowly into passing pore water (and pore gases in the unsaturated zone). Because most NAPLs have low solubility, the subsurface NAPL source can persist for a long time. For this reason, many early efforts to remediate subsurface organic contamination problems were far from successful.

11.4.4 Relative Permeability and Flow of Multiple Phases

The rates of water and NAPL flow when multiple phases are present are still governed by equations that look like Darcy's law for variable density fluids (Eq. 3.40), but the equations are modified by a relative permeability factor κ that relates to saturation. Whether the fluid is water or NAPL, the specific discharge components of fluid i (discharge/area) are given by

$$q_{xi} = -\frac{k_x \kappa_i}{\mu_i}\frac{\partial P_i}{\partial x}$$

$$q_{yi} = -\frac{k_y \kappa_i}{\mu_i}\frac{\partial P_i}{\partial y}$$

$$q_{zi} = -\frac{k_z \kappa_i}{\mu_i}\left(\frac{\partial P_i}{\partial z} + \rho_i g\right) \tag{11.8}$$

where k_x, k_y, and k_z are the components of intrinsic permeability, μ_i is the fluid viscosity, P_i is the fluid pressure, ρ_i is the fluid density, and g is gravitational acceleration.

The relative permeability factor κ_i is one when fluid i completely saturates the medium ($S_i = 1$), and it drops to zero at residual saturation when $S_i = S_{i(r)}$ when the phase becomes immobile. The general nature of the relationship between κ and S is shown in Figure 11.16 for water–NAPL two-phase flow. It makes sense that permeability to a fluid increases as its saturation increases, because the fluid occupies more volume and is more interconnected.

The specific discharge of a fluid is inversely proportional to the fluid's dynamic viscosity μ, as you would expect (Eq. 11.8). High-viscosity NAPLs like tars and crude oils flow very slowly compared to water and solvents.

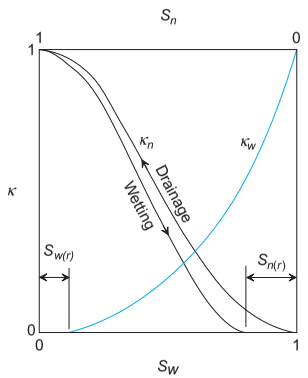


Figure 11.16 Relative permeability factors κ vs. saturation S, for water and NAPL in a two-phase system. The NAPL curve is hysteretic. Both water and NAPL have residual saturation states where κ reduces to zero because the phase is not interconnected.

11.5 Solute Transport Processes

The migration of NAPLs is one way that contaminants can move in the subsurface. The other is solute transport: the movement of dissolved substances in flowing groundwater. Several different physical and chemical processes team up to affect solute transport in interesting ways. Each process is discussed separately in the following sections.

11.5.1 Advection and Mechanical Dispersion

Advection is just a fancy word for the movement of mass entrained in the flow. Solute advection is the movement of dissolved substances because the water they are in is moving. The mass flux of a solute due to advection alone is simply

$$F_{ax} = q_x c \tag{11.9}$$

where F_{ax} is the advective flux of solute mass in the x direction (mass/time/area normal to the x direction), q_x is specific discharge in the x direction (volume/time/area), and c is solute concentration (mass/volume). The average rate of solute migration equals the average linear velocity $\bar{v}$, as defined by Eq. 3.4. We will see in Section 11.5.3 that the apparent rate of solute advection differs from $\bar{v}$ when the solute reacts with the solid matrix it is flowing through.

Advection not only translates mass from one location to another, but it tends to spread or disperse the mass in the process. This occurs because the distribution of water velocity is not uniform. The actual distribution of groundwater velocity v varies significantly both in space and in time. Velocity variations in space occur at scales ranging from the size of pores on up to the size of channel deposits in a floodplain.

Consider the pore scale first. Figure 11.17 shows water velocity distributions in a few pores of a granular medium. The flow is laminar, but there are still significant variations in velocity. The variations in velocity cause solutes in a discrete, compact plume to disperse in the direction of flow, as some solute speeds through pore throats and other solute lags at grain boundaries and in bigger pores. In perfectly steady and laminar groundwater flow, advection alone causes longitudinal spreading but no transverse spreading. In real groundwater solute transport, there are transient velocity variations and molecular diffusion, both of which contribute to transverse spreading (more on that shortly).

At a larger spatial scale, all geologic media are heterogeneous, which means that the average linear velocity field is irregular. Figure 11.18 shows the flow field for an analytic, two-dimensional model of flow through a field containing six lens-shaped heterogeneities. In the low-permeability lenses, gradients are high and $\bar{v}$ is low. In high-permeability lenses, head gradients are low and $\bar{v}$ is high. As with steady pore-scale advection, these spatial velocity variations cause a slug of solute to spread in the direction of flow, but not transverse to flow.

So far, we have only discussed spatial variations in velocity, which produce longitudinal dispersion of solute pulses in the direction of flow. Temporal variations in velocity are also important and can lead to transverse dispersion of solutes. When directions in the velocity field change with time, the direction of

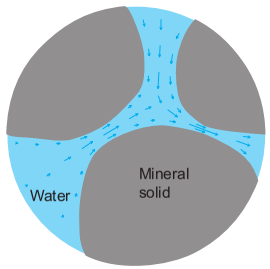


Figure 11.17 Velocity variations at the pore scale. The vector lengths are proportional to the water velocity v. The fastest flow is in the throats of constricted pores, and the slowest flow is near the mineral surfaces and in the larger pores.

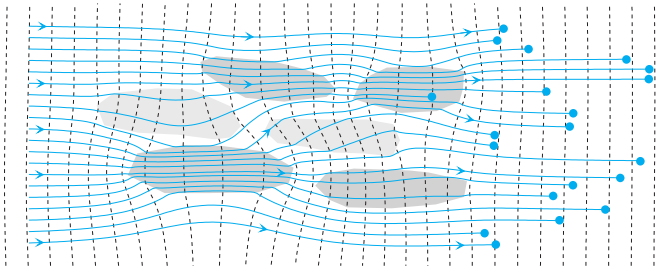


Figure 11.18 An analytic model of two-dimensional steady flow with six heterogeneity domains (shaded) showing velocity variations at the heterogeneity scale. Going clockwise from the lower left heterogeneity, their Ks differ from the background K by factors of 4.0, 0.5, 2.0, 3.0, 0.3, and 0.6. Head contours (dashed) show the inverse correlation of K and gradient. Pathlines (blue) are traced downstream from left to right. Each pathline represents the same specified travel time from beginning to end. Longitudinal dispersion caused by heterogeneity is apparent in the staggered locations of the ends of the pathlines at the right side of the plot (circles).

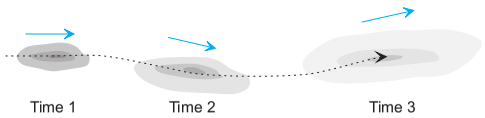


Figure 11.19 Schematic two-dimensional section through a solute plume migrating and spreading with time. Blue arrows show the direction of $\bar{v}$ at each time, and the dashed line shows the path taken by the plume's center of mass. Solute concentration levels are shown by the degree of shading in the plumes; darker shades represent higher concentrations. The plume always disperses in the direction of flow. With a varying flow direction, this causes the plume to grow wider in addition to lengthening.

longitudinal spreading that occurs also changes with time. An elongate solute plume will spread laterally over time with respect to the average flow direction (Goode and Konikow, 1990; Rehfeldt and Gelhar, 1992). Figure 11.19 shows a time sequence of a plume dispersing with slightly variable flow directions. The plume is always spreading longitudinally, but the net effect of varying the flow direction is to increase spreading transverse to the average flow direction.

11.5.2 Molecular Diffusion

Molecular diffusion is mixing that occurs due to the random motion of molecules in a fluid. When a can of cat food is opened in the kitchen,

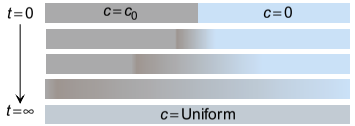


Figure 11.20 One-dimensional diffusion in a tube that at time zero has a sharp boundary between a region with concentration c_0 and a region with zero concentration (top). Concentrations are proportional to the darkness of the shading. Given infinite time, the concentration in the tube becomes uniform (bottom).

molecular diffusion spreads some of the molecules from the food through the air to the cat's nose, where it detects that supper is being served. The same happens in water, although at a slower pace than in air.

The bumping and jostling of molecules in the liquid tends, over time, to spread solutes out so that solute concentrations become more evenly distributed in space. Diffusion moves solute mass from regions with high concentrations towards regions with low concentrations. Diffusion tends to smooth out sharp differences in concentration distributions with time, as shown in Figure 11.20.

Diffusive mass flux for solutes in a saturated porous medium is governed by a form of Fick's first law, which for the x direction is written as

$$F_{dx} = -nT_x^* D \frac{\partial c}{\partial x} \tag{11.10}$$

where F_{dx} is the diffusive mass flux of solute in the x direction (mass per time per area normal to the x direction), n is the porosity of the medium, T_x^* is the **tortuosity** of the liquid phase in the x direction, D is a constant called the **molecular diffusion coefficient**, and c is solute concentration. Similar expressions would apply in the y and z directions. The flux of solute in any direction is proportional to the gradient of concentration in that direction. The minus sign is in this equation because mass moves towards decreasing concentrations, in the direction opposite that of the concentration gradient.

For water in porous media, the rate of diffusion is slower than diffusion through water alone, because the water phase occupies only a fraction of the space in a network of tortuous, interconnected passageways. Tortuosity is dimensionless, always less than one, and is a measure of how tortuous the typical flow path is through the medium. It can be thought of as the net, straight-line length of a flow path divided by the average actual, tortuous flow path. de Marsily (1986) reports that typically T^* ranges between 0.7 (sands)

Table 11.5 Molecular Diffusion Coefficients in Water

Solute	D (cm^2/sec)	Ref.
Ions:		
H^+	9.3×10^{-5}	1
OH^-	5.3×10^{-5}	1
Na^+, K^+, F^-, Cl^-, HCO_3^-, SO_4^{2-}	1.1 to 2.1×10^{-5}	1
Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, Fe^{2+}, Ra^{2+}, Fe^{3+}, Cr^{3+}, CO_3^{2-}	5.9 to 9.6×10^{-6}	1
VOCs:		
DCM	1.1×10^{-6}	2
1,1,1-TCA, PCE, TCE	7.5 to 8.3×10^{-6}	2

(1) Li and Gregory (1974).
(2) Cohen and Mercer (1993).

and 0.1 (clays), with measured values as low as 0.01 in a highly compacted bentonite clay. Bear (1972) reports a range of $0.56 < T^* < 0.8$ for granular media.

Tortuosity varies with direction because the fabric of the porous medium varies with direction. This is especially true in sedimentary deposits and in fractured rock. Like hydraulic conductivity, T^* in the most general sense is not isotropic, but is a tensor with nine components. If the coordinate axes line up with the principal directions of T^* (the directions of greatest, least, and intermediate T^*), the tensor contains only three nonzero terms (T_x^*, T_y^*, and T_z^*). Tortuosity is not easily measured and is often assumed to be isotropic, described by a single parameter T^*.

The molecular diffusion coefficient D has dimensions of $[L^2/T]$. It is a scalar property that depends on temperature and on the properties of the fluid and the solute. Higher temperatures mean faster molecular motions and larger D. Freeze and Cherry (1979) state that D at 5°C is about half of D at 25°C. Smaller molecules diffuse faster and have higher D than larger molecules. Molecular diffusion coefficients are lower in more viscous fluids. For most contaminant solutes of interest, D in water at 20°C is in the range of 10^{-6} to 10^{-5} cm^2/sec (Table 11.5). For VOCs, the air diffusion coefficient is usually about 10^4 times larger than the water diffusion coefficient (Cohen and Mercer, 1993).

In water, the pace of molecular diffusion is quite slow, so that relatively sharp gradients in solute concentration can persist in contaminant plumes. Figure 11.21 shows that one-dimensional diffusion with typical values for n, T^*, and D takes decades and more to disperse a solute pulse. Although diffusion is slow, it is an important process in very low conductivity materials like clays, where the advective flux (Eq. 11.9) may be even smaller than the diffusive flux.

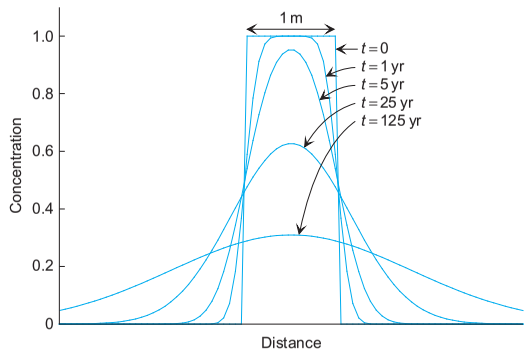


Figure 11.21 One-dimensional spreading of a solute pulse due to diffusion only, based on the analytic solutions of Leij et al. (1991), as implemented in the software SOLUTRANS. At time $t = 0$, the pulse was a step of solute with $c = 1$ inside the 1 m wide zone and $c = 0$ outside the zone. With time, the solute pulse spreads out, the peak concentration declines, and the concentration gradients decrease. In this model, $nT^*D = 2 \times 10^{-6}\,\text{cm}^2/\text{sec}$, which is in the typical range for solutes in porous media.

Example 11.4 Consider a clay layer that will serve as a landfill liner. It is 1 m thick, and its conductivity is estimated at $K = 10^{-7}$ cm/sec. Assume that the hydraulic gradient through the layer is 0.1, that the concentration of a solvent goes from $c = 80$ mg/L at the top of the layer to $c = 0$ mg/L at the bottom of the layer, and that $n = 0.4$, $T^* = 0.1$, and $D = 8 \times 10^{-6}$ cm^2/sec. Estimate the magnitude of both the diffusive and the advective flux through the clay.

The diffusive flux is given by Eq. 11.10 as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{dx} &= -nT^*D\frac{\partial c}{\partial x} \\ &= -(0.4)(0.1)(8 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{cm}^2/\text{sec})\left(\frac{80\ \text{mg}/1000\ \text{cm}^3}{100\ \text{cm}}\right) \\ &= -2.6 \times 10^{-10}\frac{\text{mg}}{\text{cm}^2 \cdot \text{sec}} \end{aligned}$$

Assuming an average concentration of 40 mg/L, the advective flux based on Eq. 11.9 is

$$\begin{aligned} F_{ax} &= q_x c \\ &= -K\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}c \end{aligned}$$

$$= -(10^{-7}\ \text{cm/sec})(0.1)(40\ \text{mg/L})\left(\frac{\text{L}}{1000\ \text{cm}^3}\right)$$

$$= -4 \times 10^{-10}\frac{\text{mg}}{\text{cm}^2 \cdot \text{sec}}$$

In this case, the two fluxes are of similar magnitude. In more conductive materials like silts or sands, the advective flux is usually several orders of magnitude larger than the diffusive flux.

The slow process of diffusion does not move large amounts of solute mass great distances, but it does smooth out small, localized concentration gradients. Irregular sources combined with mechanical dispersion due to velocity variations causes many small-scale concentration variations that are then smoothed to some extent by molecular diffusion.

11.5.3 Sorption

Solute sorption processes were discussed in the previous chapter. These processes cause interesting effects on overall patterns of solute migration. If a solute does not sorb at all to the aquifer solids as it flows, the average rate of solute transport can be estimated directly from the average linear velocity $\bar{v}$. When a solute does sorb significantly, its migration is slower than $\bar{v}$.

An analogy may help explain why. Consider a conveyor belt with a pile of oranges on it, as illustrated in Figure 11.22. If someone rapidly removes oranges from the leading edge of the pile and simultaneously adds them to the trailing edge of the pile, the pile itself will migrate at a rate that is slower than the speed of the conveyor. The migration of sorbing solutes is similar. In the leading edge of a plume, solute concentrations are increasing with time, which will be accompanied by rising sorbed concentrations (Eq. 10.74, for example). In the leading edge, solute mass is being transferred from the aqueous phase

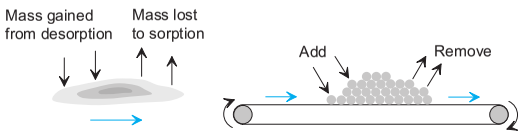


Figure 11.22 Migration of a sorbing solute pulse (left) is shown as contours of increasing concentration with darker shades. It is like the migration of a pile of oranges on a conveyor belt (right). In this analogy, oranges represent solute mass and the conveyor represents advection. Oranges are removed from the leading edge of the pile (sorption) and added at the tail end of the pile (desorption). The pile itself (solute pulse) will migrate at a rate that is slower than the speed of the conveyor (advection).

to the sorbed phase. The opposite is true at the trailing edge of a pulse; solute concentrations are falling, and mass is being transferred from sorption sites back into solution.

The migration of a pulse or front of sorbing solute is slower than the average linear velocity $\bar{v}$. If linear equilibrium sorption can be assumed, and if the sorption is linear (Eq. 10.74), the average rate of solute front migration $\bar{v}_s$ is linearly related to $\bar{v}$:

$$\bar{v}_s = \frac{\bar{v}}{R} \quad \text{(linear equilibrium sorption)} \tag{11.11}$$

where R is a constant called the retardation factor. For example, if the solute migrates half as fast as the average linear velocity, $R = 2$. The rate $\bar{v}_s$ is the rate that a moving pulse or a moving solute front would migrate.

Under the assumptions listed in Eq. 11.11, R is related to the sorption distribution coefficient K_d (Eq. 10.74) as

$$R = 1 + \frac{\rho_b K_d}{n} \quad \text{(linear equilibrium sorption)} \tag{11.12}$$

where ρ_b is the dry bulk density of the aquifer and n is porosity. This equation is derived in Section 11.7.3.

There are many situations where the simple model of retardation embodied in Eqs. 11.11 and 11.12 is not applicable. Linear sorption that obeys Eq. 10.74 is reasonable for many hydrophobic organic solutes, but it does not generally hold for metals, which are influenced by various aspects of solution and surface chemistry.

Sorption equilibrium is often not a good assumption. In many geologic materials, molecular diffusion limits the flux of solute molecules to some sorption sites. Sorption reactions are relatively fast, but in some materials a significant fraction of the potential sorption sites are not in direct contact with mobile pore water. Some pores are dead-ended, and some pores lie entirely within the mineral matrix. The water in these pores is stagnant, and molecular diffusion is the only way to move solutes through it to potential sorption sites.

Molecular diffusion is a slow process, so the solute concentration in these tiny, stagnant pockets can differ from the solute concentration in the nearby mobile water. Likewise, the sorbed concentrations on the surfaces that line these stagnant pockets differ from the sorbed concentrations on the surfaces in contact with flowing water. If the mobile water maintains a fixed concentration long enough, the solute and sorbed concentrations will become the same in the mobile water pores and in the stagnant pores. If the mobile

water concentrations are too variable, there will be disequilibrium between the mobile and immobile waters, and some diffusive mass transfer between these regions occurs. For sands from CFB Borden, Ontario, tens to hundreds of days were required in batch sorption tests for complete sorption equilibration, as shown in Figure 10.14. Similar long times for desorption were observed by Grathwohl and Reinhard (1993) in column tests, and they attributed this to diffusion-limited sorption.

Apparent effects of diffusion-limited sorption have been observed at the laboratory scale in experiments and at the field scale in tracer tests, as discussed in Section 11.6. The characteristics of diffusion-limited sorption include breakthrough curves and plumes that are asymmetric with long trailing sections, as shown in Figure 11.23. Heterogeneity in the sorption characteristics of the medium, like lenses of variable K_d materials, can cause greater dispersion and tailing similar to the effects of diffusion-limited sorption.

11.5.4 Colloid Transport

Colloids are defined as particles suspended in water with diameters smaller than 10 μm (10^{-6} m) in diameter (McCarthy and Zachara, 1989). At this small size, gravity forces are small compared to other forces, so particles can remain in suspension for very long times. Small as colloids are, they are still much larger than most molecules, which are on the order of 10^{-10} to 10^{-8} m.

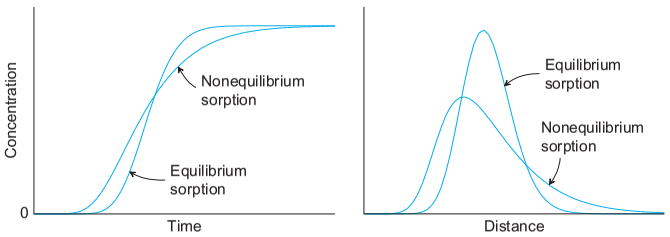


Figure 11.23 Breakthrough curve: plot of concentration vs. time at a point downstream from a continuous solute source (left). Profile of concentrations along the direction of flow for a pulse of solute that is advecting and dispersing (right). When the sorption is linear and at equilibrium, the breakthrough curve and pulse are symmetrical. When the sorption is nonequilibrium (diffusion-limited), the curves become skewed with long trailing sections. Nonequilibrium sorption causes greater dispersion of solutes. The plots are generated by analytic solutions of Leij et al. (1991, 1993). The two cases compared in each plot are identical except for the mode of sorption.

Colloids can consist of small mineral fragments, bacteria, viruses, NAPL droplets, and larger organic molecules. Some colloids are generated by chemical reactions that precipitate minerals; others are generated by surface reactions that disaggregate and loosen small particles from surfaces. Colloids can also be moved from surface water to the subsurface by natural or unnatural infiltration.

Colloids are often mobile, drifting with groundwater as it flows through pore spaces. This is yet another potential mechanism for contaminant migration. The colloid itself can be a contaminant, as in NAPL droplets or certain bacteria. Sometimes the colloid itself is not a contaminant, but contaminants hitch a ride by sorbing onto colloid surfaces. Colloids have a large ratio of surface area to mass, so they have the potential to provide a significant amount of sorption.

Immobile colloids are found at mineral surfaces, at air–water interfaces in the unsaturated zone, and probably at NAPL–water interfaces (Wan and Wilson, 1994a,b). Figure 11.24 shows colloidal latex particles sorbed onto an air–water interface. What holds colloids to these surfaces is a combination of electrostatic and chemical forces (McCarthy and Zachara, 1989). Colloids tend

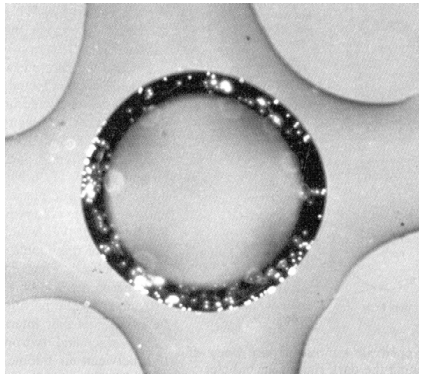


Figure 11.24 Sorption of colloidal latex particles (fluorescent) onto the air–water interface of an air bubble trapped in a pore. This type of sorption can significantly retard colloid migration in unsaturated zone pore waters. From Wan, J. and J. L. Wilson, 1994a, Visualization of the role of the gas–water interface on the fate and transport of colloids in porous media. *Water Resources Research*, 30(1), 11–23. Copyright (1994) American Geophysical Union. Reproduced by permission of American Geophysical Union.

to attach themselves to surfaces that have an electrical charge opposite the charge of the colloid surface. For example, colloids carrying a positive charge tend to attach to negatively charged silicate and oxide minerals in the matrix.

Colloids can be filtered (trapped) in porous media when most pore openings are too small to accommodate the colloids. Such filtration is the basis for many common wastewater treatment processes. If a colloid is big enough to be excluded from small, tortuous flow paths, but small enough to migrate through larger, less tortuous pathways, the colloid can migrate at an average rate that is faster than the average linear velocity $\bar{v}$ of the water. This was demonstrated in tracer tests with bacteria in a sand and gravel aquifer (Harvey et al., 1989). In these experiments, a pulse of bacteria tracer migrated significantly faster than bromide tracer, which is nonreactive and migrates at an average rate equal to $\bar{v}$.

It is difficult to obtain groundwater samples that accurately reflect the concentrations of colloids found in situ (McCarthy and Zachara, 1989). Drilling and well installation, with the associated mechanical mixing and clay-rich drilling fluids, often introduces more colloids than are present in the ambient setting. Originally immobile colloids can be mobilized by the high hydraulic gradients that occur during drilling or groundwater sampling. It is also possible that colloid chemistry is altered during sampling, as the water adjusts to changes in parameters such as pressure, temperature, dissolved oxygen, and dissolved CO_2.

11.6 Case Studies of Solute Transport

The two case studies presented here are ones where the migration of solutes were monitored with an exceptionally large number of wells, so that a fairly clear picture of the migration patterns emerged. The first was a controlled tracer test, where known masses of tracers were intentionally injected as solutes. After injection, their migration was closely monitored by repeated sampling of thousands of small wells. The tracer solution included nonreactive solutes and several reactive solutes that sorbed and biodegraded. The other case study monitored solute transport from gasoline and diesel fuel that leaked from underground storage tanks.

11.6.1 CFB Borden, Ontario, Tracer Test

The Borden tracer test is described by Mackay et al. (1986), and summarized briefly here. It took place in an unconfined sand aquifer located beneath the Canadian Forces Base Borden (CFB Borden), Ontario, during a three-year period in the early 1980s. A tracer solution containing inorganic and organic solutes was injected and allowed to migrate under natural gradients through a dense network of monitoring wells. The sand aquifer was relatively uniform, but contained lenses that ranged from silty fine sand to clean medium sand. Its porosity and bulk density averaged $n = 0.33$ and $\rho_b = 1.81$ g/cm^3, respectively.

The source was 12 m^3 of a premixed solution of aquifer water plus known masses of seven different tracer chemicals. Two of the tracers were inorganic and nonreactive: chloride and bromide. Five were bromated or chlorinated organic compounds that were reactive: bromoform ($CHBr_3$), carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4), tetracholoethylene (PCE, C_2Cl_4), 1,2-dichlorobenzene ($C_6H_4Cl_2$), and hexachloroethane (C_2Cl_6). The source solution was injected just below the water table through a cluster of injection wells, as shown in Figure 11.25.

The tracers migrated downgradient under natural hydraulic gradients (no pumping) through a dense network of multilevel samplers shown in Figure 11.25. Each multilevel sampler consisted of multiple short-screen piezometers installed in a single vertical hole. There were a total of about 5000 sampling points in the array. Samples were collected during 14 separate sampling rounds during the 1038-day tracer test.

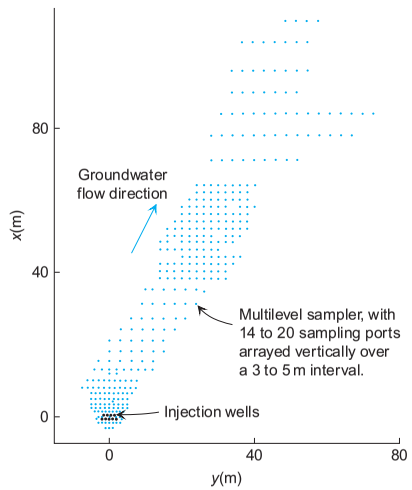


Figure 11.25 Location of injection wells and multilevel samplers for the Borden tracer test. From Mackay, D. M., D. L. Freyberg, P. V. Roberts, and J. A. Cherry, 1986, A natural gradient experiment on solute transport in a sand aquifer: 1. Approach and overview of plume movement, *Water Resources Research*, 22(13), 2017–2029. Copyright (1986) American Geophysical Union. Reproduced by permission of American Geophysical Union.

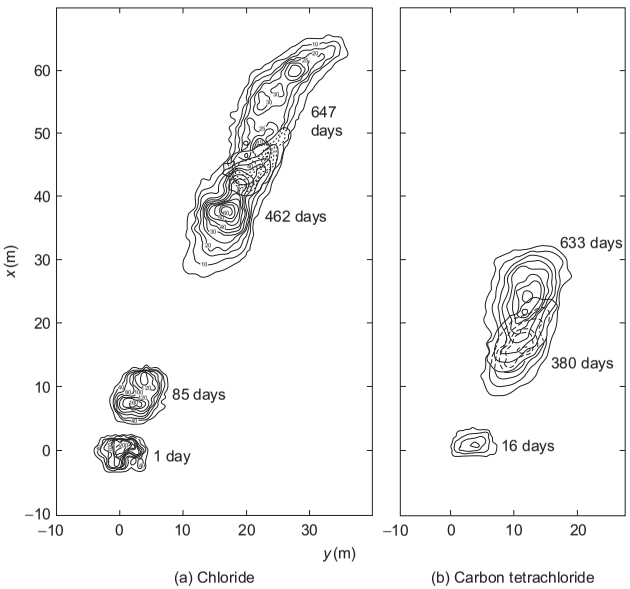


Figure 11.26 Contours of vertically averaged solute concentrations for chloride and carbon tetrachloride at several different times during the test. The time since injection is shown next to each solute cloud. The origin of coordinates $x = y = 0$ is at the center of the injection wells. From Mackay, D. M., D. L. Freyberg, P. V. Roberts, and J. A. Cherry, 1986, A natural gradient experiment on solute transport in a sand aquifer: 1. Approach and overview of plume movement, *Water Resources Research*, 22(13), 2017–2029. Copyright (1986) American Geophysical Union. Reproduced by permission of American Geophysical Union.

The horizontal distribution of chloride and carbon tetrachloride solutes during the test is shown in Figure 11.26. One day after injection, the chloride was distributed in an irregular, roughly circular pattern about the injection wells. The other solutes probably had a similar distribution at this early time. As time passed, the center of mass of the solute clouds translated downgradient and the clouds dispersed and became elongated in the direction of flow. The solute clouds did disperse some transverse to flow, but very little compared to the longitudinal dispersion.

It is quite clear that the chloride tracer cloud moved more rapidly than the carbon tetrachloride tracer cloud. Later in the test, the two tracers were completely separated in space. The chloride is a nonreactive tracer that is not retarded by sorption reactions. On the other hand, carbon tetrachloride sorbed to the aquifer solids, retarding its horizontal migration. This separation of different solutes due to different sorption rates is the basis of chromatographic separation techniques used in analytical chemistry.

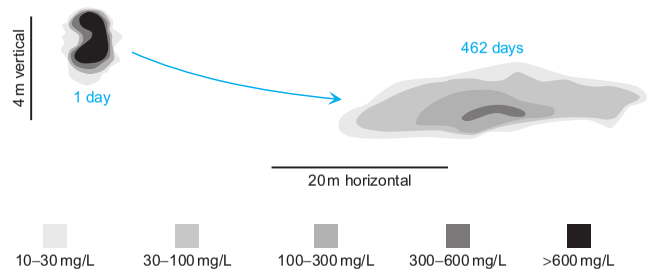


Figure 11.27 Patterns of chloride concentrations on a vertical cross-section in the direction of transport. From Mackay, D. M., D. L. Freyberg, P. V. Roberts, and J. A. Cherry, 1986, A natural gradient experiment on solute transport in a sand aquifer: 1. Approach and overview of plume movement, *Water Resources Research*, 22(13), 2017–2029. Copyright (1986) American Geophysical Union. Reproduced by permission of American Geophysical Union.

Figure 11.27 shows the vertical distribution of the chloride tracer along the axis of the plume at day 1 and then at day 462 of the test. The chloride cloud sank vertically and spread out in the longitudinal direction. Little spreading occurred in the vertical direction.

The vertical path of the center of mass of the nonreactive tracer bromide in the vertical section is shown in Figure 3.25. Initially the tracers sank significantly and later the tracers moved mostly horizontally. The initial sinking was probably due to the fact that the tracer solution was denser than the surrounding water. As the tracer dispersed and separated due to sorption, its density approached that of the surrounding water and the rate of sinking decreased.

Figure 11.28 shows the breakthrough curves for three different tracers at a sampler located just downgradient from the injection wells. The plot clearly illustrates retardation caused by sorption. Chloride, which does not sorb significantly, breaks through first, followed by carbon tetrachloride and then PCE. The PCE sorbs more than carbon tetrachloride does, so it breaks through last. All three tracers exhibit skewed breakthrough curves, with longer tailing sections than leading sections. This skewness is more evident in the sorbing tracers, and indicates that some diffusion-limited transport is occurring (see Figure 11.23). The peak chloride concentration was nearly one (nearly equal to the injected concentration), while the peak concentrations of the sorbing solutes were far below the injected concentration. The low peak concentrations for the sorbing solutes are due to mass transferred from the aqueous phase to sorption sites.

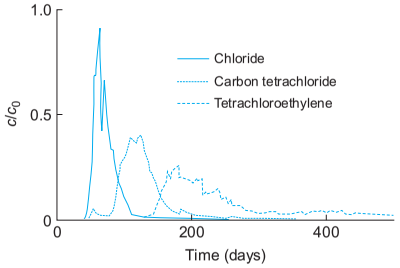


Figure 11.28 Relative tracer concentrations vs. time at a sampler located 5 m down-gradient from the injection wells. Relative concentration equals concentration divided by concentration in the injected solution. From Roberts, P. V., M. N. Goltz, and D. M. Mackay, 1986, A natural gradient experiment on solute transport in a sand aquifer: 3. Retardation estimates and mass balances for organic solutes, *Water Resources Research*, 22(13), 2047–2058. Copyright (1986) American Geophysical Union. Reproduced by permission of American Geophysical Union.

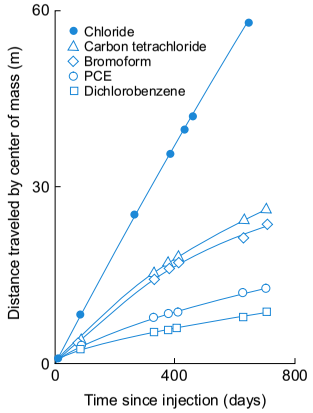


Figure 11.29 Displacement of the center of mass of the solute tracer cloud vs. time. The center of mass is the weighted average position of the cloud of tracer solute. From Roberts, P. V., M. N. Goltz, and D. M. Mackay, 1986, A natural gradient experiment on solute transport in a sand aquifer: 3. Retardation estimates and mass balances for organic solutes, *Water Resources Research*, 22(13), 2047–2058. Copyright (1986) American Geophysical Union. Reproduced by permission of American Geophysical Union.

The migration of the tracer cloud centers of mass illustrates the sorption of the different tracers in a different way (Figure 11.29). The chloride tracer moved with nearly constant velocity, on average, as the linear trend indicates. The rate of chloride transport is consistent with the estimated average linear velocity of the groundwater. The sorbing tracers all moved slower than the chloride,

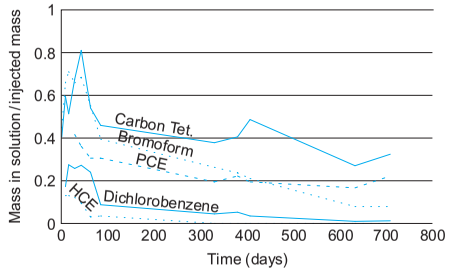


Figure 11.30 Estimated mass of tracer in the aqueous phase vs. time. Based on data tabulated by Roberts et al. (1986).

each at its own rate in inverse proportion to its own retardation factor. The sorbing solute clouds decelerated as the tracer test progressed, as evidenced by the convex shape of the curves in Figure 11.29. The deceleration may be due to diffusion-limited sorption or to heterogeneity in the aquifer's sorption characteristics.

Soon after the tracer solution was injected, the mass of sorbing solutes fell below the mass injected, due to mass transfer from the aqueous phase to sorption sites (Figure 11.30). The mass of each sorbing solute in the aqueous phase tended to decrease throughout the test. Some decreased faster than others. Hexachloroethane was essentially gone by midway through the test, and dichlorobenzene was largely gone by the end of the test. The systematic declines in the dissolved mass of hexachloroethane, dichlorobenzene, and bromoform were the result of microbial digestion of the tracer compounds. For PCE and carbon tetrachloride, the mass losses were the result of sorption, which tended to increase as the test progressed.

11.6.2 North Carolina Gasoline and Diesel Spill

At this site, leaking underground storage tanks spilled gasoline and diesel fuel into a shallow coastal plain sand aquifer that is underlain by clay. Residual LNAPL dissolved into the passing groundwater, eventually creating a long plume of solute contamination containing various hydrocarbon solutes.

In a study reported by Borden et al. (1997), the spatial and temporal trends in solute concentrations were monitored with an array of 22 multilevel well clusters, with each cluster containing two to four wells spanning different elevations. The network of monitoring wells, the plume, and the location of the leaking tanks are shown in Figure 11.31.

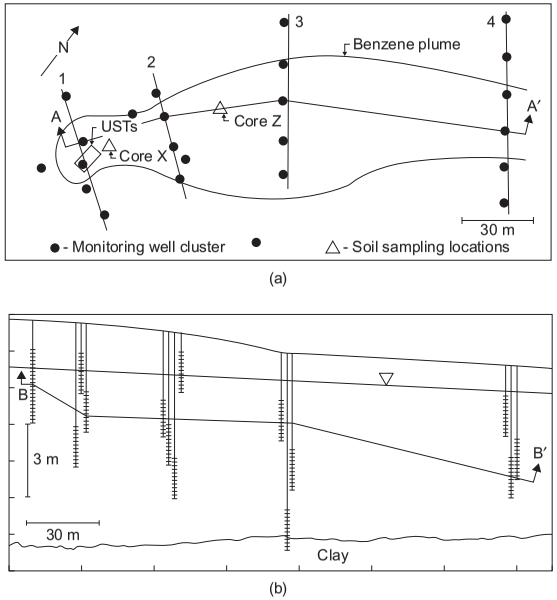


Figure 11.31 Map of the gasoline plume site (a) and a vertical cross-section down the axis of the plume showing the screened intervals of clustered wells (b). The source of contamination was a group of underground storage tanks (USTs) shown at the left side of the figure. Groundwater flows from left to right. From Borden, R. C., R. A. Daniel, L. E. LeBrun, and C. W. Davis, 1997, Intrinsic biodegradation of MTBE and BTEX in a gasoline-contaminated aquifer, *Water Resources Research*, 33(5), 1105–1115. Copyright (1997) American Geophysical Union. Reproduced by permission of American Geophysical Union.

The distribution of MTBE and the BTEX compounds in the solute plume is illustrated in Figure 11.32. There are large differences in the extent of each solute's plume. MTBE covers the greatest area, followed by benzene, *o*-xylene, *m*- and *p*-xylene, toluene, and lastly ethylbenzene. Sorption probably had little to do with the differences in solute extent; the estimated retardation factor for all solutes was close to 1.0 (Borden et al., 1997).

The significant differences in plume extent appear to be due to differing rates of biodegradation for different solutes. Borden et al. (1997) estimated the solute mass fluxes at each of the four lines of wells shown in Figure 11.31. The mass flux for each solute decreased in the downgradient direction, presumably due to microbial consumption of the solute along the flow path. Analysis of the mass flux data for lines 1 and 2 resulted in the estimated decay rates shown in Table 11.6. The decay coefficient is proportional to the rate of decay of the solute, which will be defined more precisely in the next section (Eq. 11.27). It is

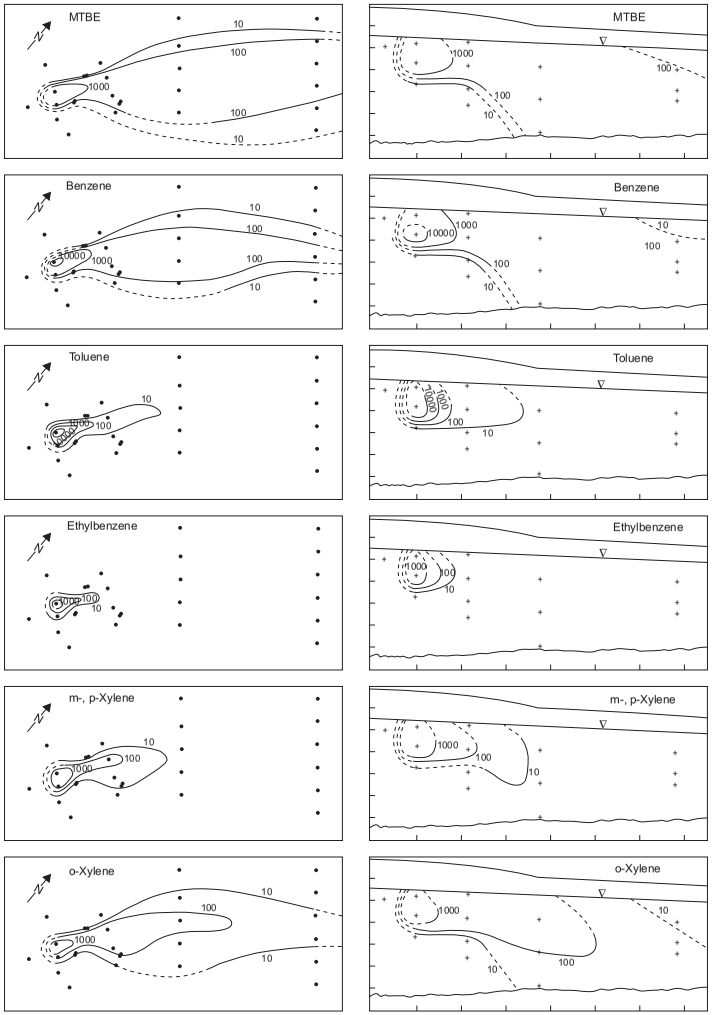


Figure 11.32 Horizontal (left) and vertical (right) distributions of MTBE and BTEX solutes in the plume. Concentration contours have units of mg/L. From Borden, R. C., R. A. Daniel, L. E. LeBrun, and C. W. Davis, 1997, Intrinsic biodegradation of MTBE and BTEX in a gasoline-contaminated aquifer, *Water Resources Research*, 33(5), 1105–1115. Copyright (1997) American Geophysical Union. Reproduced by permission of American Geophysical Union.

Table 11.6 Estimated First-Order Decay Rates Between Lines 1 and 2

Compound	Decay Coefficient λ (day^{-1})
MTBE	0.0010 ± 0.0007
Benzene	0.0014 ± 0.0006
Toluene	0.0063 ± 0.0010
Ethylbenzene	0.0058 ± 0.0009
m-, *p*-Xylene	0.0035 ± 0.0009
o-Xylene	0.0017 ± 0.0006

Source: Borden et al. (1997).

clear that plume size is inversely related to the decay rate. The solutes with the highest decay rates (ethylbenzene and toluene) have the smallest plumes, and the solutes with the lowest decay rates (MTBE and benzene) have the largest plumes.

The distribution of several important inorganic solutes is shown in Figure 11.33. The chloride plume emanates from a salt storage facility just east of the leaking tanks, and it is not relevant to this discussion. Dissolved oxygen is low in the core of the hydrocarbon plume due to respiration reactions carried out in aerobic bacteria, consuming O_2 and dissolved hydrocarbons. The products of respiration are CO_2 and water. Elevated CO_2 concentrations in the core of the plume is further evidence of aerobic biodegradation. There is no clear pattern in the distribution of nitrate concentrations. Denitrification (see Table 10.13) may be a process that oxidizes some of the dissolved hydrocarbons here, but it has not caused a noticeable depression of nitrate concentrations in the core of the plume.

11.7 Modeling Solute Transport

As you can gather from the previous sections, real solute transport is very complex. So are the questions that are asked with respect to contamination, such as "Will the benzene in a gasoline contamination plume cause a concentration greater than 2 μg/L in a well that is 800 m downgradient?" No one can answer such questions with great precision, but models of transport can give useful guidance. This section outlines the basis for some of the simpler mathematical models of solute transport.

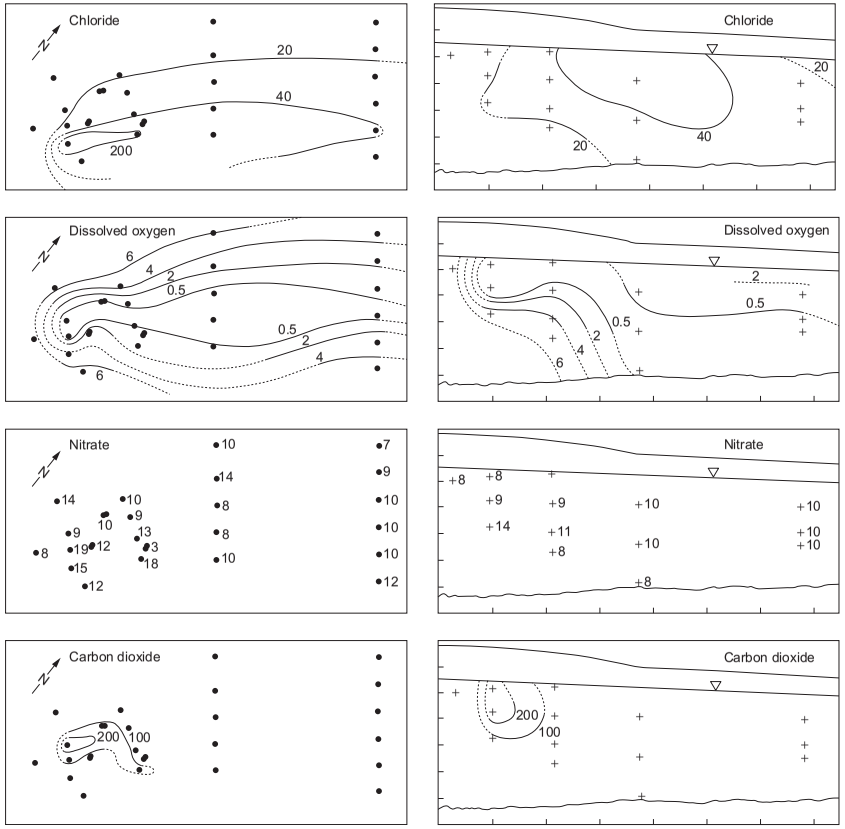


Figure 11.33 Horizontal (left) and vertical (right) distributions of chloride, oxygen, nitrate, and carbon dioxide solutes in the plume. Concentration contours have units of mg/L. From R. C. Borden, R. A. Daniel, L. E. LeBrun, and C. W. Davis, 1997, Intrinsic biodegradation of MTBE and BTEX in a gasoline-contaminated aquifer, *Water Resources Research*, 33(5), 1105–1115. Copyright (1997) American Geophysical Union. Reproduced by permission of American Geophysical Union.

11.7.1 Modeling Dispersion and Diffusion

As solutes migrate in groundwater they tend to mix and disperse as a result of two fundamental processes:

1. Mechanical dispersion due to velocity variations (Section 11.5.1)
2. Molecular diffusion (Section 11.5.2)

Molecular diffusion is known to be governed by Fick's first law for porous media, Eq. 11.10. There is no such universal, proven model of mass flux for the case of mechanical dispersion. It depends on the nature of spatial and transient velocity variations, which in turn depend on the nature of the medium's heterogeneity and on transient flow phenomena. Mechanical dispersion depends on too many complex processes to be described by a simple, fundamental law of mass flux. It does, however, often result in spreading that is at least qualitatively similar to diffusive spreading. Mechanical dispersion can be modeled as though it, too, is governed by Fick's first law, an approach that provides a reasonable representation of the processes under many circumstances.

With this Fickian approach, the effects of mechanical dispersion plus molecular diffusion are lumped together in what is called **macrodispersion**. One-dimensional macrodispersive flux F_{mx} is governed by an equation that is a form of Fick's first law:

$$F_{mx} = -nD_{mx}\frac{\partial c}{\partial x} \tag{11.13}$$

where n is porosity, c is concentration, and D_{mx} is a model parameter called the **macrodispersion coefficient** in the x direction. The macrodispersion coefficient consists of two terms, the first for mechanical dispersion and the second for molecular diffusion:

$$D_{mx} = \alpha_x |\overline{v}| + T_x^* D \tag{11.14}$$

where α_x is called the **dispersivity** in the x direction, $|\overline{v}|$ is the magnitude of the average linear velocity of flow, T_x^* is the tortuosity in the x direction, and D is the molecular diffusion coefficient (see Eq. 11.10). In all but the lowest K materials like massive clays, mechanical dispersion causes far more dispersion than molecular diffusion does, so the diffusive term can be eliminated from Eq. 11.14:

$$D_{mx} = \alpha_x |\overline{v}| \quad \text{(advection-dominated dispersion)} \tag{11.15}$$

Mechanical dispersion is much greater in the direction of flow than transverse to flow, so in two- or three-dimensional transport models, macrodispersion parameters are usually defined in orthogonal directions, one parallel to flow, and the other(s) transverse to flow. For transport models, the coordinate system is often a curved one, aligned with the direction of flow. For example, D_{mx} and α_x might apply to the direction of flow, while D_{my}, α_y, D_{mz}, and α_z apply to two orthogonal directions transverse to flow. In aquifers where the flow is predominantly horizontal, the transverse directions are usually chosen in the horizontal and vertical directions normal to flow.

The Fickian macrodispersion approach to transport modeling is most reasonable when the transport has the following characteristics.

- The solute is nonreactive.
- The variation in K (heterogeneity) is not extreme.
- The spatial distribution of K may be reasonably approximated as a space random function with log-normal distribution (normal distribution of $Y = \ln(K)$).
- The scale of heterogeneity has a finite length scale I.
- The scale of the plume is far larger than I.

Under these circumstances, modeled dispersion and the ensemble average behavior of an actual plume (plume-wide measures of dispersion) will be consistent.

For plumes that are not far larger than I, the appropriate longitudinal macrodispersivity α_L for a model depends on the scale of the plume. The appropriate α_L will increase by orders of magnitude as the experiment scale moves from cm (lab experiment) to tens of meters (field experiment) to hundreds of meters (plume scale). In a survey of transport models that were used to simulate solute plumes, Gelhar et al. (1992) developed the plot shown in Figure 11.34, which relates α_L to the extent of the modeled transport. The larger the transport scale, the larger the velocity variations that are not explicitly modeled in the velocity field $\overline{v}$, and the larger the dispersion parameters need to be to simulate dispersion due to those variations. Plots like Figure 11.34 provide only vague guidance, since there is considerable uncertainty in determining most of these values and they are specific to particular plumes and geologic materials. Numerical experiments by Janković et al. (2003, 2006), and Fiori et al. (2006) showed that for a medium with a fixed I, the appropriate model longitudinal dispersivity does approach a fixed value as plume scale becomes far greater than I.

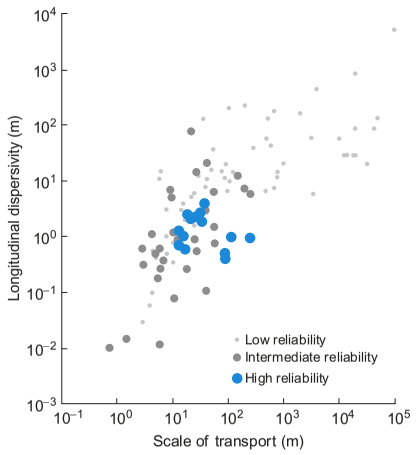


Figure 11.34 Model-fitted longitudinal macrodispersivity vs. scale of plume that was modeled. Macrodispersivities were determined by calibrating solute transport models to observed solute plumes. From Gelhar, L. W., C. Welty, and K. R. Rehfeldt, 1992, A critical review of data on field-scale dispersion in aquifers, *Water Resources Research*, 28(7), 1955–1974. Copyright (1992) American Geophysical Union. Reproduced by permission of American Geophysical Union.

Janković et al. (2006) and Fiori et al. (2006) also showed that as the degree of K heterogeneity (e.g., variance of $\ln(K)$) increases, plumes tend to develop long tails, due to very slow transport through the lowest-K materials. Their experiments showed that in highly heterogeneous media, the leading and central parts of a plume were reasonably consistent with macrodispersion models but the trailing parts of plumes were not. Being able to accurately model the trailing edge of solute plumes would be useful for predicting contamination cleanup times, but at present this is still an unresolved challenge.

The book website has a simulation of solute transport by advection through a heterogeneous region, which illustrates some of the points of the previous discussion. The simulation shows how velocity variations tend to spread solute in the direction of flow in an irregular fashion. The simulation also shows how some very low conductivity patches in the source area continue to bleed solute into the flow, creating a long tail in the plume (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058). Figure 11.35 shows a snapshot of this simulation, along with the plume-averaged one-dimensional average concentration. The one-dimensional average concentration closely resembles what a one-dimensional Fickian macrodispersion model predicts.

Another video on the book website shows a time-lapse movie of solute transport in a vertical sand tank experiment. The medium was extremely heterogeneous with clay lenses embedded in sand. The video shows a pulse of

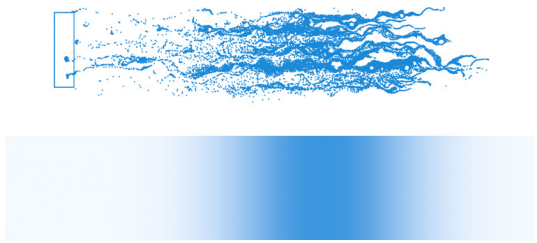


Figure 11.35 Simulated contaminant concentration distribution for advective transport through a two-dimensional heterogeneous field (top). The source area is the box at left. One-dimensional plume-wide average concentration for this plume (bottom). Image used with permission of I. Janković and G. Dagan.

Table 11.7 Estimated Macrodispersivities from Tracer Tests

Test	Length of Transport (m)	Longitudinal α_l (m)	Transverse Horiz. α_{th} (m)	Transverse Vert. α_{tv} (m)
Borden	87	0.36	0.039	0.023
Cape Cod	216	0.96	0.018	0.0015

Sources: Freyberg (1986); Garabedian and LeBlanc (1991).

solute migrating through the tank. After most of the pulse has passed through the tank, solute continues to bleed from the fringes of the clay lenses. In this case, a combination of slow advection and diffusive flux in the clay create the observed tailing of the plume (http://booksite.academicpress.com/9780123847058).

The most accurate estimates of macrodispersivities come from statistical analysis of tracer tests where the plume geometry was defined by a dense network of sampling wells. This was done at the Borden tracer test (Section 11.6) and at a similar test on Cape Cod in a glacial outwash sand aquifer (LeBlanc et al., 1991). The estimated macrodispersivities from these two tests are listed in Table 11.7. Compared to the Borden test, the Cape Cod test had a denser sampling network and less uncertainty in its estimates of macrodispersivity. Both sites were sandy aquifers with low to moderate levels of heterogeneity.

If solute transport is simulated with an appropriate macrodispersive model, the simulated dispersion of solute will be similar to actual dispersion on a "macro" scale. However, at a smaller scale, the actual solute plume will be more irregular or lumpy than the modeled plume. Real heterogeneous aquifers disperse contaminants into irregular, lumpy concentration

distributions that follow the pattern of heterogeneities (Fitts, 1996). On the other hand, macrodispersion models ignore the distribution of small heterogeneities, but simulate their dispersive effects as macrodispersion. As a result, macrodispersion models produce smoother concentration distributions than the real thing.

Important consequences of the smoother concentration distributions simulated by macrodispersion models can arise in reactive solute transport models. If the model is simulating more mixing that is realistic, then the simulated rates of some reactions may be higher than is realistic. In some reactions, small-scale mixing is a key factor limiting a reaction, and it is in these cases that reactive macro-scale transport models may overestimate mixing and reaction rates. Tartakovsky et al. (2009) demonstrated such effects with pore-scale reactive transport models that were compared to models that neglect pore-scale velocity variations; the largest errors occurred when advective mass transport was much larger than diffusive mass transport.

11.7.2 General Equations for Nonreactive Solutes

The general equations for solute transport will be derived in the simplest way possible—for one-dimensional transport of a nonsorbing, nonreactive solute. Once that equation is established, it will be extended to other, more general cases.

The general equations are derived by applying the principle of mass balance to a small rectangular element as shown in Figure 11.36. The flow and dispersive fluxes are limited to the x direction only. Mass balance for the cube means that the total flux of solute mass through the boundary of the cube equals the time rate of change of solute mass stored inside the cube.

First, we will examine the mass flux through the boundaries of the cube. Two types of mass flux are considered: advective flux given by Eq. 11.9, and macrodispersive flux given by Eq. 11.13. Adding these two types of fluxes gives

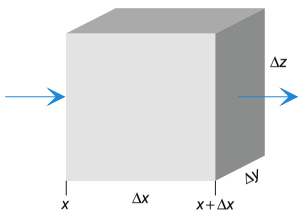


Figure 11.36 Element with dimensions $\Delta x \times \Delta y \times \Delta z$, for mass balance.

the mass flux (mass/time) in through the left side of the cube (at x) in the positive x direction,

$$\left[q_x c(x) - nD_{mx}\frac{\partial c}{\partial x}(x)\right]\Delta y \Delta z \tag{11.16}$$

and the mass flux out through the right side of the cube (at $x+\Delta x$) in the positive x direction,

$$\left[q_x c(x+\Delta x) - nD_{mx}\frac{\partial c}{\partial x}(x+\Delta x)\right]\Delta y \Delta z \tag{11.17}$$

The rate of change in the mass of solute stored inside the cube is

$$\frac{\partial (cn)}{\partial t}\Delta x \Delta y \Delta z \tag{11.18}$$

where n is porosity. For mass balance, the flux in the left side minus the flux out the right side equals the rate of change in the mass stored within. Combining the previous three equations in this way and dividing through by $\Delta x \Delta y \Delta z$ gives

$$\frac{\left[nD_{mx}\frac{\partial c}{\partial x}(x+\Delta x) - nD_{mx}\frac{\partial c}{\partial x}(x) - q_x c(x+\Delta x) + q_x c(x)\right]}{\Delta x} = \frac{\partial (cn)}{\partial t} \tag{11.19}$$

In the limit as $\Delta x \to 0$, the left-hand side results in derivatives with respect to x as follows:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(nD_{mx}\frac{\partial c}{\partial x}\right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(q_x c) = \frac{\partial (cn)}{\partial t} \tag{11.20}$$

Substituting $n\bar{v}_x = q_x$ in this equation and assuming that D_{mx} is independent of x, and that n is independent of x and t, it simplifies to

$$D_{mx}\frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\bar{v}_x c) = \frac{\partial c}{\partial t} \tag{11.21}$$

This is the standard one-dimensional advection–dispersion equation for a nonreactive solute.

Allowing fluxes in all three dimensions would result in a similar set of terms in each direction, giving the three-dimensional advection–dispersion

equation for a nonreactive solute:

$$D_{mx}\frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\overline{v}_x c) + D_{my}\frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial y^2} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\overline{v}_y c) + D_{mz}\frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial z^2} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\overline{v}_z c) = \frac{\partial c}{\partial t} \quad (11.22)$$

This can be written in a more compact form, making use of the gradient operator ∇, and writing the vector (D_{mx}, D_{my}, D_{mz}) as D_{mi}, and the vector $(\overline{v}_x, \overline{v}_y, \overline{v}_z)$ as $\overline{v}_i$:

$$D_{mi}\nabla^2 c - \nabla(\overline{v}_i c) = \frac{\partial c}{\partial t} \quad (11.23)$$

This is the general advection–dispersion equation for three dimensions, assuming that the porosity and macrodispersivities are constant in space and time. A few variations on this equation will now be presented.

If the flow field is steady state, $\nabla \overline{v}_i = 0$ and $\overline{v}_i$ can be removed from the gradient operator in Eq. 11.23 as follows:

$$D_{mi}\nabla^2 c - \overline{v}_i \nabla c = \frac{\partial c}{\partial t} \quad \text{(steady flow)} \quad (11.24)$$

If, in addition to steady flow, the concentration field is steady state ($\partial c/\partial t = 0$), then Eq. 11.23 becomes

$$D_{mi}\nabla^2 c - \overline{v}_i \nabla c = 0 \quad \text{(steady flow and concentration)} \quad (11.25)$$

If there is no flow at all, $\overline{v} = 0$ and Eq. 11.23 becomes the diffusion equation

$$D_{mi}\nabla^2 c = \frac{\partial c}{\partial t} \quad \text{(no flow, diffusion only)} \quad (11.26)$$

where in this case the coefficients $D_{mi} = T_i^* D$ (see Eq. 11.14).

11.7.3 General Equations for Reactive Solutes

There are many variations of the advection–dispersion equation for cases where the solutes react and/or sorb to solid surfaces as they flow. A useful equation models a solute that decays at a constant rate. This would be appropriate for radioactive solutes, and sometimes for solutes that biodegrade. The assumption is that the decay is governed by the simple first-order rate law

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = -\lambda c \quad (11.27)$$

where λ is a decay constant with dimensions of [1/T]. The half-life of the solute is linearly related to λ, as shown in Eq. 10.88. When loss due to decay is added to Eq. 11.23, it becomes

$$D_{mi}\nabla^2 c - \nabla(\overline{v}_i c) - \lambda c = \frac{\partial c}{\partial t} \quad \text{(decay)} \quad (11.28)$$

Another facet of reaction that can be modeled is linear sorption that is always at equilibrium (Eq. 10.74 applies at all times). For this, a bit of derivation is needed to get to the final governing equation. When a solute adsorbs to the porous media, mass fluxes involving the sorbed phase must be accounted for in the solute transport equation. Assuming decay proceeds at the same rate in the aqueous and sorbed phases, Eq. 11.28 is modified as follows:

$$D_{mi}\nabla^2 c - \nabla(\overline{v}_i c) - \lambda c - \lambda c^* = \frac{\partial c}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial c^*}{\partial t} \quad (11.29)$$

where c^* is the sorbed mass per volume of pore water. As c^* increases, c decreases and vice versa, since the mass is being transferred from one phase to the other.

If the sorption is assumed to be linear and at equilibrium, the sorbed concentration and aqueous concentration are related by Eq. 10.74, which is repeated here in a slightly modified form:

$$cK_d = \frac{\text{sorbed mass}}{\text{mass aquifer solids}} \quad (11.30)$$

where c is the aqueous solute concentration, and K_d is the sorption distribution coefficient. The right side of Eq. 11.30 can be written in terms of c^*, porosity n, and dry bulk density ρ_b as follows:

$$cK_d = \left(\frac{\text{sorbed mass}}{\text{volume pore water}}\right)\left(\frac{\text{volume pore water}}{\text{total volume}}\right)\left(\frac{\text{total volume}}{\text{mass aquifer solids}}\right)$$
$$= (c^*)(n)\left(\frac{1}{\rho_b}\right) \quad (11.31)$$

Rearranging the previous equation gives c^* in terms of c and known constants:

$$c^* = c\left(\frac{\rho_b K_d}{n}\right) \tag{11.32}$$

Now, substituting Eq. 11.32 into 11.29 and combining the two terms with $\partial c/\partial t$, we get

$$D_{mi}\nabla^2 c - \nabla(\bar{v}_i c) - \lambda c\left(1 + \frac{\rho_b K_d}{n}\right) = \frac{\partial c}{\partial t}\left(1 + \frac{\rho_b K_d}{n}\right) \tag{11.33}$$

The term in parentheses is the retardation factor R (Eq. 11.12). Dividing both sides by R shows that the effect of linear equilibrium sorption is to retard both advection and dispersion by the factor $1/R$:

$$\frac{1}{R}\left[D_{mi}\nabla^2 c - \nabla(\bar{v}_i c)\right] - \lambda c = \frac{\partial c}{\partial t} \qquad \text{(sorption and decay)} \tag{11.34}$$

Comparable general equations for transport are given by van Genuchten (1981), Wexler (1992), and Charbeneau (2000).

11.7.4 Boundary Conditions

The previous sections discussed the general governing equations for solute transport. There are many different analytic and approximate solutions to these equations, each a solution for a particular set of boundary conditions. The derivation of specific solutions involves mathematics that is beyond the scope of this text, so that will not be the focus here. We will instead discuss boundary conditions in general and then examine a few useful solutions that simulate specific conditions. This brief overview will help build a general understanding of how transport parameters affect the model's output.

As was the case with flow models, a specific model is defined by its governing equation plus the specific boundary conditions that apply. For transport models, boundary conditions define aspects of mass distribution and mass flux in the modeled domain. Only one type of condition may be specified along a particular stretch of the boundary. The following is a list of the most common boundary conditions that are applied to transport models:

1. Specified mass flux at a spatial boundary
2. Specified concentration at a spatial boundary
3. Specified concentration distribution at an initial time

The first and second conditions apply to spatial boundaries through time, while the third one specifies conditions through space at an initial time.

When specifying the first, mass flux boundary condition, it is the total flux (advective plus dispersive) that is fixed. The specified flux boundary condition equation follows from the definitions of advective flux and macrodispersive flux, Eqs. 11.9 and 11.13, respectively:

$$q_b c - nD_{mb}\frac{\partial c}{\partial b} = F_b \qquad \text{(at boundary)} \tag{11.35}$$

where q_b is the specific discharge normal to the boundary, c is concentration, n is porosity, D_{mb} is the macrodispersion coefficient in the direction normal to the boundary, $\partial c/\partial b$ is the concentration gradient normal to the boundary, and F_b is the specified flux across the boundary (mass/time/area). For a no-flux boundary, $F_b = 0$.

The second type of condition requires a fixed concentration along a boundary:

$$c = c_b \qquad \text{(at boundary)} \tag{11.36}$$

where c_b is the specified concentration. The boundary may be a point, a line, or a three-dimensional surface, and usually the concentration is maintained there over time.

The third type of condition is similar to the second, except that the concentration is specified over a region in space at an instant in time rather than on a boundary through time:

$$c = c_i \qquad \text{(at time } t_i \text{ in some region)} \tag{11.37}$$

11.7.5 One-Dimensional Solution for a Step Inlet Source

This is a solution of the one-dimensional (x only) transport general equation, Eq. 11.21, that allows adsorption, but not decay ($\Lambda = 0$). It applies to the following boundary conditions:

$$\begin{aligned} &c = 0 \quad (t = 0,\ \text{all } x) \\ &c = c_0 \quad (t > 0,\ x = 0) \\ &c = 0 \quad (\text{all } t,\ x = \infty) \\ &\bar{v} = \text{constant} \quad (\text{all } t,\ x) \end{aligned} \tag{11.38}$$

In this step input solution, the concentration spreads in the positive x direction from a boundary at $x = 0$. Initially at $t = 0$, there is zero concentration everywhere, but with $t > 0$, concentrations spread from the constant concentration $c = c_0$ at the boundary $x = 0$. These would be the conditions downgradient of a large source that starts abruptly, or in a column experiment where a fixed solute concentration is introduced abruptly at the inlet end of the column.

The following solution of Wexler (1992) is based on the similar solution without adsorption ($R = 1$) of Ogata and Banks (1961):

$$c = \frac{c_0}{2}\left[\operatorname{erfc}\left(\frac{x - \bar{v}t/R}{2\sqrt{D_{mx}t/R}}\right) + \exp\left(\frac{\bar{v}x}{D_{mx}}\right)\operatorname{erfc}\left(\frac{x + \bar{v}t/R}{2\sqrt{D_{mx}t/R}}\right)\right] \qquad (x >= 0) \tag{11.39}$$

where erfc is the complementary error function, $\exp() = e^{()}$ is the exponential function, and D_{mx} is the macrodispersion coefficient as defined by Eq. 11.14.

The complementary error function goes from $\operatorname{erfc}(w) = 2$ $(w \ll 0)$ to $\operatorname{erfc}(w) = 0$ $(w \gg 0)$. The central part of this function is graphed in Figure 11.37. There is no closed form expression for $\operatorname{erfc}(w)$, but it can be approximated with little error using the following polynomial expression (Abramowitz and Stegun, 1972):

$$\operatorname{erfc}(w) \approx \left(a_1 u + a_2 u^2 + a_3 u^3\right) e^{-w^2} \qquad (w \geq 0) \tag{11.40}$$

where

$$u = \frac{1}{1 + 0.47047w},\ a_1 = 0.3480242,\ a_2 = -0.0958798,\ a_3 = 0.7478556 \tag{11.41}$$

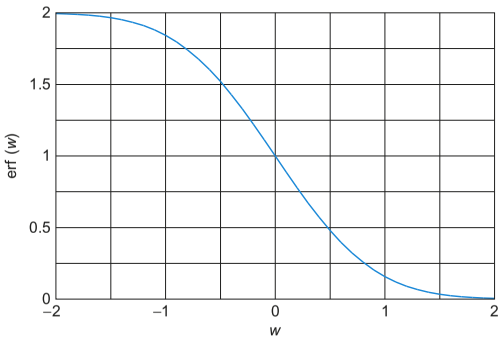


Figure 11.37 Complementary error function, $\operatorname{erfc}(w)$ for $-2 < w < 2$.

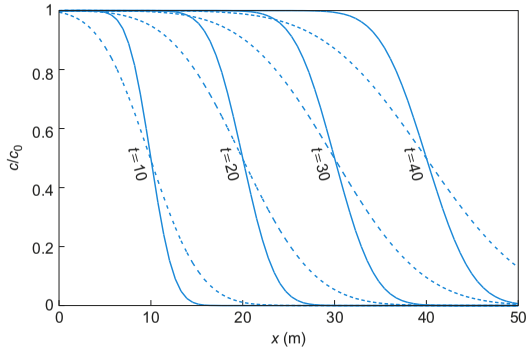


Figure 11.38 c/c_0 vs. x for the one-dimensional step inlet solution of Eq. 11.39. The input parameters are $\bar{v} = 1\,\mathrm{m/day}, R = 1$, $D_{mx} = 0.2\,\mathrm{m^2/day}$ (solid lines), and $D_{mx} = 1.0\,\mathrm{m^2/day}$ (dashed lines). The curves are plotted for $t = 10,\ 20,\ 30$, and 40 days. These parameters are in the range observed in sand aquifers.

When w is negative, the above can still be used to determine $\operatorname{erfc}(w)$, by using the following identity:

$$\operatorname{erfc}(w) = 2 - \operatorname{erfc}(-w) \tag{11.42}$$

The results of this solution are shown in Figure 11.38 for some specific values of the input parameters. The argument of the exponential in Eq. 11.39 is a dimensionless number known as the Peclet number $P_e = \bar{v}x/D_{mx}$, which is a measure of the relative magnitude of advective flux vs. dispersive flux. If $P_e > 100$ or so, advection dominates, and for smaller P_e dispersive transport becomes significant. In advection-dominated systems, the front of the advancing solute plume migrates roughly at the average linear velocity and the concentration $c/c_0 = 0.5$ occurs at a distance of about $x = \bar{v}t$ (see Binning, 2000). The front of the advancing plume is not an abrupt step from $c/c_0 = 0$ to $c/c_0 = 1$ because of dispersion. Dispersion smears the solute front into a more gradual transition of concentrations. When D_{mx} is large, the front is smeared to a greater extent, as shown in Figure 11.38.

This solution is useful for predicting the migration of a solute front near a source that has an extensive cross-section normal to flow. It is not an appropriate model when the source presents a small cross-section normal to flow. When a source is small in cross-section, lateral dispersion becomes important, and one-dimensional dispersion is not a valid assumption. The solutions described in the next two sections simulate both longitudinal and lateral dispersion, and are appropriate for smaller sources.

11.7.6 Solution for a Pulse Point Source

Charbeneau (2000) presented a solution of Eq. 11.34 that models the migration of a pulse point source with three-dimensional dispersion, adsorption, decay, and one-dimensional flow. This solution is like the one presented by Hunt (1983), bit it also includes adsorption. The flow field is assumed to be uniform in the positive x direction; $\bar{v}$ is constant and independent of x, y, z, and t. At time $t = 0$, an amount of solute mass M is injected at a point at $x = y = z = 0$. For a finite volume V_0 of water at solute concentration c_0, the solute mass is $M = c_0 V_0$. The solution is

$$c = \frac{M}{8n\sqrt{(\pi t)^3 D_{mx} D_{my} D_{mz}/R}} \exp\left(-\frac{R(x-\bar{v}t/R)^2}{4D_{mx}t} - \frac{Ry^2}{4D_{my}t} - \frac{Rz^2}{4D_{mz}t} - \lambda t\right) \tag{11.43}$$

where n is porosity, R is retardation factor, and λ is the decay constant (see Eq. 11.27). This solution depicts a cloud of solute that migrates with the average linear velocity $\bar{v}/R$ and spreads out in all three directions. Generally the longitudinal dispersion is much greater than the lateral dispersion ($D_{mx} \gg D_{my}$, D_{mz}), and the solute cloud evolves into an elongate cigar-shaped ellipsoid with the long axis in the x direction.

Note that incorrect versions of equations similar to Eq. 11.43 have been widely published (e.g., Bedient et al., 1999; Domenico and Schwartz, 1998; Freeze and Cherry, 1979; and the first edition of this book). The incorrect equations lack porosity n in the denominator. These textbooks each cite the article of Baetslé (1969), which has the same error.

The highest concentration in the solute cloud is found at the center of mass, where $x = \bar{v}t/R$ and $y = z = 0$. At the center of mass, the term in parentheses in Eq. 11.43 becomes $-\lambda t$, so

$$c = \frac{M}{8n\sqrt{(\pi t)^3 D_{mx} D_{my} D_{mz}/R}} e^{-\lambda t} \quad \text{(at center of mass)} \tag{11.44}$$

Figure 11.39 shows concentration distributions resulting from Eq. 11.43, using input parameters that are representative of some sand aquifers. The model shown in the upper plot uses a value of D_{mx} that is twice that used in the model of the lower plot. Otherwise the two models are identical. The larger longitudinal macrodispersion in the upper plot causes the modeled plume to spread more in the x direction and have a lower peak concentration at the center of the plume.

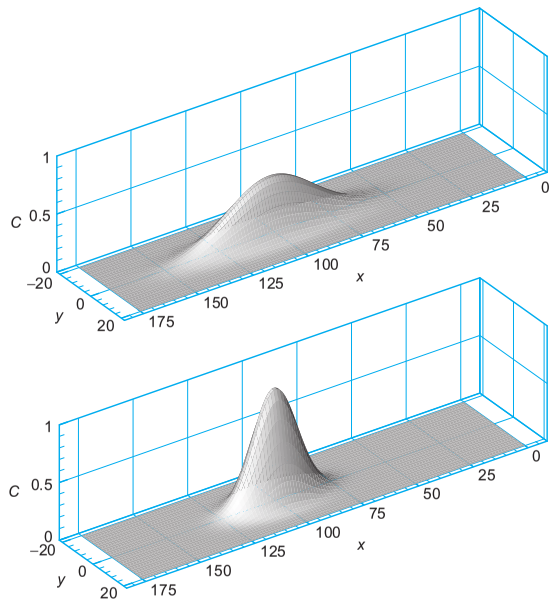


Figure 11.39 Concentrations predicted by Eq. 11.43 for two models with slightly different parameters. Common to both models are a source mass of 250 g starting at $x = y = z = 0$, $\bar{v} = 1\,\text{m/day}$, $D_{my} = 0.1\,\text{m}^2/\text{day}$, $D_{mz} = 0.01\,\text{m}^2/\text{day}$, $\lambda = 0$, $R = 1$, $n = 0.25$, and $t = 100$ days. The difference between the two models is that $D_{mx} = 2\,\text{m}^2/\text{day}$ in the upper one and $D_{mx} = 0.5\,\text{m}^2/\text{day}$ in the lower one. Both plots show the concentration (mg/L) distribution on the plane $z = 0$.

11.7.7 Other More Complex Solutions

Many analytic solutions to the advection–dispersion equations have been derived for more complicated boundary conditions. We won't delve into the details of any of these; a few of the more useful ones are listed below:

1. Hunt (1978): solution for a nonreactive solute pulse source shaped like a parallelepiped (rectangular box). At the start time, the concentration is uniformly c_0 inside the box and zero outside the box. Hunt also presents solutions for a continuous point source.

2. Leij et al. (1991): solutions for a pulse source shaped like a parallelepiped or a cylinder. Allows for both first-order decay and linear equilibrium sorption. Also has solutions for a continuous source shaped like a rectangular inlet or a circular inlet normal to flow.

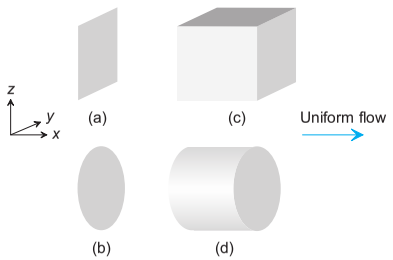


Figure 11.40 Different geometries for the more complex solutions listed. (a) Continuous rectangular patch source normal to flow. (b) Continuous circular patch source normal to flow. (c) Pulse source with parallelepiped shape at $t = 0$. (d) Pulse source with cylinder shape at $t = 0$.

3. Leij et al. (1993): solutions for similar conditions as those of Leij et al. (1991), except that nonequilibrium sorption may be modeled.

The geometries of these solutions are illustrated in Figure 11.40. The curves of Figure 11.23 were generated by SOLUTRANS, a computer program that implements the solutions of Leij et al. (1991) and Leij et al. (1993) for the continuous rectangular inlet source.

The analytic solutions listed above are quite restricted by the assumptions of a uniform flow field and a homogeneous medium. To handle heterogeneous flow fields and heterogeneous media requires more complex numerical methods, which are well beyond the scope of this book. Common numerical methods include finite differences, finite elements, and particle tracking. Some good references for detailed coverage of numerical transport modeling are Bear and Cheng (2010), Charbeneau (2000), Spitz and Moreno (1996), Rifai (1994), and Hromadka (1992).

11.8 Investigating Contamination

11.8.1 Sampling Groundwater

Groundwater sampling is a routine part of contamination studies and water supply investigations. It is usually accomplished by extracting a water sample from a well. Ideally, the sample accurately represents the chemistry of the pore water in the aquifer immediately adjacent to the screened section of the well, and the sample is analyzed quickly before reactions significantly alter the chemistry. There are many opportunities for this idealized process to fail, so care must be taken in the installation of the well, in the sampling procedure, and in preserving and analyzing the sample. This section provides a brief overview of important issues in groundwater sampling; more detailed coverage